

ARABIC
GRAMMAR.
PALMER.

131

MESSRS. ALLEN'S CATALOGUE

OF BOOKS IN THE EASTERN LANGUAGES, IN

ARABIC, PERSIAN, AND HINDI, AND
A Dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi,



THE LIBRARY
OF
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA
LOS ANGELES

The Baital Pachisi :

The Baital Pachisi :

The Tota Rahani :

The Ikhwane-Safa :

Nichwanu-s-Safa;

Grammatical and Poetical Rules of the Hindustani Language. By Mirza Asad Khan. Translated by Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Taukhat-u-Nusakh

A Grammar of the Hindustani Language. By Mirza Asad Khan. Translated by Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

A Vocabulary for the Lower Standards in Hindustani.

Compiled by Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Sakuntala in Hindi.

A Drama in Five Acts. By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Alf Laikh, be-Sabab-i-Urdu

A Grammar of the Hindustani Language. By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Oriental Penmanship.

A Treatise on the Art of Writing in the Hindustani Language. By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

How to Speak Hindustani.

A Treatise on the Art of Speaking in the Hindustani Language. By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

PERSIAN.

English-Persian Dictionary.

By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Richardson's Dictionary, Persian, Arabic, and English.

London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Grammar of the Persian Language.

By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Grammar of the Persian Language.

By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Gulistan.

A Treatise on the Art of Writing in the Hindustani Language. By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Anwar-i-Soheli.

A Treatise on the Art of Writing in the Hindustani Language. By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Anwar-i-Soheli

A Treatise on the Art of Writing in the Hindustani Language. By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Akhlak-i-Muchini.

A Treatise on the Art of Writing in the Hindustani Language. By Mr. J. H. Mearns. London: Printed by W. B. E. Smith, 1854.

Charles H. Steleman -

July 1889.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

See MacKenzie

(Purchased)

E. H. Palmer

A

GRAMMAR



OF THE

ARABIC LANGUAGE.

BY

E. H. PALMER, M.A.,

FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, AND LORD ALMONER'S READER AND PROFESSOR OF ARABIC IN
THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE,

LONDON;

WM. H. ALLEN & CO., 13, WATERLOO PLACE, S.W.

PUBLISHERS TO THE INDIA OFFICE,

1874.

WM. H. ALLEN & CO., PRINTERS, 13, WATERLOO PLACE, PALL MALL, S.W.

PJ
6303
P182g

TO THE

HONOURABLE AND VERY REVEREND

GERALD WELLESLEY, M.A.,

DEAN OF ST. GEORGE'S CHAPEL, WINDSOR, LORD HIGH ALMONER
AND DOMESTIC CHAPLAIN TO HER MAJESTY THE QUEEN,

THIS WORK

IS

RESPECTFULLY AND GRATEFULLY DEDICATED.

DSW

1765517



P R E F A C E.

I HAVE endeavoured in the present work to furnish the beginner with a trustworthy guide and the advanced student with a complete and easy book of reference.

I have followed the system adopted by the native grammarians, believing it to be more suitable than the Greek or Latin methods. At the same time I have not scrupled to make such alterations in the *order* and *arrangement* of the various parts of the subject as appeared to me necessary for aiding the memory or facilitating reference to the book. The Tables of Verbal Forms, Broken Plurals, etc., have been carefully tabulated, so as to exhibit clearly and at a glance the correspondence between the various forms. Another feature in the work is the addition of a glossary of the technical terms of Arabic grammar, by means of which the Student will be enabled to translate without difficulty the commentaries which accompany the classical Arabic poems and other standard works. In all previous Arabic grammars written for the use of Europeans, too little attention has been paid to Prosody and the rules of versification, and a most valuable aid to the critical study of the language and literature has thus been comparatively neglected. This deficiency I have endeavoured

voured to supply in the section upon Prosody, which will, I believe, be found to contain all that is necessary for a thorough understanding of the system.

The chief works which form the basis of this grammar are the following—

كتاب مفتاح المصباح by Dr. P. Bustání, Beyrout, 1867 ;

كتاب مصباح الطالب في بحث المطالب by Dr. P. Bustání, Beyrout, 1854 ;

كتاب فصل الخطاب في اصول لغة الاعراب by the late Sheikh Nassyf el Yázjî of Lebanon, 2nd edition, Beyrout, 1866 ;

and for the Prosody,

كتاب العيون الغامرة على خبايا الرامزة a commentary by Mo-hammed el Makhzúmi on the poem of Dhiyá ed dîn el Khazrajî (a MS. in the University Library, Cambridge) ;

كتاب محيط الدائرة في علم العروض by Dr. C. Vandyek, Beyrout, 1857 ; and

كتاب نقطة الدائرة by Sheikh Nassyf el Yázjî.

In conclusion, I have to express my gratitude to Dr. W. Wright, Professor of Arabic at Cambridge, not only for carefully revising the proofs, but for kindly giving me many valuable suggestions and criticisms ; and to the Rev. C. Taylor, of St. John's College, who also aided me very materially in the final revision of the proofs.

E. II. PALMER.

ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

1st January, 1874.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

SECTION I.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

	PAGE
The Alphabet	1
Numerical Value of the Letters	3
Orthographical Signs	6
Vowels	6
Tenwín	6
Correspondence of the Vowels and Semi-vowels	8
Hemzeh	9
Meddah	9
The Vowels as Signs of Inflexion	9
Jezmeh or Sukún	10
Teshdíd	11
Hemzet El-waşl	11
Hemzet El-kaṭa'	13
The Pause	14
Anomalies in Writing	15
Examples for Practice in Reading	16

SECTION II.—ETYMOLOGY.

The Measures of Words	19
Roots containing Semi-vowels	20
Assimilation	23

SECTION III.—PARTS OF SPEECH.

	PAGE
The Verb	24
Different Kinds of Verbs	24
Parts of the Verb	25
Tenses of Verbs	26
The Preterite	26
The Aorist	27
Moods of the Verb	27
The Imperative	29
Forms of Simple Verbs	30
The Noun of Action	31
Derived Conjugations	32
Signification of the Derived Forms	33
First Group (adding One Letter to the Root)	33
4th Conjugation, أَفْعَلُ	33
2nd Conjugation, فَعَّلَ	34
3rd Conjugation, فَاعَلَ	35
Second Group (adding Two Letters)	35
5th Conjugation, تَفَعَّلَ	35
6th Conjugation, تَفَاعَلَ	36
7th Conjugation, اِنْتَعَلَ	37
8th Conjugation, اِفْتَعَلَ	37
9th Conjugation, اِفْعَلَّ	37
Third Group (adding Three Letters)	38
10th Conjugation, اِسْتَعَلَ	38
11th Conjugation, اِفْعَالَ	38
12th Conjugation, اِفْعَوَلَ	39
13th Conjugation, اِفْعَوَّلَ	39
The Tenses of Derived Forms	39
(1) The Preterite	39
(2) The Aorist	39
(3) The Imperative	41

	PAGE
The Noun of Action	42
Tables of the Derived Conjugations—Active	43
" " " Passive	44
Quadriliteral Verbs	44
Nouns Derived from Verbs	46
(1) Noun of Unity	46
(2) Noun of Species	46
(3) Agent	46
(4) Passive Participle	47
(5) Nouns of Action formed with Mím	47
(6) The Noun of Time and Place	48
(7) Noun of Instrument	50
(8) Noun of Quality	51
(9) Noun of Colour or Defect	51
(10) Noun of Superiority (or Comparative)	51
(11) The Noun of Excess or Intensive Agent	52
Note on the Use of the Tables	53
Table Showing the Correspondence of Forms Derived from Verbs	56
Irregular Verbs	58
Paradigms of Irregular Verbs	59
I. Doubled Verbs	59
Derived Conjugations of the Doubled Verb	59
Preterite of the Doubled Verb	60
Aorist of the Doubled Verb	61
Imperative of the Doubled Verb	62
II. Hemzated Verbs	62
1. Verbs having Hemzeh for the First Radical	62
Derived Forms of Verbs with Initial Hemzeh	63
2. Verbs having Hemzeh for the Medial Radical	63
Derived Forms of Verbs with Medial Hemzeh	64
3. Verbs with Hemzeh for the Final Radical	65
Derived Forms of Verbs with Final Hemzeh	65

	PAGE
III. Assimilated Verbs	66
1. Initial و	67
2. Initial ي	68
Derived Forms of Assimilated Verbs	68
IV. The Hollow Verb	69
Derived Forms of Hollow Verbs	70
Preterite of the Hollow Verb (Medial و), Measure فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ	71
Aorist of the Hollow Verb (Medial و)	71
Imperative of the Hollow Verb (Medial و)	72
Preterite of the Hollow Verb (Medial ي), Measure فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ	72
Aorist of the Hollow Verb (Medial ي)	72
Imperative of the Hollow Verb (Medial ي)	73
Preterite of the Hollow Verb (Medial ا), Measure فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ	73
Aorist of the Hollow Verb (Medial ا)	74
Imperative of the Hollow Verb (Medial ا)	74
V. The Defective Verb	74
Changes in the Termination of the Preterite	74
Changes in the Final Radical of the Aorist	75
Changes in the Final Radical of Nouns	75
Derived Forms of Defective Verbs	77
Preterite of the Defective Verb (Final و), Measure فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ	77
Aorist of the Defective Verb (Final و)	78
Moods of the Defective Verb	78
Subjunctive Mood	79
Apocopated (Jussive, etc.)	79
1st Energetic	79
2nd Energetic	79
Imperative of the Defective Verb (Final و)	80
Preterite of the Defective Verb (Final ي), Measure فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ	80
Aorist of the Defective Verb (Final ي)	80
Moods of the Defective Verb (Final ي), Measure فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ	81
Subjunctive Mood	81

	PAGE
Apocopated	81
1st Energetic	81
2nd Energetic	82
Imperative of the Defective Verb (Final ي), Measure فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ	82
Preterite of the Defective Verb (Final و), Measure فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ	82
Aorist of the Defective Verb (Final و)	83
Moods of the Defective Verb (Final و)	83
Subjunctive	83
Apocopated (Jussive, etc.)	83
1st Energetic	83
2nd Energetic	84
Imperative of the Defective Verb (Final و), Measure فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ	84
Doubly Imperfect Verbs	84
1. Initial و and Final و or ي	84
2. Medial و and Final و or ي	85
Formation of Verbal Nouns from Irregular Verbs	86
Hollow Verbs Declined as Strong Verbs	87
Indeclinable Verbs	88
The Noun	89
Primitive Nouns.	89
Nouns Derived from Verbs.	90
The Genders of Nouns	91
Formation of the Feminine from the Masculine	93
Common Gender.	96
Note on the Termination ة	97
Declension of Nouns	97
The Cases	97
The Ancient Declension	98
The Cases of Nouns with a Weak Final Radical	99
Imperfectly Declined Nouns	100
Indeclinable Nouns	103
The Numbers of Nouns	103

	PAGE
The Dual	104
The Plural	105
Regular Masculine Plural	106
Regular Feminine Plural	108
Broken Plurals	110
Plural of Paucity	110
Gender of Broken Plurals	111
Forms of Broken Plurals	111
Plural of Quadriliterals	112
Plurals of Quinqueliterals	112
Note on the Formation of Plurals	112
Tables of Broken Plurals	113
1. Table of Broken Plurals from Triliteral Nouns	114
2. Table of Broken Plurals from Triliteral Feminine Nouns .	121
3. Table of Broken Plurals from the most common Verbal Nouns	122
4. Table of Broken Plurals of the Masculine Agent, Form فاعِلٌ	131
5. Table of Broken Plurals of the Feminine Agent, Form فاعِلَةٌ	133
6. Table of Broken Plurals of Quadriliterals	134
7. General View of the Formation of Broken Plurals . . .	139
Plurals of Plurals	139
Irregular Plurals	139
Examples of the Declensions of Nouns	140
Regularly Declined Nouns	140
Imperfectly Declined Nouns	141
Declension of Nouns ending in a Weak Letter	142
Formation of Nouns not immediately derived from Verbs . . .	144
Noun of Relation	144
Abstract Noun	147
The Diminutive	148
The Pronouns	151
Personal Pronouns	151

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xiii

	PAGE
Changes in Vowels, etc., before the Affixed Pronouns . . .	152
A Verb governing two Accusative Pronouns	153
Note on the Pronominal Signification of the Inflections of Verbs	154
Demonstrative Pronouns	154
The Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	156
The Article	157
The Numerals	158
The Cardinal Numerals	158
The Ordinal Numbers	160
Other Classes of Numerals	163
Particles	165
Prepositions	165
Conjunctions	166
Adverbs	166
Interjections	167
Imitative Sounds	168

PART II.—SYNTAX.

SECTION I.—THE VERB AND THE NOUN.

The Tenses of Verbs	169
I. The Preterite	169
II. The Aorist	171
The Moods of Verbs	171
The Indicative Mood	171
Change of the Vowel in the Aorist	171
The Subjunctive Mood	171
The Apocopation of the Final Vowel of the Aorist	173
Particles which Apocopate the Aorist of two Verbs . .	174
The Energetic and Jussive Mood	176
III. The Imperative	177

	PAGE
The Cases of Nouns	177
The Subjective Case	178
The Agent and the Verb	178
Concord of the Verb and the Agent	180
The Subject of a Passive Verb	184
The Objective Case	188
1. The Object of a Verb	188
2. Words Defining or Specifying the Action	189
3. Nouns used Adverbially	190
4. The Cause or Effect of an Action	191
5. State or Condition	192
The Genitive or Dependent Case	195
Prepositions	195
Other Words used as Prepositions	197
A Sentence as the Complement of a Preposition	198
The Vocative	199
Apocopation of the last Syllable of the Vocative	200
Nouns Definite and Indefinite	201
Nouns in Construction	201
Of the First of Two Nouns in Construction	201
Of the Second of Two Nouns in Construction	202
Other Modes of Expressing the Relation between Nouns	204
Ellipse of the First of Two Nouns in Construction	206
The Gender of an Adjective Qualifying Two Nouns in Construction	207
Separation of Two Nouns in Construction	207
Concordance of Nouns and Epithets	208
The Noun of Action as a Qualifying Epithet	208
The Numerals	209
Construction of the Numeral and the Thing Numbered	209
Agreement in Gender of the Numeral and Thing Numbered	213
The Use of the Article with Numerals	215

	PAGE
The Ordinal Numbers	216
Dates	217
Proper Names	219
Simple Proper Names	219
Compound Proper Names	219
Constituent Portions of Proper Names	221
Nouns which Govern like Verbs	222
The Use of the Infinitive or Noun of Action as a Verb	222
The Use of the Agent, Intensive Agent, and Passive Participle, as a Verb	225
The Noun of Superiority	226
Other Words which are Cognate to Verbs	231

SECTION II.—THE SENTENCE.

Parts of a Sentence	234
The Subject and Predicate	235
Omission of the Predicate	238
Concord of the Subject and Predicate	239
Inversion of the Subject and Predicate	240
Omission of the Subject	241
Words Affecting the Subject and Predicate	241
1. Abstract Verbs	242
2. Approximate Verbs	244
3. Verbs Denoting a Mental Process	246
4. Verbs of Praise and Blame	247
5. Particles which Resemble Verbs	248
Position of ^{اِنَّ} in the Sentence	250
Use of ^{اِنَّ}	250
Cases in which either ^{اِنَّ} or ^{اَنَّ} may be used	251
Loss of the Final ^ن in the Particles ^{اِنَّ} and ^{اَنَّ}	252

	PAGE
6. Negative Participles	253
The Absolute Negative	254
Relative Sentences	256
Relatives or Conjunctives	256
Other Conjunctives	258
Nature of the Relative	259
The Pronoun which Refers to the Antecedent	260
Conditional Sentences	260
Protasis and Apodosis	262
Inversion of the Verb and Noun	263
On Certain Involved Forms of Expression	264
Exception.	265
1. <i>إِلَّا</i>	266
2. <i>بِوَيٍّ</i> and <i>غَيْرٍ</i>	266
3. <i>حَاشَا</i> , <i>خَلَا</i> , and <i>عَدَا</i>	267
Apposition	267
1. Description	268
Nature of the Descriptive	269
Concordance of the Descriptive and the Noun	270
2. Simple Apposition	271
Particles Employed in Forming the Apposition	272
3. Corroboration.	273
4. Apposition of Substitution.	276
5. Explanatory Apposition	276
Admiration	277

SECTION III.—THE PARTICLES AND INDECLINABLE WORDS.

Particles	279
Certain Adverbs of Time and Place.	280
Pleonastic Particles	283

	PAGE
Indeclinable Words	283
1. Compound Expressions	284
2. كِنَايَات Metonyms	285
3. Adverbs of Time and Place	286
Summary of the Principles of Arabic Syntax	287

PART III.—PROSODY.

SECTION I.—THE METRE.

Nomenclature	291
Elements of which the Feet are Composed	292
Quantity	293
The Normal Feet	294
The Circles	295
The First Circle دَائِرَةُ الْمُخْتَلَفِ	295
Diagram of the First Circle	297
The Second Circle, دَائِرَةُ الْمُؤْتَلَفِ	297
Diagram of the Second Circle	298
The Third Circle, دَائِرَةُ الْمُجْتَلِبِ	298
Diagram of the Third Circle	299
The Fourth Circle, دَائِرَةُ الْمُشْتَمِلِ	299
Diagram of the Fourth Circle	300
The Fifth Circle, دَائِرَةُ الْمُتَّفِقِ	300
Diagram of the Fifth Circle	301
Scansion	301
Variations of the Primitive Feet	302
1. الزَّحَاف Deviation	302
(a) الزَّحَافُ الْمُنْقَرِدُ Simple Deviation	302
(b) الزَّحَافُ الْمَزْدُوجُ Compound Deviation	304
2. الْعِلَّة Defect	304

	PAGE
Tables Representing the Variations of the Primitive Feet . . .	307
First Foot, فَعُولٌ	307
Second Foot, مَقَاعِلٌ	308
Third Foot, مَقَاعِلَتٌ	308
Fourth Foot, فَاعِلَاتٌ	309
Fifth Foot, فَاعِلٌ	309
Sixth Foot, مُسْتَعِلٌ	310
Seventh Foot, مُتَمَاعِلٌ	311
Eighth Foot, مَفْعُولَاتٌ	312
The Metres	313
Tables Exhibiting the Different Metres	314
1. بَحْرُ الطَّوِيلِ The Long Metre	314
Examples of الطَّوِيلِ	315
تَصْرِيعٌ	317
2. بَحْرُ الْمَدِيدِ The Extended Metre	318
Examples of الْمَدِيدِ	319
3. بَحْرُ الْبَسِيطِ The Outspread Metre	322
Examples of الْبَسِيطِ	323
4. بَحْرُ الْوَافِرِ The Exuberant Metre	326
Examples of الْوَافِرِ	327
5. بَحْرُ الْكَامِلِ The Perfect Metre	330
Examples of الْكَامِلِ	331
6. بَحْرُ الْتَزَجِ The Trilling Metre	334
Examples of الْتَزَجِ	335
7. بَحْرُ الرَّجَزِ The Trembling Metre	338
Examples of الرَّجَزِ	339
8. بَحْرُ الرَّمَلِ The Running Metre	342
Examples of الرَّمَلِ	343
9. بَحْرُ السَّرِيعِ The Swift Metre	346
Examples of السَّرِيعِ	347

	PAGE
10. بحر المنسرح The Flowing Metre	350
Examples of المنسرح	351
11. بحر الخفيف The Light or Easy Metre	354
Examples of الخفيف	355
12. بحر المضارع The Doubtful Metre	358
Example of المضارع	358
13. بحر المقتضب The Curtailed Metre	360
Example of المقتضب	360
14. بحر المبحث The Docked Metre	362
Examples of المبحث	363
15. بحر المتقارب The Tripping Metre	366
Examples of المتقارب	367
16. بحر المتدارك The Consecutive Metre	370
Examples of المتدارك	371

SECTION II.—THE RHYME.

Different kinds of Rhyme	373
Consonants of the قافية	373
Vowels of the قافية	374
عييب Faulty Rhyme	375
ضرورة الشعر Poetical Licence	375

APPENDIX.

Glossary of Technical Terms used in Arabic Grammar . . .	377
INDEX	405

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

Page 12, line 25, for *وَأَمَرَ* read *وَأَمَرَ*.

„ 16, „ 17, „ *fatá* „ *fatan*.

„ 26, after line 7, *add*:

The same verb may have different meanings, in which case it has a different noun of action for each, as:

. *خَرَّ* “to fall prostrate,” *خُرُورٌ*.

خَرَّ “to rush with a noise (water),” *خُرَيْرٌ*.

Page 45, after line 13, *add*:

This kind of quadriliteral verb is often onomatopœic, and is formed by a repetition of the imitative sound, as *شَرَّعَرَّ* “to gargle,” *وسوس* “to whisper.” Foreign nouns are also often employed in the formation of quadriliteral verbs, as *وَمِنْطَقَ* “a girdle,” *تَمِنْطَقَ* “to be girt.” The *مُشَكَّكَاتُ*, or derived quadriliterals, in the text, are derived *ostensibly* from trilateral roots.

Some quadriliterals are formed from obsolete trilaterals, as *تَلَمَذَ* “to become a pupil,” from *لَمَذَ* (Hebrew *למד*). Others are formed from phrases in common use, as *حَمْدَلِ* to say *الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ* “praise be to God;” *حَوْلَقَ* to say *لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ* “there is no strength and no power but in God;” *بَسَمَلِ* to say *بِسْمِ اللَّهِ* “in the name of God.”

Page 47, to the first paragraph *add*:

There is another noun which resembles the agent in form, and is

therefore called *الصِّفَةُ الْمَشَبَّهَةُ بِاسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ* “the qualificative resembling the agent noun.” It is of the measure *فَعِيلٌ*, as

فَرِحَ “to be joyful,” *فَرِحَ* “joyful.”
شَرِبَ “to drink,” *شَرِبَ* “a drunkard.”

Page 50, to the account of the noun of time and place *add*:

Adding *س* to this noun gives the sense of “abounding in,” as *أَسَدٌ* “a lion,” *مَأْسَدَةٌ* “a place abounding in lions.”

Page 53, to the list of Nouns of Excess *add*:

فَعِيلٌ as *جَلٌّ* “immense.” *فُعْلٌ* as *حُلُوٌّ* “sweet.”
فُعْلٌ „ *رَقٌّ* “thin.” *فُعَالٌ* „ *شُجَاعٌ* “brave.”
فُعْلٌ „ *صَلْبٌ* “hard.” *فُعَالٌ* „ *رَحْمَانٌ* “merciful.”

The form *فَعِيلٌ*, when derived from hollow verbs, is frequently contracted, as *مَيِّتٌ* (مَوَيْتٌ) “dead,” *مَيِّتٌ* ; *خَيْرٌ* (خَيْرٌ) “good,” *خَيْرٌ* ; in the last case *خَيْرٌ* is the form actually in use.

Page 64, in the heading to second table, for INITIAL HEMZEH, read MEDIAL HEMZEH.

Page 94, line 22, to the words “5. *فُعُولٌ* when it has the signification of *فَاعِلٌ*,” etc., *add as a foot-note*: This happens when it is derived from a neuter verb, in which case it is intensive.

Page 95, line 3, for *مَرْكُوبٌ* and *مَرْكُوبَةٌ* read *رَكُوبٌ* and *رَكُوبَةٌ*.

„ „ 1, to the word *مَنْعُولٌ* *add* (when derived from transitive verbs).

„ „ 6, „ „ „ „

„ „ 12, „ *فَاعِلٌ* „ (when derived from neuter verbs).

Page 95, line 28, *add* : Feminine nouns of this form فَاعِلٌ always contain the meaning of ذَاتٌ, as حَامِلٌ = ذَاتُ حِمْلٍ ; so in Kor. ii., 63, إِنَّمَا بَقَرَةٌ لَا فَارِضَ الْحِ ذَاتُ قُرُوصٍ = فَارِضٌ.

Page 99, line 2, *for* أَبَا زَيْدٍ *read* أَبَا زَيْدٍ.

” ” ” 12, ” فَمَ ” فَمَ.

” 100, line 18, *for* “فَتَى” *read* “فَتَى.”

” ” ” 19, ” “فَتَى” ” “فَتَى.”

” ” ” 20, ” “فَتَى” ” “فَتَى.”

” 146, ” 18, ” after “or أَبُو ‘father,’” *add* “or عَبْدٌ servant of.”

” 304, ” 1, ” *for* الْمَزْدُوجِ *read* الْمَزْدُوجِ.

” 306, lines 8 and 9, *for* “the addition of one letter to a foot of four letters,” *read* “the addition of from one to four letters.”

Pages 327 and 329, heading of the page, *for* بَحْرُ الْوَفْرِ *read* بَحْرُ الْوَفْرِ.

Page 332, line 9, *for* مُتَنَاعِلِينَ *read* مُتَنَاعِلِينَ.

” ” ” 12, ” مُنْصَرٍ ” مُنْصَرٍ.

” 333, ” 2, ” مُشْغُولٍ ” مُشْغُولٍ.

” ” ” 14, ” مَنَزِلَةٍ ” مَنَزِلَةٍ.

” 344, ” 3, ” مَقْصُورٍ ” مَقْصُورٍ.

” 348, ” 11, ” فَأَنْتَ ” فَأَنْتَ.

” 365, ” 3, ” بِالنَّهَارِ ” بِالنَّهَارِ.

ARABIC GRAMMAR.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

SECTION I.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

THE ALPHABET.

(1). THE Arabs write from right to left.

Their alphabet consists of twenty-eight letters, *all consonants*.

ARABIC LETTERS.	NAMES.	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.	PRONUNCIATION.
ا	Alif,	A.	{ This at the commencement of a word is a mere prop for the letter <i>hemzeh</i> , or soft breathing, and has no sound of itself; after a consonant it serves merely to prolong the vowel <i>felah</i> .
ب	Bá,	B.	
ت	Tá,	T.	a soft dental, like the Italian <i>t</i> .
ث	Thá,	Th.	as in <i>thing</i> (sometimes <i>s</i>).
ج	Jím,	J.	as in <i>John</i> .
ح	Há,	H.	a strong pectoral aspirate.
خ	Khá,	Kh.	guttural, something like the Scotch <i>ch</i> in <i>loch</i> .
د	Dál,	D.	soft dental, like the Italian <i>d</i> .
ذ	Dhál,	Dh.	like <i>th</i> in <i>that</i> .
ر	Rá,	R.	{ as in English, but more forcibly.
ز	Zá,	Z.	

ARABIC LETTERS.	NAMES.	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.	PRONUNCIATION.
س	Sín,	S.	} as in English, but more forcibly.
ش	Shín,	Sh.	
ص	Sád,	S.	a lisping <i>s</i> .
ض	Dhád,	Dh.	a hard palatal <i>ḍ</i> .
ط	T(h)á,	T.	a hard palatal <i>ṭ</i> .
ظ	Dhá,	Dh.	<i>th</i> in <i>this</i> (sometimes <i>z</i>).
ع	Aín,	‘	a guttural vowel.
غ	Ghain,	Gh.	a guttural sound, something between <i>gh</i> and <i>r</i> .
ف	Fá,	F.	as in English, but more forcibly.
ق	Káf,	K.	like <i>ck</i> in <i>stuck</i> , pronounced very gutturally.
ك	Káf,	K.	} as in English, but more forcibly.
ل	Lám,	L.	
م	Mím,	M.	
ن	Nún,	N.	
د	Há,	H.	
و	Waw,	W.	}
ي	Yá,	Y.	

To which is added ۛ Lám-alif, LA’.

These are joined to the preceding letter by prefixing a small curve or stroke, and to the following letter by removing the curve with which they all, except *alif*, end.

In ذ زر و the removal of the curve would leave the letter unrecognizable; these, therefore, as well as the *alif*, are not joined to the left.

غ, when medial and final, change their form slightly, becoming ڭ and ڨ.

ك, when initial and medial, becomes ڪ and ڪ respectively.

ي, when initial and medial, become ڀ and ڃ respectively.

م, when initial and medial, becomes ڻ and ڻ respectively.

ه, when initial, becomes ھ; when final ھ; and when medial ھ or ھ.

DETACHED.	INITIAL.	MEDIAL.	FINAL.
ا	ا	ا	ا
ث ت ب	ث ت ب	ث ت ب	ث ت ب
ي ن	ي ن	ي ن	ي ن
خ ح ج	خ ح ج	خ ح ج	خ ح ج
ذ د	ذ د	ذ د	ذ د
و ز ر	و ز ر	و ز ر	و ز ر
ض ص	ض ص	ض ص	ض ص
ظ ط	ظ ط	ظ ط	ظ ط
غ ع	غ ع	غ ع	غ ع
ق ف	ق ف	ق ف	ق ف
ك	ك	ك	ك or ك
ل	ل	ل	ل
م	م	م	م
ه	ه	ه	ه

ه is sometimes written ھ: it is then called *hú-tá*, and when followed by a vowel is pronounced like ت *t*.

NUMERICAL VALUE OF THE LETTERS.

(2). The letters of the Arabic alphabet are sometimes

used as numerals; in their numerical order they exactly correspond with the alphabetical (and also numerical) order of the Hebrew or Phœnician alphabet, and consequently of the Greek, as will be seen from the following table :

HEBREW.	ARABIC.	GREEK.	NUMERICAL VALUE.	HEBREW.	ARABIC.	GREEK.	NUMERICAL VALUE.
א	ا	α	1	ל	ل	λ	30
ב	ب	β	2	מ	م	μ	40
ג	ج	γ	3	נ	ن	ν	50
ד	د	δ	4	ס	س	ξ	60
ה	ه	ϵ	5	ע	ع	σ	70
ו	و	ς	6	פ	ف	π	80
ז	ز	ζ	7	צ	ص		90
ח	ح	η	8	ק	ق		100
ט	ط	θ	9	ר	ر		200
י	ي	ι	10	ש	ش		300
כ	ك	κ	20	ת	ت		400

ז having dropped out of the Greek alphabet, the sign *koppa* (ρ) under the form φ , or in MSS. ϕ , took the value of 90, and the hundreds were thus shifted one place, *e.g.* :

ق	φ	90	ش	σ	200
ر	ρ	100	ت	τ	300

The remaining numerals are supplied, both in Greek and Arabic, by the duplicate or aspirated letters, thus :

ν	ϕ	χ	ψ	ω	𐤀	
400	500	600	700	800	900	1000
	ث	خ	ذ	ض	ظ	غ

The letters in their numerical order are arranged in a series of meaningless words to serve as a *memoria technica*, thus :

أ ب ج د هـ ز ح ط ي ك ل م ن س ع ف ص ق ر ش ت ث خ ذ ظ غ
 أ ب ج د هـ ز ح ط ي ك ل م ن س ع ف ص ق ر ش ت ث خ ذ ظ غ

This use of the letters as numerals is confined to mathematical works and "chronograms," that is to say, words or sentences containing letters the sum of the numerical value of which gives the date of any event that may be required. In order to be still more easily retained in the memory these are usually woven into verse, as in the following upon the accession of the present Sultan of Turkey :

عبد العزيز له الايام باسمة
 بالعز والسعد من توفيق باريه
 يوم الجلولس له الدنيا تعيد
 مورخيه على العرش استوى فيه

Abdu'l Aziz, fortune smiles upon him with might and happiness, by the grace of his Creator !

On the day of his accession the world holds festival in his honour, writing the date (in the words), "on it he was established on the throne."

The sum of the numerical value of the letters contained in the sentence ع ل ي ا ل ع ر ش ا س ت و ي makes up 1283, the date of the Mohammedan year corresponding with 1866 of the Christian era.

The Arabs of Morocco arrange their letters in a slightly different numerical order, thus :

أ ب ج د هـ ز ح ط ي ك ل م ن س ع ف ص ق ر ش ت ث خ ذ ظ غ

In ordinary transactions the Arabs make use of the following cyphers borrowed from the Indian, and written

in precisely the same manner as our own, *i.e.* from left to right, the reverse of the Arabic writing:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	ʼ	ʻ	ٲ	٥	٦	٧	٨	٩	٠

e.g. ١٨٧٢ 1872.

ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS.

VOWELS.

(3). The vowels and other orthographical signs are written above and below the letters. The vowels are \frown *fethah*, $\overset{\circ}{\frown}$ *dhammah*, and \neg *kesrah*, pronounced respectively \frown *ă*, as in *fat*; $\overset{\circ}{\frown}$ *u*, as in *full*; and \neg *i*, as in *fit*.

Fethah, *kesrah*, and *dhammah* denote the signs \frown \neg $\overset{\circ}{\frown}$; while *feth*, *kesr*, and *dhamm* denote the sounds *a*, *i*, *u*. These sounds are modified by the hardness or softness of the *preceding consonants*; like those of the consonants, they can only be approximately rendered in English. The student must therefore learn the correct pronunciation of the language orally.

TENWĪN.

(4). When the vowels are doubled, thus $\overset{\circ}{\frown}\overset{\circ}{\frown}$, they are pronounced respectively *an*, *un* and *in*. This is called تَنْوِينَ *tenwĭn*, *i.e.* "giving the *n* sound." The vowels thus doubled are spoken of as *tenwĭn fethah*, *tenwĭn kesrah*, and *tenwĭn dhammah* respectively.

The *tenwĭn* or nasal vowels are intimately connected with the long vowels.

The old Arabic, like the Nabathean, seems to have declined its nouns with long vowels, and this form is still preserved in the con-

struct form of a few nouns expressing the most primitive relations of life, namely :

	“father.”	“brother.”	“mouth.”	“possessor.”
Nominative	أَبُو <i>abú,</i>	أَخُو <i>akhú,</i>	فُؤ (فَمُ <i>famun</i>),	ذُو <i>dhú.</i>
Genitive	أَبِي <i>abí,</i>	أَخِي <i>akhí,</i>	فِي <i>fí,</i>	ذِي <i>dhi.</i>
Objective	أَنَا <i>abá,</i>	أَخَا <i>akhá,</i>	فَا <i>fá,</i>	ذَا <i>dhá.</i>

When the word is indefinite, and therefore pronounced without reference to any other word, a certain stress will be laid on the vowel which indicates the declension; but when it is either in construction or defined by the article,—that is, when it is mentioned only in its relation to another word,—the stress is laid rather on the word itself, and the long vowel becomes consequently shortened. This is at once apparent if we decline an English or Latin noun school-boy fashion, as “musa,” “musæ,” etc., “of a father,” “to a father,” etc.; but in the combinations “musa Latinorum,” “the father of the boy,” the natural accent falls on the words “musa” and “father,” while the case signs *a*, *æ*, or *of*, are to a certain extent neglected and shortened.

This is exactly what happens in the declension of an Arabic noun, the only difference being that in Arabic the change is expressed in writing thus: كِتَابٌ *kitábun*, “a book,” مَلِكٌ *malikín*, “of a king,” but كِتَابُ مَلِكٍ *kitábu malikin*, “the book of a king,”—the dropping of the *tenwín* in these cases being equivalent to the shortening of the long vowel. From this it follows that *tenwín* is the sign of the indefinite noun, and its absence implies that the noun is definite.

It is also worth observing, in confirmation of the above hypothesis, that the regular plural forms are nothing more than a prolongation of the terminations of the singular, as though the vowels were prolonged

to imply an extension of the meaning: thus, ^{مُؤْمِنٌ} "a believer," is declined—

		MASCULINE.	
	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	^{مُؤْمِنٌ} <i>mūminun.</i>		^{مُؤْمِنُونَ} <i>mūminūna.</i>
Genitive	^{مُؤْمِنٍ} <i>mūminin.</i>	}	^{مُؤْمِنِينَ} <i>mūminīna.</i>
Objective	^{مُؤْمِنًا} <i>mūminan.</i>		
FEMININE.			
Nom.	^{مُؤْمِنَةٌ} <i>mūminatun.</i>		^{مُؤْمِنَاتٌ} <i>mūminātun.</i>
Genitive	^{مُؤْمِنَةٍ} <i>mūminatin.</i>	}	^{مُؤْمِنَاتٍ} <i>mūminātin.</i>
Objective	^{مُؤْمِنَةً} <i>mūminatan.</i>		

CORRESPONDENCE OF THE VOWELS AND SEMI-VOWELS.

(5). No distinction appears to have been originally made in Arabic between the long and short vowels; indeed, the earlier Kúfie writing makes no use whatever of the short superscribed vowels, but employs only the letters ^ي و ^ا. When two or more long vowels come together, the tone would, by the natural laws of accentuation, fall upon the last but one, and that alone would remain long, the others being either neglected or shortened. The process actually takes place in modern Arabic; the word ^{مَفَاتِيحُ} *mafātīḥu*, for instance, is pronounced ^{مَفَاتِيحٌ} *məfātīḥ*: here the long *a* is shortened by the principle above advocated, and the short *u*, having already undergone the shortening process in the ancient language, is in the modern dialect neglected altogether.

From this it follows naturally that the short vowels ^{ـَ} ^{ـِ} ^{ـُ} correspond to the weak consonants or semi-vowels ^ي و ^ا. In Arabic writing the long vowels are formed by a combination of the two; thus, ^{بَا} *bā*, ^{بُو} *bū*, ^{بِي} *bī*.

HEMZEH

(6). In endeavouring to pronounce a vowel without a consonant, we make a distinct, though slight, effort with the muscles of the throat: this the Arabs represent by *hemzeh* ٱ, and the long vowels accordingly become at the beginning of a word ٱٱ *aa*, ٱو *uu*, ٱي *ii*, = *á, ú, í*; ¹ و and ي preceded by *fethah* form diphthongs ٱو *bau* (pronounced as *ow* in *now*) and ٱي *bai* (pronounced as *y* in *by*).

MEDDAH.

(7). In the case of ٱٱ *aa* the second *alif* is written over the first thus ٱٱ́, or ٱ without the *hemzeh*, and is called *meddah*, “prolongation.”

The long ٱ is sometimes pronounced like our *a* in *face*, as in the word ٱٱٱٱٱٱ, pronounced *ennés*; this is called *Imáleh*, i.e. causing it to incline (to the sound of *kesrah*).

THE VOWELS AS SIGNS OF INFLEXION.

(8). The vowels are used as terminations of inflexion; thus,

ٱ or ٱ for the objective.

ٱ or و ,, nominative or subjective.

ٱ or ي ,, genitive or dependent case.

They occur both in the moods of verbs and in the cases of nouns, *e.g.* :

In nouns :

ٱٱٱ “a book,” *nominative or subjective*, in which form alone it can act as agent to a verb.

¹ The vowels used in the transliteration of Arabic words throughout this work are to be pronounced as in Italian.

كتاب

genitive or dependent, dependent on the preceding word.

كتابًا

objective, expressing state or condition.

And in verbs :

يَفْعَلُ "he does" (active).

أَنْ يَفْعَلَ "that he may do" (conditional).

From this it would seem that some such significations as action, dependence, and objective state or condition lurk in the respective vowels themselves.

Some philologists have supposed that the Arabic language was originally monosyllabic. If such were the case, the above suggestion as to primary signification of the vowels will enable us to understand the arrangement of ideas in Semitic languages in groups of three letters, or triliteral roots, corresponding with these vowels.

The preterite passive in Arabic contains all three in proper order, فُعِلَ "it was done," expressing ُ an action, > depending upon or proceeding from some one, < resulting in a certain condition.

JEZMEH, OR SUKÚN.

(9). There are only two kinds of syllables in Arabic.

1. A consonant with a short vowel, as بَ *ba*. 2. Two consonants with a short vowel between, as بَيْتَ *bit*. In this case the mark ة is placed over the last, and is called *sukún*, "rest," or *jezmeh*, "cutting off." A letter without a vowel is called quiescent.

Note.—Two quiescent letters cannot come together; such a combination, for instance, as بَسْتِ *bist* is inadmissible: the letters of prolongation are considered as quiescent. In spelling, the vowels are always named after the consonants; e.g. بَ *bá-fethah*, "ba"; بَيْتَ *bá-tá-kesrah*, "bit" (not *bá-kesrah-tá*).

TESHDÍD.

(10). When the article *أل* *al* precedes any *dental*, *liquid*, or *sibilant* letter, it is assimilated with it, and the letter itself is doubled to compensate for the elision; thus we say *أَلشَّمْسُ* *ash-shemsu*, not *al-shemsu*. Like all other permutations of letters in Arabic (of which I shall speak presently), this is obviously merely a euphonic change.

Letters of this class are called *الأحرف الشمسية* *al-huruf ash-shamsíyeh*, “solar letters,” because the word *شَمْس* “sun” begins with one of them. They are just fourteen in number, comprising half the alphabet. The remainder are called *الأحرف القمرية* *al-huruf al-kamaríyeh*, “lunar letters,” for a similar reason.

The mark of reduplication is called *teshdíd*, “strengthening,” and is written thus ّ.

HEMZET EL-WAŞL (see 6).

(11). The Arabs cannot utter two consonants together at the beginning of a word without a vowel; but to facilitate the utterance of the first they employ a *hemzet el-waşl*, or “point of conjunction”: thus, the English word “smith” in an Arab’s mouth would become *إِسْمِثْ* *ismith*. The *hemzet el-waşl* is important, not only in an orthographical, but in a grammatical point of view, and must therefore be treated of at greater length.

In many words the rule for the formation of the word and for the addition of the vowel points, would bring two consonants together at the beginning of a word in the manner just indicated, and in all such cases the *hemzet el-waşl* is employed. Such cases are (as will be seen in the rules for the conjugation of verbs) the following :

- (1). The imperative of the simple trilateral verb
 (2). The preterite and verbal noun of the derived conjugations VII—X.
 (3). The following nouns :

ابن *ibnun*, ابنم *ibnamun*, a son. (When the word ابن occurs between two proper names the *alif* is not written.)

ابنة *ibnatun*, a daughter.

اسم *ismun*, a name.

است *istun*, the anus.

إثنان *ithnāni* (masculine),
 إثنان *ithnatāni* (feminine), } two (numeral).

امرء *imra'un*, a man.

امراة *imra'atun*, a woman.

أيمان *aimunun*, oaths.¹

The *hemzet el-waṣl*, when following a vowel, is elided in pronunciation, and the mark *waṣlah* ̣ is placed over the *alif* to denote this fact; thus, ابْنُ الْمَلِكِ *ibnu 'l-meliki*, not *ibnu al-meliki*. In امرء and ابنم the vowel of the second syllable may follow the pointing of the succeeding vowel; thus :

جَاءَ رَجُلٌ وَابْنٌ وَامْرَأٌ	} “a man—a son—a man came.”
<i>ja'a rajulun wa'bnun w'amruin</i>	
رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا وَابْنًا وَامْرَأً	} “I saw a man—a son—a man.”
<i>Ra'aitu rajulan w'abnaman w'amra'un</i>	
مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ وَابْنٍ وَامْرَأٍ	} “I passed by a man—a son—a man.”
<i>marartu bi-rajulin w'abnimin w'amri'in</i>	

¹ Strictly speaking the *hemzeh* should not be written in these words, but rather an *alif* with *waṣlah*, thus: اسم, ابن, etc.

Here it will be observed that the vowel of the second syllable, which in the case of رَجُلٌ “a man” remains unchanged, in the other two words varies with the final vowel.

At the beginning of a sentence *hemzet el-waṣl* is pronounced—(1) With *felḥah*: in the article أَلْ and in the word أَيْمَنَ. (2) With *ḍhammah* in the imperative of the first form of verbs of which the aorist is of the form يَفْعَلُ. (3) In all other cases it is pronounced with *kesrah*.

Sometimes the *hemzet el-waṣl* comes after a letter which has no vowel, and in such cases the following rules must be observed:—(1) The quiescent letter in the following words takes the vowel *felḥah*: نِي, نِي “me,” “my” (affixed pronouns), مِنْ “from,” مَعَ “with,” and the imperative of “doubled” verbs; that is, of which the 2nd and 3rd radicals are alike, as مَدَّ “extend.” (2) All other monosyllables consisting of two consonants the last of which has no vowel, except مَدَّ “since,” take *kesrah*. All those parts of a verb which have no vowel on the last consonant take *kesrah*. (3) The final letter of the words مَدَّ “since,” كُمْ “you,” “your,” هُمْ “them,” “their” (affixed pronouns), أَنْتُمْ “you,” takes *ḍhammah*. After a *tenwīn* the *hemzet el-waṣl* is pronounced with *kesrah*.

HEMZET EL-KATĀʾ.

(12). *Hemzet el-katāʾ*, “the point of disjunction, or hiatus” (because a hiatus is felt before the vowel introduced by it is pronounced), is either a radical letter or a sign of inflection prefixed to verbs; as in أَفْعَلُ “I act,” where it denotes the first person singular of the aorist. In such cases it is of course not elided.

The words أَخْرَجْتُ الْبَيْتَ *akhuttu 'lhijá*, “I write out the

alphabet," contain all the short vowels and orthographical signs.

The learner is referred to the examples in reading given at the end of this section, a perusal of which will render him familiar with all the possible combinations of the letters.

Hemzet el-waṣl, when following a vowel or *tenwín*, is written $\bar{\text{آ}}$; but when it stands at the beginning of a sentence, it is written $\bar{\text{أ}}$, $\bar{\text{إ}}$, $\bar{\text{و}}$.

Hemzet el-kata' is always written in full $\bar{\text{أ}}$. When the latter occurs in the middle of a word, and introduces ـ *dhammah* or ـ *kesrah*, the *alif*, which serves as its prop, is changed into the semi-vowel analogous to the short vowel; as مُؤْمِنٌ *mu'-minun*, "a believer," جِئْتُ "I came." When ي is so used, the dots are omitted, to distinguish it from the letter of prolongation.

THE PAUSE.

(13). The final short vowels are dropped in pronunciation at the end of a sentence; thus $\text{بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ}$ *Bismi 'lláhi 'rrahmání 'rrahím*, not *'rrahími*.

ة , with or without *tenwín*, becomes َ in the pause; as جَاءَتْ رَحْمَةً , pronounced *já-at rahmah*. *Tenwín kesrah* and *dhammah* ـِـ are dropped; as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ and مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ , pronounced *já'a Zeid* and *marartu bi-Zeid*; but *tenwín fethah* أ becomes َا , as رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا , pronounced *ra'aitu Zeidá*.

The single emphatic نِ *nún*, which is sometimes added to the imperative and aorist of verbs, also becomes َا ; as إِضْرِبْ , pronounced at the end of a sentence إِضْرِبَا *idhribá*.

Words of one letter add س in the pause; as ر , *ruh* and ق *kíh* for رَ *ra* and قِ *kí*.

Words like قاضٍ, in which the *tenwīn kesrah* stands for a ي which has dropped out, reject the *tenwīn* in the pause; as مَرَرْتُ بِقَاضٍ, pronounced *marartu bi-kādh*.

ANOMALIES IN WRITING.

(14). Arabic is pronounced as it is written, except in the Pause, as mentioned above, and in the following instances :

(1) The *nūn* ن in the following words is not written, but assimilates with the first letter of that immediately succeeding it.

عَمَّا, وَمِمَّا	become	مَّا, مَّا	عَمَّا and مِمَّا
أَنَّ or لَا	becomes	لَا	”
إِنَّ or لَا	”	لَا	”
إِنَّمَا or مِمَّا	”	مَّا	”

(2) An *alif* ا is written but not pronounced—(1) After *waw*, when that letter terminates a verbal form; as ضَارِبُوا *ḍharabū*. This is also occasionally found in the construct form of a plural noun; as ضَارِبُوا زَيْدٍ *ḍharibū Zeidin*, “the strikers of Zeid.” (2) As a prop to *tenwīn fetḥah*; as زَيْدًا *Zeidān*. (3) In the words مِائَتَانِ, مِائَةٌ, *miätun, miätani*, “a hundred,” “two hundred.”

(3) A *waw* و is written but not pronounced in أُولَئِكَ *ulā'ika*, أُولَءِ *ulā'i*, “those;” in the direct and oblique case of عَمْرُو (nominative عَمْرُو, pronounced *Amrun*; oblique عَمْرٍو, pronounced *Amrin*), to distinguish it from عَمَرَ *Omar*.

(4) *Alif* is pronounced but not written in the following words: اَللّٰهُ *allāhu*, “God,” اَلرَّحْمٰنُ *ar-Raḥmānu*, “the merciful (God),” الْمَلَائِكَةُ *malā'ikatun*, “angels,” السَّمَوَاتِ *samāwātun*, “heavens,” ذَلِكَ *dhālika*, “that,” أُولَئِكَ *ulā'ika*, “those,” ثَلَاثَةٌ (fem. ثَلَاثُ *thalāthun*), “three,” ثَلَاثُونَ *thalāthūna*, “thirty,” لَكِنَّ *lakinna*, “but,” هَذَا *hādha*, “this,”

إِبْرَاهِيمَ *Ibrāhīmu*, "Abraham," إِسْمَاعِيلَ *Isma'il*, "Ishmael," إِسْحَاقَ *Ishāqu*, "Isaac," and sometimes in the proper names عَثْمَانَ *Othmān*, سُلَيْمَانَ *Sulaimānu*, نُعْمَانَ *Nomānu*. In this case a small *alif* is generally written perpendicularly above the consonant with which it is to be pronounced.

(5) The *Hemzet el-waṣl* is omitted—(1) from the word *إِسْم* in the phrase *بِسْمِ اللَّهِ* for *بِسْمِ اللَّهِ* *bi'smillāhi*, "in the name of God." *إِبْن* when it occurs between two proper names where a correlation exists; as *زَيْدُ بْنُ عَمْرٍو* *Zeidu'bnū Amrin*, "Zeid son of 'Amr." If *ibn* with the second proper name forms the predicate of a proposition, the *hemzet el-waṣl* is retained; as *زَيْدُ بْنُ عَمْرٍو* *Zeidun Ibnū Amrin*, "Zeid (is) the son of 'Amr." (2) In the article *أَل* when following *لِ* "to," as *لِلْإِنْسَانِ* "to the man."

(6) *Wāw* و is omitted from such words as *دَاوُدَ* *Dā'ūd*, for *دَاوُودَ* "David;" *رُوسَ* *Ru-ūs*, for *رُؤُوسَ* "heads."

(7) *ي* pointed with *fethah* or *tenwin fethah* at the end of words is silent, the vowel *ā* only being pronounced; as *يَرْضَى* *yardhā*, "he is pleased," *فَتًى* *fatā*, "a youth," *مَتًى* *matā*, "when?" *بَلَى* *balā*, "certainly," *لَدَى* *ladā*, "near," *إِلَى* *ilā*, "to," *حَتَّى* *hattā*, "until," *عَلَى* *alā*, "upon."

(8) *wāw* و is pronounced as *alif* in *حَيَاةٍ* *hayātun*, "life," *صَلَاةٍ* *ṣalātun*, "prayer," *زَكَاةٍ* *zakātun*, "alms," when these words are in the singular and stand by themselves, not being in construction or having the article or a pronoun affixed; when not standing by themselves *alif* is generally written instead of *wāw*.

(15.) EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE IN READING.

أَ اِ بْ تَ ثَ جْ حَ خَ دُ ذُ رِ زُ سَ شِ
shī sa zu ri dha du khi ḥa ju thi ta bu i u a

صُ ضُ طَ ظَ عَ غَ فَ قَ كَ لُ مَ نَ وَ هُ يَ
ya hu wa ni ma lu ka ki fu ghi ā dhu ṭi dha su

آ أَوْ إِيَّائِي بُوتَا ثِي جُو حَا خِي دُو ذَا رِي
rì dhá dū khī hā jū thī tá bú ai í au ú á
 زُو سَا شِي صُو ضَا طِي ظُو عَا غِي فُو قِي كَا لُو مَا
má lū ká kī fū ghī 'u dhū ṭī dhá ṣū shī sá zū
 نِي وَآ وَيَّ وَيَّ هُو يُو يَا
yá yū hū wī wai wá nī

تَبْ فُتْ بَتْ مِتْ قَدْ كَجْ رُحْ قَطْ خُذْ قَعْ صَرْ مُذْ
mudh ṣar ká khudh kaṭ ruh haj kad mit bit fut tab
 دُرْ دَسْ زُرْ بَلْ كَمْ صَفْ
ṣaf kam bal zur dus dur

* لِلنَّاسِ * فِي الزَّمَانِ * فِي الْحَرْبِ * عَلَيْهِ * فِي الْحَيَاةِ * وَاللَّهِ *
wa'llāhi fi 'l-ḥayāti ālaihi fi 'l-ḥarbi fi 'z-zamāni linnāsi
 لِلَّهِ * لَبِثْتُ إِلَى الْيَوْمِ * لِلْحَيَاةِ الدُّنْيَا *
lil-ḥayāti 'd-dunyā labittu ila 'l-yaumi li'llāhi

وَقَضَى اللَّهُ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ أَجْمَعًا <i>wa-kaḍha 'llāhu bāda dhāka 'jtimā'ū</i>	بِأَبِي مَنْ وَدَدْتُهُ فَافْتَرَقْنَا <i>Bi-abī man wadattuhu fa'ftaraḥnā</i>
And after that God decreed a meeting, ing,	(May) he whom I love (be ransomed) by my father!—we parted,
كَانَ تَسْلِيمُهُ عَلَيَّ وَدَاعًا <i>kāna taslīmuhu ālaiya wadā'ū</i>	فَافْتَرَقْنَا حَوْلًا فَلَمَّا اتَّخَيْنَا <i>fa'ftaraḥnā ḥawlan salamma'taḥainā</i>
His (only) salutation to me was "Farewell!"	We were parted for a year, and when we met,

وَجَاهِلٍ يَدْعِي فِي الْعِلْمِ فَلْسَفَةً قَدْ رَاحَ يَكْفُرُ بِالرَّحْمَنِ تَقْلِيدًا
wa-jāhilin yudda'ī fi'l-ilmī falsafatan *kaḍ rāḥa yakfuru bi'r-Raḥmāni taḥ-*
līdā

Went and denied the existence of An ignorant fellow, pretending to
the Merciful God dogmatically, the science of philosophy,

وَقَالَ أَصْرَفُ مَعْقُولًا فَقُلْتُ لَهُ عَنَيْتَ نَفْسَكَ مَعْقُولًا وَمَعْقُولًا
wa-kala aṣrafu māḥūlan fa-ḥultu lahu *anaita nafsaka māḥūlan wa-māḥūdā*

"You mean that you yourself are And said, "I know that it is so by
hobbled (*māḥūlan*) and fettered ! common-sense (*māḥūlan*).” Then
I said to him,

وَمِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتَ وَهَذَا الشَّيْءُ تَذَكَّرْ أَرَأَيْكَ تَقْرَعُ بَابًا عَنْكَ مَسْدُودًا
min aina anta wa hādha 's-shai'u *arāka taḥra'u bābān ānka masdūdā*
tadhkuruhu

I see that you are knocking at a What have you to do with this
door which is shut against you.” thing which you mention ?

فَقُلْتُ لَسْتُ سُلَيْمَانَ بْنِ دَاوُدَ فَقَالَ إِنَّ كَلَامِي لَسْتُ تَفْهَمُهُ
fa-ḥultu lastu Sulaimāna' bna Dā'ūdā *fa-kāla inna kalāmī lasta tafhamuhu*

And I said, "I am not Solomon, Then said he, "You do not under-
the son of David !”¹ stand my speech.”

¹ This may be paraphrased as follows :—

A foolish Atheist, whom I lately found,
Alleged Philosophy in his defence ;
Said he, "The arguments I use are sound."
"Just so," said I, "all sound and little sense."

"You talk of matters far beyond your reach :
You're knocking at a closed-up door," said I.
Said he, "You do not understand my speech."
"I'm not King Solomon !" was my reply.

Alluding to the Mohammedan legend that Solomon understood the language of *beasts*.

SECTION II.—ETYMOLOGY.

THE MEASURES OF WORDS.

(16). Every word in Arabic may be referred to a significant root, consisting of either three or four letters, the trilaterals being by far the more common.

The letters ق and ك, خ and ل, م and ب, ب and ف cannot, for obvious euphonic reasons, exist side by side in the same root.

In European languages significant roots are irregular in form, and the grammar of those languages treats only of prefixes and affixes, by which the meaning of the root is modified. Thus in English we add the termination *er* to express the active participle or agent of a verb, and *ing* to express the infinitive or gerund; as make, maker, making. In Arabic, however, such modifications are obtained not only by prefixing or affixing, but by inserting letters in the root. فعل *fá'l*, signifying mere *action*, is taken as the typical root for exhibiting these modifications, and the *formulae* thus obtained are called the “measures of words.” For instance, the insertion of an *alif* between the first and second radical, and pointing the latter with the vowel *kesrah*, gives the sense of the agent or active participle; thus فَعَّلَ becomes فاعَّلَ “one who does,” and this word is the *measure* upon which all other agents of this kind are formed.

It is, in fact, a mere formula, like the letters used

in Algebra; for as $(a + b)$ may represent $(2 + 3)$, $(4 + 5)$, or any other numbers, so for the trilateral root فَاعِلٌ in فَعَلَ we may substitute any other trilateral root and obtain the same modification of meaning; as

ضَارِبٌ *dharbun*, "striking," ضَارِبٌ "a striker."

قَاتِلٌ *katlun*, "killing," قَاتِلٌ "a murderer."

where ضَارِبٌ and قَاتِلٌ are said to be the فَاعِلٌ of the respective trilateral roots to which they belong.

ROOTS CONTAINING SEMI-VOWELS.

(17). The trilateral root may contain one or more of the weak consonants or semi-vowels و ي ا in which case certain euphonic and other changes will take place. These changes are called the Permutations of weak consonants, and depend upon the principle above advocated that the three weak consonants و ي ا are respectively homogeneous to the three vowels و ي ا . When the vowel and weak consonant in any derived form are heterogeneous, the vowel changes the weak consonant into another weak consonant analogous to itself.

To understand how a vowel can change one weak consonant into another analogous to itself, when we should rather have thought that the consonant would be stronger than the vowel, we must investigate the nature of the "measures" above described.

If, instead of the three radical letters of a significant root ل ج ه , we substitute the signs (1) (2) (3), and then proceed to form "measures" of nouns and verbs in the

ordinary manner, we shall obtain such results as the following :

- | | | | | | |
|----|------------------------------|---|------|------|------|
| 1. | فَعَلٌ "doing" | = | ˆ(3) | ˘(2) | (1) |
| 2. | فَاعِلًا "doer" ¹ | = | ˆ(3) | (2) | ˘(1) |
| 3. | فَعَلَ "he does" | = | ˘(3) | ˘(2) | ˘(1) |
| 4. | فُعِلَ "it is done" | = | ˘(3) | (2) | ˆ(1) |

We see at once that the vowels are the real or characteristic part of the measure, as they give the general sense of the form, while the radicals only define the particular case to which it is to be applied ; they must therefore of necessity be preserved at any sacrifice to the consonant.

Now, in the four forms given above, let us substitute for the numerical signs the letters ز و غ, an existing Arabic trilateral root, and we have :

1. ˆ(3) ˘(2) ˘(1) = غَزَوْ "A raid or foray."
2. ˘(3) (2) ˘(1) = غَاَزَوْ Here the *kesrah* and the *wāw* are heterogeneous, but the former, being the more important, changes the latter into ي; that is, into the weak letter analogous to itself, and the word becomes غَاَزَا "a raider."
3. ˘(3) ˘(2) ˘(1) = غَزَوْ Here the two *fethahs* absorb the و, changing it into ˘, and the word becomes غَزَا "he made a foray."
4. ˘(3) (2) ˘(1) (from قَوْلٌ "saying") قِيلَ = قِيلَ.

¹ I have adopted the objective case with *tenwin fethah* in this illustration, because *tenwin dhammah* or *tenwin kesrah* would involve the question of a further permutation, the discussion of which is left for the paragraph on the declension of nouns, *q.v.*

I have before suggested that the *old* Arabic had no short vowels; the last form, therefore, must originally have been قويا, and the natural accent falling on the penultimate would leave that alone *long*, while the antepenultimate would be absorbed, and the word become قِيلَ, as we actually have it.

In the 3rd person preterite active of the same verb قَالَ the two *fethahs* conquer the و. In the 1st person قُلْتُ the long و being quiescent conquers, and the accent falling on it, it becomes قُوتْتُ; but this is naturally shortened in pronunciation, and the rule holds that two quiescent letters cannot come together.

This, then, is the general principle of permutation:—When a vowel and a weak letter which is not analogous to it come together in a form, the ordinary laws of euphony require that one should yield, and in Arabic the vowel conquers: *e.g.*

The measure مُتَعَالٍ, from وَزَنَ, would be مَوْزَانٌ, and the measure مُتَعِلٌ, from يَكُنْ, would be مَيْمَيْنٌ; but مَوْزَانٌ *miwzānun* and مَيْمَيْنٌ *muykīnun* are repugnant to the ear, and therefore become مِيزَانٌ *mizānun* and مُوَكِّنٌ *mukīnun*.

A permutation of other than weak letters occasionally takes place; as, for instance, when two letters which it is impossible to pronounce together occur in the same form; then the softer of the two is changed into the corresponding hard one. This can only take place in *dental* or *palatal* letters, for they are the only ones in which such a difficulty is likely to arise: *e.g.*

Forming the measure اِفْتَعَلَ *ifta'ala* from the root ضَرَبَ we should

have *إِذْتَرَبَ idhtaraba*; this, however, would be unpronounceable, and as the soft *t* ت will actually sound like the hard *t* ط, the latter is written instead, and the form becomes *إِطْتَرَبَ*.

Another euphonic change of which letters are susceptible is

ASSIMILATION.

(18). One letter is often assimilated by another, which is then doubled. This naturally occurs when the same letter is repeated without the intervention of a vowel, as *مَدَدٌ* for *مَدَدٌ* *maddun*; or when two letters of the same kind come together, as *مَكْثَتٌ* *mukatta* for *مَكْثَتٌ* *makathla*, although this last kind of assimilation is optional.

Remark.—It is obvious that in practice cases will occasionally occur for which the foregoing rules will not at first sight entirely account. The principle involved is, however, always the same, for it is the operation of the natural laws of euphony which produces every such change. Instead, therefore, of burdening the student's memory with a long list of *rules* for Permutation and Assimilation, I shall content myself for the present with the *principle* just given, reserving the consideration of the less obvious permutation for cases in which they occur.

SECTION III.—PARTS OF SPEECH.

(19). The parts of speech in Arabic are three:—1. The Verb. 2. The Noun (including the pronoun and adjective, and what we are accustomed to call the participle). 3. The Particle (including the preposition, adverb, conjunction, and interjection).

THE VERB.

(20). An Arabic Verb with its fifteen conjugations, its active and passive voices, subjunctive and energetic moods, etc., may well seem a formidable thing for a beginner to encounter.

We shall, however, see that the multifarious phases which it can assume are all capable of being reduced to a few measures easily remembered, as they depend more or less one upon another, and are intimately connected both in sense and form.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS.

Arabic Verbs are of two kinds, *sound* and *weak*.

These are further subdivided into *transitive* and *neuter*, *active* and *passive*.

They are either *simple* or *augmented*.

The simple verb cannot contain less than three letters or more than five.

It may happen that in conjugating, all the letters but one may disappear, so that a simple form may seem to have been one letter, as in *ت* *ti*, the shortened form of *أتى* *atí*, from *أتى* *atí*, “he came.”

The augmented verb is formed either by repeating the second or third radical, or by employing one or more of certain other letters.

The letters thus employed to augment or conjugate verbs and inflect nouns are called *servile*, and are contained in the last three words of the following verse :

سَأَلْتُ الْحُرُوفَ الزَّائِدَاتِ عَنْ أَسْمِهَا
فَقَالَتْ وَلَمْ تَكْذِبْ أَمَانٌ وَتَسْهِيلٌ

“I asked the servile letters concerning their name; they answered, and did not lie : أَمَانٌ وَتَسْهِيلٌ (*i.e.* safety and ease).”

It may also happen that some of these letters occur as radicals in a verb, but in such a case nothing save a knowledge of the grammatical measures will enable the student to discriminate.

We are accustomed to speak of the first, second, and third radical letter of a trilateral verb as the ف *fú*, ع *áin*, or ل *lám* respectively.

PARTS OF THE VERB.

(21). The Arabic Verb has two voices,—active and passive; three tenses,—preterite, aorist, and imperative; fifteen conjugations. These last, however, are nothing more than derived verbs formed from the simple root by the addition of certain letters which modify or extend the sense.

The noun which expresses the simple action is considered as the source, مَحْدَرٌ, from which all derived forms, whether nouns or verbs, are taken, as ضَرْبٌ *dharbun*, “striking;” and this occasionally supplies the place of the

infinitive or gerund, which parts of the verb are wanting in Arabic.

Note.—As this noun of action is variable in form, it has been found convenient in practice to treat the third person singular masculine as the form from which all others are derived. This is, therefore, the form under which all words are ranged in grammars and dictionaries.

TENSES OF VERBS.

THE PRETERITE.

(22). In simple verbs the preterite active is of the form فَعَلَ, فَعِلَ, or فَعَّلَ.

The preterite passive is invariably of the form فُعِلَ.

The Persons are formed as follows :

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
فَعَلْنَ	فَعَلُوا	فَعَلْتَا	فَعَلَا	فَعَلْتُ	فَعِلَ ¹ 3rd person.
فَعَلْتِ	فَعَلْتُم	فَعَلْتُمَا		فَعَلْتِ	فَعَلْتِ 2nd „
فَعَلْنَا				فَعَلْتُ	1st „

[*Note.*—The terminations فَعِلْتُ, فَعِلْتِ, فَعِلْتُمَا, etc., are in reality separate pronouns serving as nominative or agent to the verb. Again, in the third person singular masculine, a masculine pronoun is said to

¹ This paradigm applies equally to the forms فَعِلَ, فَعِلْتُ, and to the passive فُعِلَ, which are declined in the same way—

.....	فَعِلْتُ	فَعِلْتِ	فَعِلْ
.....	فَعِلْتِ	فَعِلْتُمَا	فَعِلْ
.....	فَعِلْتُمَا	فَعِلْتُم	فَعِلْ

be implied. The same remarks apply to the affixes and prefixes by which the persons of the aorist are formed.]

THE AORIST.

(23). The aorist active of the simple verb is formed as follows :

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يَفْعَلْنَ	يَفْعَلُونَ	تَفْعَلَانِ	يَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلْ	يَفْعَلْ ¹ 3rd person.
تَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلُونَ	تَفْعَلَانِ		تَفْعَلَيْنِ	تَفْعَلْ 2nd „
نَفْعَلْنَ				اَفْعَلْ	1st „

The aorist passive is declined in precisely the same manner, merely substituting the vowel $\text{ـ} \text{ا}$ for $\text{ـ} \text{ا}$ in the *pre-fixes* and pointing the second radical with $\text{ـ} \text{ا}$, thus :

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يُفْعَلْنَ	يُفْعَلُونَ	تُفْعَلَانِ	يُفْعَلَانِ	تُفْعَلْ	يُفْعَلْ 3rd person.
تُفْعَلْنَ	تُفْعَلُونَ	تُفْعَلَانِ		تُفْعَلَيْنِ	تُفْعَلْ 2nd „
نُفْعَلْنَ				اُفْعَلْ	1st „

MOODS OF THE VERB.

(24). The aorist is declinable like the noun; that is to say, the final vowel is susceptible of certain changes to express modifications of the meaning.

1. It changes from $\text{ـ} \text{ا}$ to $\text{ـ} \text{ا}$ to express the conditional or subjunctive mood, and when preceded by certain particles : in this case the ن is also dropped from all the

¹ So, too, يُفْعَلُ and يُفْعَلُ are declined throughout.

persons which end in that letter preceded by a long vowel, thus :

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يَفْعَلْنَ	يَفْعَلُوا	يَفْعَلَانِ	يَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلُ	يَفْعَلُ 3rd person.
تَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلُوا	تَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلِي	تَفْعَلُ 2nd „
نَفْعَلْنَ				أَفْعَلُ	1st „

2. It may be apocopated, *i.e.* lose its last vowel altogether when preceded by certain particles, or used as an imperative, or in a conditional or alternative sentence. It will then be declined :

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يَفْعَلْنَ	يَفْعَلُوا	يَفْعَلَانِ	يَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلُ	يَفْعَلُ 3rd person.
تَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلُوا	تَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلِي	تَفْعَلُ 2nd „
نَفْعَلْنَ				أَفْعَلُ	1st „

To the conditional form of the aorist *nún* نَ, either single or doubled نَنْ, and preceded by *fethah*, is sometimes added to impart emphasis : it is chiefly used when this tense is employed as an imperative. It is then declined as follows :

1. With the doubled *nún* نَنْ.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يَفْعَلْنَ	يَفْعَلُوا	يَفْعَلَانِ	يَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلُ	يَفْعَلُ 3rd person.
تَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلُوا	تَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلِي	تَفْعَلُ 2nd „
نَفْعَلْنَ				أَفْعَلُ	1st „

2. With the single *nún* ن.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
Wanting	يَفْعَلْنَ	Wanting	Wanting	تَفْعَلْنَ	يَفْعَلْنَ	3rd person.
Wanting	تَفْعَلْنَ		Wanting	تَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلْنَ	2nd „
	نَفْعَلْنَ			أَفْعَلْنَ	أَفْعَلْنَ	1st „

[*Note*.—It will be noticed that the long vowels *و* and *ي* are elided wherever they occur as terminations. This is because the ن or ن loses its *fethah* in such cases, and if the long vowel were then retained, it would violate the rule given on p. 10, that two quiescent letters cannot come together; thus, the 2nd person feminine singular is تَفْعَلِينَ, this becomes in the conditional form تَفْعَلِي, and adding ن or ن = نُن we should have تَفْعَلِينَ or تَفْعَلِينَ = تَفْعَلِينَ, and two quiescent letters would come together, which is inadmissible; the long vowel is therefore shortened, and the forms become تَفْعَلْنَ and تَفْعَلْنَ. In the 3rd feminine plural the *fethah* of the termination ن coalesces with that of ن, and the ن itself is then pointed with *kesrah*. This change of the *fethah* into *kesrah* appears to result from a weakening of the former vowel consequent upon the long vowel of the preceding syllable. The same process occurs in the dual.]

The conditions under which the aorist undergoes these changes will be fully discussed in the Syntax.

THE IMPERATIVE.

(25). The imperative is formed from the second person of the apocopated form of the aorist by removing the prefix ت *ta*, which, as has been before observed, is considered as the pronominal agent. But from تَفْعَلْ, by removing the ت, we should have فَعْل; that is to say, a

word beginning with a quiescent letter, and therefore inadmissible. To remedy this defect we add a *hemzet el wasl* pointed with ـَ if the vowel of the aorist be ـَ , as اَفْعَل ; but with ـِ if the vowel is either ـِ or ـُ , as اِفْعَل or اُفْعَل . The remaining persons of the imperative are formed by prefixing لِ to the apocopated aorist, as لِيَضْرِبْ “let him strike.”

Imperative.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Common.		Fem.	Masc.
اَفْعَلْنَ	اَفْعَلُوا	اَفْعَلَا		اِفْعَلِي	اِفْعَلِ

FORMS OF SIMPLE VERBS.

(26). There are six classes of verbs in Arabic, ranged according to the vowels with which the medial radical is pointed in the preterite and aorist.

MEASURES.		EXAMPLES.	
Aorist.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Preterite.
1. يَفْعَلُ	فَعَلَ	يَنْصُرُ	نَصَرَ to assist.
		يَدْخُلُ	دَخَلَ to enter.
		يَكْتُبُ	كَتَبَ to write.
2. يَفْعِلُ	فَعَّلَ	يَضْرِبُ	ضَرَبَ to strike.
		يَجْلِسُ	جَلَسَ to sit.
3. يَفْعُلُ	فَعَّلَ	يَقْطَعُ	قَطَعَ to cut.
		يَخْضَعُ	خَضَعَ to be humble.

This is only used when the last letter is a guttural.

MEASURES.		EXAMPLES.	
Aorist.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Preterite.
4. ^{فَعِلَ} يَفْعَلُ	^{فَعِلَ} فَعِلَ	^{طَرِبَ} يَطْرِبُ	^{طَرِبَ} طَرِبَ to rejoice.
		^{فَرِمَ} يَفْرِمُ	^{فَرِمَ} فَرِمَ to understand.
		^{سَلِمَ} يَسْلِمُ	^{سَلِمَ} سَلِمَ to be safe.
5. ^{فَعِلَ} يَفْعَلُ	^{فَعِلَ} فَعِلَ	^{ظَرَفَ} يَظْرَفُ	^{ظَرَفَ} ظَرَفَ to be charming.
		^{سَهَلَ} يَسْهَلُ	^{سَهَلَ} سَهَلَ to be easy.

This form implies natural or inherent qualities, and is always neuter or intransitive.

6. ^{فَعِلَ} يَفْعَلُ	^{فَعِلَ} فَعِلَ	^{حَسِبَ} يَحْسِبُ	^{حَسِبَ} حَسِبَ to reckon.
-------------------------------	--------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------------------

This form is rare in sound but common in weak verbs; as,

^{وَرِثَ} يَرِثُ	^{وَرِثَ} وَرِثَ to inherit.	^{وَلِيَ} يَلِي	^{وَلِيَ} وَلِيَ to be near.
--------------------------	--------------------------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------------------

Some verbs have different forms, and may take any one of the three vowels on the middle radical of the preterite with a corresponding difference of meaning; *e.g.*

^{حَزَنَ} حَزَنَ To be sad.	^{عَمَرَ} عَمَرَ To be cultivated.
^{حَزَنَ} حَزَنَ To sadden, depress.	^{رَفَعَ} رَفَعَ To raise.
^{عَمَرَ} عَمَرَ To cultivate, build, people.	^{رَفَعَ} رَفَعَ To have a high (loud) voice.
^{عَمَرَ} عَمَرَ To live to old age.	

THE NOUN OF ACTION.

(27). The noun of action corresponds in many respects to our infinitive. In simple verbs it is irregular in its formation, but the following are the most usual measures:

1st, 2nd, and 3rd Classes.

Transitive ^{فَعْلٌ}; Neuter ^{فُعُولٌ}.

	MEASURES.			EXAMPLES.			
Transitive	^{فَعْلٌ}	^{يَفْعَلُ}	^{فَعْلٌ}	^{نَصَرَ}	^{يَنْصُرُ}	^{نَصَرَ}	To assist
Neuter			^{فُعُولٌ}	^{قَعَدَ}	^{يَقْعُدُ}	^{قُعُودٌ}	To sit
Transitive	^{فَعْلٌ}	^{يَفْعَلُ}	^{فَعْلٌ}	^{ضَرَبَ}	^{يَضْرِبُ}	^{ضَرْبٌ}	To strike
Neuter			^{فُعُولٌ}	^{جَلَسَ}	^{يَجْلِسُ}	^{جُلُوسٌ}	To sit
Transitive	^{فَعْلٌ}	^{يَفْعَلُ}	^{فَعْلٌ}	^{قَطَعَ}	^{يَقْطَعُ}	^{قَطْعٌ}	To cut
Neuter			^{فُعُولٌ}	^{خَضَعَ}	^{يَخْضَعُ}	^{خُضُوعٌ}	To be humble

4th Class.

Transitive ^{فَعْلٌ}; Neuter ^{فَعْلٌ}.

Transitive	^{فَعْلٌ}	^{يَفْعَلُ}	^{فَعْلٌ}	^{فَهِمَ}	^{يَهْمُ}	^{فَهْمٌ}	To understand
Neuter			^{فَعْلٌ}	^{طَرِبَ}	^{يَطْرِبُ}	^{طَرَبٌ}	To rejoice

5th Class.

Neuter ^{فَعْلَةٌ} ^{فَعُولَةٌ} or ^{فَعْلٌ}.

Neuter	^{فَعْلٌ}	^{يَفْعَلُ}	^{فَعْلَةٌ}	^{ظَرَفَ}	^{يُظَرِّفُ}	^{ظَرَفَةٌ}	To be charming
Neuter			^{فَعُولَةٌ}	^{سَهَلَ}	^{يَسْهِلُ}	^{سَهُولَةٌ}	To be easy
Neuter			^{فَعْلٌ}	^{عَظُمَ}	^{يُعْظِمُ}	^{عِظْمٌ}	To be grand

DERIVED CONJUGATIONS.

(28). The meaning of the simple verb may be extended or modified in various ways by the addition of one or more letters to the root.

There are in all fourteen of these derived conjugations, which may be divided into four groups, namely:

1. Adding one letter to the root, which in transitive verbs strengthens or intensifies the action,¹ and in neuter verbs imparts a transitive sense.
2. Prefixing تَ to imply "consequence" or "effect."
3. Adding two or more letters to the root to modify the original meaning.
4. Distorting the original form of the root as well as adding letters to it. This implies a corresponding distortion of the meaning, and indicates either colour, defect, or intensity.

The simple trilateral verb is considered as the first conjugation, and the fourteen derived forms are numbered 2, 3, and so on, up to 15. In the following account of the signification of the derived forms these numbers are placed against the measures, but they are described in a somewhat different order.

SIGNIFICATION OF THE DERIVED FORMS.

FIRST GROUP (ADDING ONE LETTER TO THE ROOT).

4th Conjugation, أَفْعَلَ.

(29). The prefix of *hemzet el katâ* to the root gives a transitive sense to neuter verbs, and a doubly transitive or causal sense to those which are already transitive.

¹ It is a commonly received theory of the Arab grammarians that a "redundancy of form generally indicates an extension of meaning,"

أَنْ كَثْرَةُ الْبِنَاءِ تَدُلُّ عَلَى زِيَادَةِ الْمَعْنَى غَالِبًا.

See Es-Sheikh Hasan el-Bārīnī in his commentary upon Ibn el-Fāriḍ's verse :

ذَابَتْ الرُّوحُ اسْتِيفَاقًا فَهِيَ بِعَسَدٍ نَفَادٍ الدَّمْعِ أَجْرِي عِبْرَتِي

The following are the most usual significations :

Transitive or causal ; as **أَنْزَلَ** "he caused to descend," from **نَزَلَ** "to descend;" **أَضْرَبَ** "he caused to strike," from **ضَرَبَ**.

Going to, or making for, a place : **أَعْرَقَ** "he went to 'Irāk." This will explain such forms as **أَفْبَلَ** "he advanced;" **أَدْبَرَ** "he retreated."

Exposing or displaying : **أَبَاعَ** "he exposed for sale," from **بَاعَ** "to sell."

Turning into ; as **أَفْغَرَّتِ الْأَرْضُ** "The land became desert."

Being or becoming at a certain time ; as **أَصْبَحَ** "he was in the morning;" **أَمْسَى** "he was in the evening."

A transitive verb occasionally becomes intransitive in this form ; as **أَكَبَ** "he fell prone," from **كَبَّ** "he threw him on his face."

2nd Conjugation, **فَعَّلَ**.

Doubling the middle consonant intensifies the meaning of the root, and makes it, if neuter, transitive. Its most usual significations are :

Transitive ; as **فَدَّمَ** "he sent forward," from **فَدَمَ** "to be in front."

Intensive or frequentative ; as **كَسَّرَ** "he broke to pieces," from **كَسَرَ** "he broke;" **قَطَّعْتُ الْحَبْلَ** "I cut the rope in pieces," from **قَطَعَ** "he cut."

Attributing to, regarding as, or making out to be ; as **صَدَّقَ** "he looked upon him as, or proved him, truthful;" **كَذَّبَ** "he regarded him as, or proved him a liar."

This form is used in deriving a verb from a noun; as جَلَدَ "he pitched his tents," from خَيْمَةٌ "a tent;" جَلَدَ "to skin," from جِلْدٌ "a skin."

This use is almost identical with that of the English verb formed from a noun; as *to water, to skin, to peel*, etc.

3rd Conjugation, فَاعَلَ.

The insertion of *alif* between the first and second radicals gives an idea of reciprocity to the action; as قَاتَلَ "he fought," from قَتَلَ "he killed;" ضَارَبَ "he fought with blows," from ضَرَبَ "he struck." The notion of a second party who reciprocates the action is always implied.

It sometimes implies repetition; as ضَاعَفَ "he doubled," but is sometimes used to express simple action; as سَافَرَ "he travelled." The form سَفَّرَ would mean "he wrote a book," or "he disclosed."

When the original verb requires a preposition to make it transitive, the 3rd conjugation may be used in the same sense without the preposition; as كَتَبَ لَهُ "he wrote to him;" كَاتَبَهُ "he addressed him by letter."

SECOND GROUP (ADDING TWO LETTERS).

5th Conjugation, تَعَلَّلَ.

This, by the prefix of ت, expresses the consequence of the 2nd conjugation فَعَّلَ; as قَدَّمَ "he brought forward;" تَقَدَّمَ "he was so brought forward."

From this sense comes that of experiencing or acquiring; as تَخَوَّفَ "he was afraid," i.e. he was affected

with the fear with which others inspired him," from *خَوَّفَ* "to inspire with fear;" *تَكَبَّرَ* "he grew proud," from *كَبَّرَ* 2nd conjugation from *كِبْرِيَاءَ* "pride."

When the original root is a concrete noun, this form will imply simply adopting or employing; as *تَوَسَّدَ* "he reclined his head on a pillow," from *وَسَدَ* 2nd conjugation (from *وَسَادَةٌ*) "a pillow."

6th Conjugation, *تَفَاعَلَ*.

This is formed by prefixing to the 3rd conjugation *فَاعَلَ* *ت*, implying *consequence*, with the same results as in the 5th conjugation; thus *تَتَاتَلَ* "he was one of the parties engaged in a fight between two," from *فَاتَلَ* 3rd conjugation of *فَتَلَ*.

This prefix of *ت* to forms which signify reciprocal action, necessarily limits the idea of reciprocity to one of the two parties concerned. Thus, if it be said of any one, *فَاتَلَ* "he fought," or *بَاعَدَ* "he removed to a distance," the other party to such reciprocal action will become *تَبَاعَدَ* "removed to a distance," and *تَتَاتَلَ* "fought against;" it follows, therefore, that the former will have an active sense, while the latter will be passive; but passive only inasmuch as it is consequent on the other.

The sense of feigning is sometimes contained in this form; as *تَمَارَضَ* "to feign illness." It appears to come somewhat in the following manner:

A hypothetical form *مَارَضَ* must have existed, which in such a word as this, from *مَرَضَ* "to be ill," can only mean that his illness was merely for the sake of affecting a second party, and this, again, could

only mean that he displayed it to deceive another, and the prefix **ن** limiting the consequence of such action to himself, **نَمَارَضَ** will mean that he was one who was afflicted with illness in order to produce an effect upon another, *i.e.* he assumed illness.

7th Conjugation, **اِنْفَعَلَ**.

This conjugation expresses the state or condition resulting from the action of the simple trilateral verb **فَعَلَ**; as **قَطَعْتُ** "I cut it;" **اِنْقَطَعَ** "it was cut." It is necessarily neuter or passive in signification.

8th Conjugation, **اِفْعَلَّ**.

This does not differ materially from the 7th conjugation, the only difference being that while the last indicates the state or condition resulting from, or exhibits the *effects* of the action of the simple trilateral verb, the 8th conjugation conveys the notion of being *affected* by the action: as **جَمَعْتُ** "I collected it;" **اِجْتَمَعَ** "it was gathered together, or was in a collected state."

From this idea of "being in a state of" the form obtains a reflexive meaning; as **اِخْتَبَرَ** "he made bread for himself;" **اِكْتَسَبَ** "he took to a trade, or to gaining profit."

In this way it approaches sometimes in meaning to **فَعَلَ** and **تَنَاعَلَ**; thus we can say **جَذَبَ** or **اِجْتَذَبَ** "he drew;" **اِخْتَصَمُوا** or **تَخَاصَمُوا** "they disputed."

9th Conjugation, **اِفْعَلَّ**.

The form of noun used to express a colour or quality is, as we shall presently see, **اَفْعَلٌ**; the 9th conjugation

appears to be formed from this by doubling the last consonant to imply action, and thus making it into a verb. The *hemzet el katâ*, being a characteristic letter in the formation of *derived* conjugations (see 4th conj.), is here changed to the *hemzet el wasl*.

This form is used to express any quality which is very conspicuous, especially colour or distortion; as *أَحْمَرٌ* “to be red,” from *أَحْمَرٌ* “red;” *أَحْدَبٌ* “to be hump-backed,” from *أَحْدَبٌ* “a hunch-back.”

THIRD GROUP (ADDING THREE LETTERS).

10th Conjugation, *اِسْتَعْلَى*.

This conjugation implies asking or seeking, as *اِسْتَعْفَرَ* “he asked pardon.”

Finding or considering a thing to be possessed of the attribute implied in the original verb, as *اِسْتَعْظَمَ* “to consider grand or mighty.”

From the sense of “desiring” comes that of “desiring to be,” *اِسْتَكْبَرَ* “he was proud,” “desired to be thought great,” and hence becoming or turning into, as *اِسْتَحْجَرَ الطِّينَ* “The clay began to turn into stone,” or “petrify,” *i.e.* to become stone-hard.

11th Conjugation, *اِفْعَالَ*.

This is of very rare occurrence, and is merely an extension of the 9th conjugation *اِفْعَلَ* both in form and signification; *e.g.* *اِغْتَوَّرَ* “to be very yellow.” The insertion of the *l* may, as in the 3rd conjugation, convey some

idea of reciprocity, and إِصْفَارٌ may therefore mean to be of a brighter yellow colour than other things of the kind.

12th Conjugation, اِفْعَوْلَ. 13th Conjugation, اِفْعَوْلَ.

These imply great intensity, as اِخْشَوْشَنَ “to be very rough and rugged,” from خَشِنَ “to be rough.”

The grammars give two other forms—14th Conjugation اِفْعَنْلَ, and 15th اِفْعَنْلَى; but these are very rare, and may be regarded as varieties of the quadriliteral verb, of which I shall speak further on.

No verb is susceptible of *all* these forms; those in use will depend upon the nature of the original verb, and it must be left to practice and the common sense of the student to distinguish which may or may not be employed.

THE TENSES OF DERIVED FORMS.

(1) THE PRETERITE.

(30). The 3rd person singular masculine of the preterite has been already discussed in the last section. The remaining numbers and persons are formed as in the simple triliteral verb; as فَعَّلَ, فَعَّلَتْ, etc.

(2) THE AORIST.

The aorists of derived forms are pointed according to the following rules :

The vowel of the final radical is a termination of inflection, and is affected by particles or other governing words; it is therefore independent of, and accidental to, the measure, like the case-endings of a noun.

In derived verbs consisting of four letters the *prefixes* take *dhammah* ُ and the last radical but one is pointed with *kesrah* ِ, thus :

	Preterite.	Aorist.
4.	افعل ¹	ينفعِل [for يافعِل], تفعِل, etc. ²
2.	فعل	ينفعِل, تفعِل, etc.
3.	فاعِل	يفاعِل, تفاعِل, etc.

Those derived verbs which prefix ت do not, in forming the aorist, change the vowels of the preterite ; the last vowel is accidental and variable, as has just been remarked :

5.	تفعِل	يتفعِل, تتفعِل, ³ etc.
6.	تفاعِل	يتفاعِل, تتفاعِل, etc.

Those prefixing ِ *hemzet el wasl* in the preterite suppress this letter in the aorist, and do not change the vowels until the last radical but one, which they point with *kesrah* ; as

8.	افتعل	يفتعل, تفتعل, etc.
7.	انفعِل	ينفعِل, تنفعِل, etc.
10.	استفعل	يستفعل, تستفعل, etc.
13.	انفعول	يففعول, تفعفعول, etc.
12.	انفعول	يففعول, تفعفعول, etc.

Those which have *hemzet el wasl* prefixed, and which

¹ *Hemzet el kaṭā* is dropped in the aorist of the 4th conjugation.

² The numbers and persons being the same as in the simple verb.

³ This pronominal prefix ت is sometimes omitted, and we write تَكَلَّم for تَتَكَلَّم.

have also the final radical doubled in the preterite, suppress the *hemzeh*, but do not otherwise change the vowels until the last; as

	Preterite.	Aorist.
9.	إِفْعَلَّ [إِفْعَلَّ]	يَفْعَل [يَفْعَل], تَفْعَل, etc.
11.	إِفْعَالَّ [إِفْعَالَّ]	يَفْعَال [يَفْعَال], تَفْعَال, etc.

(3) THE IMPERATIVE.

The imperative of the derived forms is formed like that of the simple verb, namely, from the aorist, by removing the pronominal prefix, and apocopating the final vowel; as 3. قَاتَلَ "he fought," تَقَاتِلْ "thou fightest," قَاتِلْ "fight thou."

As in the simple verb, too, a *hemzet el wasl* is prefixed, if it be necessary to the pronounciation; as

	Preterite.	Aorist.	Imperative formed by the rule above given.	Imperative with <i>hemzet el wasl</i> prefixed.
8.	إِفْتَعَلَ	تَفْتَعِلْ	[فَتَعِلْ]	إِفْتَعِلْ

This *hemzeh* is always pointed with *kesrah*.

In the 4th form it is a *hemzet el katu* which is lost in the aorist; this must therefore be restored in the imperative.

4.	اَفْعَلْ	{	تَفْعِلْ	[فَعِلْ]
			تَاَفْعِلْ	اَفْعِلْ

In the forms ending with a doubled radical the assimilation of two letters is resolved, the first taking *kesrah* and the second no vowel; as

9.	{	إِفْعَلَّ	تَفْعِلْ	فَعِلْ	إِفْعِلْ
		اَفْعَلْ	تَفْعَلْ		

THE NOUN OF ACTION.

(31). The Nouns of Action of the derived conjugations are regular in their formation;—they may be ranged in groups, thus :

	Preterite.	Noun of Action.
2.	فَعَلَ	تَفْعِيلٌ or تَفْعِيلَةٌ ¹
3.	فَاعَلَ	فِعَالٌ or مِفَاعَلَةٌ
5.	تَفَعَّلَ	تَفَعُّلٌ
6.	تَفَاعَلَ	تَفَاعُلٌ

And *all the forms which in the preterite begin with hemzeh*, form their Noun of Action by inserting *a long alif before the last radical*; as 4. اِفْعَالَ, اِفْعَالٌ. In the longer forms the consonant next following the *hemzeh* also takes *kesrah* as its vowel; as 10. اِسْتَفْعَالَ, اِسْتَفْعَالٌ.

N.B.—The suppression of a doubled letter or letter of prolongation in the verbal noun is always compensated for by adding a *ya* after the final radical.

(32). TABLES OF THE DERIVED CONJUGATIONS.

ACTIVE.

	Preterite.	Aorist.	Imperative.	Noun of Action.
FIRST GROUP.				
One letter added to the root.				
2. Doubled radical, expressing action or intensity	فَعَّلَ	يَفْعِلُ	فَعِّلْ	تَفْعِيلٌ or تَفْعِلةٌ
4. Prefixed <i>alif</i> , expressing action	أَفْعَلَ	يُفْعِلُ	أَفْعِلْ	إِفْعَالٌ
3. Inserted <i>alif</i> , expressing reciprocity or emulation	فَاعَلَ	يُفَاعِلُ	فَاعِلْ	مُفَاعَلَةٌ or فِعَالٌ
Aor. act. يُفْعِلُ...; pass. يُفْعَلُ...				
SECOND GROUP.				
ت prefixed to root, implying consequence.				
5. Consequence of 2.	تَفَعَّلَ	يَتَفَعَّلُ	تَفَعَّلْ	تَفَعُّلٌ
6. Consequence of 3.	تَفَاعَلَ	يَتَفَاعَلُ	تَفَاعَلْ	تَفَاعُلٌ
Aor. act. يَتَفَعَّلُ...; pass. يَتَفَعَّلُ...				
THIRD GROUP.				
Two or more letters added, modifying the sense of the root.				
7. Exhibiting the effect of the action of the root	أَفْعَلَّ	يُفْعِلُّ	أَفْعِلْ	إِفْعَالٌ
8. Being affected by the action of the root	أَفْتَعَلَ	يُفْتَعِلُ	أَفْتَعِلْ	إِفْتِعَالٌ
10. Asking for or regarding as the original idea expressed by the root	أَسْتَفْعَلَ	يَسْتَفْعِلُ	أَسْتَفْعِلْ	إِسْتِفْعَالٌ
Aor. act. يُفْعِلُ...; pass. يُفْعَلُ...				
FOURTH GROUP.				
9. } Colour or defect	أَفْعَلَّ	يُفْعِلُّ	أَفْعِلْ	إِفْعَالٌ
11. } Aor. act. يُفْعِلُ...; pass. يُفْعَلُ...	أَفْعَالٌ	يُفْعَالُ	أَفْعِلْ	إِفْعِيَالٌ
12. } Great intensity	أَفْعَوَّلَ	يُفْعَوِّلُ	أَفْعَوِّلْ	إِفْعِيْعَالٌ
13. } Aor. act. يُفْعِلُ...; pass. يُفْعَلُ...	أَفْعُولٌ	يُفْعُولُ	أَفْعِلْ	إِفْعِيْوَالٌ

PASSIVE.

	Preterite.	Aorist.		Preterite.	Aorist.
2	فَعِلَ	يُنْعَلُ	7	اُنْعِلَ	يُنْعَلُ
4	اَفْعِلَ	يُنْعَلُ	8	اُفْعِلَ	يُنْعَلُ
3	فُوْعِلَ	يُفَاعِلُ	10	اُسْتُفْعِلَ	يُسْتَفْعَلُ
5	تَفْعِلَ	يَتَفَعَّلُ	9	Wanting	Wanting ¹
6	تَفُوْعِلَ	يَتَفَاعَلُ	11	Wanting	Wanting
			12	اَفْعُوْعِلَ	يَفْعُوْعَلُ
			13	اَفْعُوْلَ	يَفْعُوْلُ

QUADRILITERAL VERBS.

(33). The Quadriliteral Verb is of the measure فَعْلَل. It has only three derived conjugations, and those are of rare occurrence.

	ACTIVE.				PASSIVE.	
	Preterite.	Aorist.	Imperative.	Noun of Action.	Preterite.	Aorist.
1 Simple Verb	فَعَّلَ	يَفْعَلُ	فَعِّلْ	فَعْلَلَةٌ فَعْلَالٌ	فُعِّلَ	يُفْعَلُ
2 = 5th conj. of } triliteral verbs }	تَفَعَّلَ	يَتَفَعَّلُ	تَفَعِّلْ	تَفَعْلَلٌ	تَفُعِّلَ	يَتَفْعَلُ
3 = 9th conj. of ,,	اَفْعَّلَ	يُفْعَلُ	اَفْعِّلْ	اَفْعْلَلٌ	اَفُعِّلَ	يُفْعَلُ
4 = 7th conj. of ,,	اِفْعَّلَ	يَفْعَلُ	اِفْعِّلْ	اِفْعْلَلٌ	اِفُعِّلَ	يَفْعَلُ

¹ Verbs with a neuter signification cannot, of course, have a passive voice.

Examples of quadriliteral verbs,—**دَحَرَجَ** “he rolled (it);” **اِفْشَعَرَ** “to creep with terror (the skin);” **اِحْرَجَمَ** “it (a crowd) thronged.”

	Preterite.	Aorist.	Imperative.	Noun of Action.
1	دَحَرَجَ	يَدَحَرِجُ	دَحَرِجْ	دِحْرَاجٌ and دَحْرَجَةٌ
2	تَدَحَرَجَ	يَتَدَحَرِجُ	تَدَحَرِجْ	تَدَحْرَجٌ
3	اِفْشَعَرَ	يَفْشَعِرُ	اِفْشَعِرْ	اِفْشِعْرَارٌ
4	اِحْرَجَمَ	يَحْرَجِمُ	اِحْرَجِمْ	اِحْرِجَامٌ

A common form of quadriliteral verb is obtained from *doubled* trilaterals (that is, where the second and third radicals are alike) by repeating the first and second radicals; as from **زَلَّ** “to slip,” **زَلَّزَلَ** “to cause the earth to quake.”

Other quadrilaterals formed from trilaterals are the following :

MEASURE.	EXAMPLE.	Trilateral verb to which it is referred.
1 فَعَّلَلَ	جَلَّبَبَ to give one a جَلَّابٌ ¹ to wear	جَلَبَ
2 فَعَّعَلَ	حَوَّعَلَ to stuff the crop (said of a bird)	حَوَّعَلٌ
3 فَعَّوَلَ	دَهَّوَرَ to overthrow	دَهَّرَ
4 فَيْعَلَلَ	بَيَّطَرَ to practise veterinary surgery	بَطَّرَ
5 فَنَعَّلَلَ	جَنَّدَلَ to make one cleave to the stones (or, as we should say, the dust)	جَدَلَ
6 فَعَنَّعَلَ	قَلَّنَسَ to wear the high cap called قَلَنْسَوْدٌ	قَلَّسَ
7 فَعَّلَّى	سَأَّقَّى to throw prostrate	سَأَّقَى

¹ Vulgarly called *jelabiyeh*, a sort of loose flannel shirt.

In the formation of tenses, persons, derivative conjugations, etc., these conform exactly with the ordinary forms of quadriliteral verbs given above.

NOUNS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

(34). Certain nouns derived from verbs may be considered as particular forms of the latter; they therefore range themselves naturally under the same head. The principal forms are the following:

(1) NOUN OF UNITY.

The Noun of Unity from trilateral verbs is of the measure *فَعْلَةٌ*; as *ضَرَبَ* "he struck," *ضَرْبَةٌ* "one blow."

From all derived conjugations, or quadrilaterals, it is formed by simply adding *ة* to the Noun of Action; as *إِنطَلَقَ* "departing" (7th conj. from *طَلَقَ*), *إِنطِلَاقَةٌ* "one departure."

(2) NOUN OF SPECIES.

The Noun of Species is of the form *فِعْلَةٌ* from trilateral verbs; as *رَكَبَ* "he rode," *رَكْبَةٌ* "mode or style of riding;" and from all other verbs it is formed in the same manner as the Noun of Unity; as *إِنطَلَقَ* "departing," *إِنطِلَاقَةٌ* "mode or style of departure."

(3) AGENT.

The Agent is formed as follows:—From simple trilaterals it is of the measure *فَاعِلٌ*; as *ضَرَبَ* "he struck," *ضَارِبٌ* "a striker;" from verbs of more than three letters it is formed by changing the first letter *يَ* of the aorist

into *ḥim* pointed with *ḍhammah*, and pointing the penultimate with *kesrah*; as

ل ح ر ج	ي د ح ر ج	to roll,	م د ح ر ج	a roller.
ا ك ر م	ي ك ر م	to be generous,	م ك ر م	one who acts generously.
ا س ت خ ر ج	ي س ت خ ر ج	to deduce,	م س ت خ ر ج	one who deduces.

(4) PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

From the simple trilateral verb this is always of the measure *مَفْعُولٌ*; as *مَضْرُوبٌ* “beaten.”

From all others it is formed by changing the initial letter of the aorist passive into *ḥim* pointed with *ḍhammah*; as—

Preterite.	Aorist.	Passive Participle.
ض ر ب		مَضْرُوبٌ beaten.
ل ح ر ج	ي د ح ر ج	م د ح ر ج rolled.
ا ك ر م	ي ك ر م	م ك ر م honoured.
ا س ت خ ر ج	ي س ت خ ر ج	م س ت خ ر ج deduced.

(5) NOUNS OF ACTION FORMED WITH *MIM*.

Besides the simple Noun of Action already described (31), a verbal noun almost equivalent to it in meaning is formed by changing the initial letter of the aorist *ya* into *ḥim* pointed with *fethah* in the simple trilateral verbs, and with *ḍhammah* in the quadrilaterals and augmented forms, the penultimate being pointed with *fethah* in every case, as :

Simple trilateral verbs, *مَفْعَلٌ*.

ض ر ب	to strike,	مَضْرِبٌ	striking.
ن ص ر	to assist,	مَنْصُرٌ	assisting.

Verbs of more than three letters, whether derived or otherwise, ^{مُ...عَلْ}.

^{اَكْرَمَ} to honour,	^{مُكْرِمٌ} honouring.
^{قَاتَلَ} to fight,	^{مُقَاتِلٌ} fighting.
^{اسْتَخْرَجَ} to deduce,	^{مُسْتَخْرِجٌ} deducing.

In verbs commencing with *wáw* and pointed with *kesrah* on the middle radical of the aorist, the *wáw*, as we shall presently see, is apocopated in the aorist: in forming this noun, however, it must be restored, and the penultimate, contrary to the general rule, then retains the *kesrah*; as

Preterite.	Aorist.	Verbal Noun in <i>mím</i> .
^{وَعَدَ} to promise,	^{يَعِدُ}	^{مَوْعِدٌ} promising.
^{وَرِثَ} to inherit,	^{يَرِثُ}	^{مَوْرِثٌ} inheriting.

The *kesrah* is sometimes, though rarely, retained in other verbs besides those beginning with weak *w*; as

Preterite.	Aorist.	Verbal Noun in <i>mím</i> .
^{رَجَعَ} to return,	^{يَرْجِعُ}	^{مَرْجِعٌ} returning.
^{صَارَ} to go or become,	^{يَصِيرُ}	^{مَصِيرٌ} going.
^{جَاءَ} to come,	^{يَجِيءُ}	^{مَجِيءٌ} coming.

(6) THE NOUN OF TIME AND PLACE.

This is formed in precisely the same manner as the Noun of Action in *mím*; namely

^{مَقْتَلٌ} from triliterals; as ^{مَقْتَلٌ} “a place of slaughter,” from ^{قَتَلَ} “to kill.”

^{مُدْحَرَجٌ} from verbs of four letters and upwards; as ^{مُدْحَرَجٌ} “a place of rolling,” from ^{دَحَرَجَ} “to roll;” ^{مُسْتَرِيٌ} “a place or time of pur-

chase," from *اِشْتَرَى* "to buy;" *مَقَام* "a place or station," from *أَقَامَ* "to remain stationary."

As in the verbal noun formed with *mím*, the *wáw* is restored and the *kesrah* retained in verbs of the form

Preterite.	Aorist.	
وَعَدَ	يَعِدُ	as وَعِدَ a place in which a promise is performed.

In all verbs commencing with و, even when the second radical of the aorist is not *kesrah*, the second radical of the Noun of Time and Place is pointed with that vowel; as

Preterite.	Aorist.	Noun of Time and Place.
وَضَعَ to put down.	يَضَعُ	وَضْعٌ a place.

All verbs having *kesrah* in the aorist retain that vowel in the noun of this form; as

Preterite.	Aorist.	Noun of Time and Place.
ضَرَبَ	يَضْرِبُ	مَضْرِبٌ a time or place of striking.

The penultimate sometimes, but rarely, takes *kesrah*, even when the last-mentioned rules do not apply; as

Preterite.	Aorist.	Noun of Time and Place.
طَلَعَ to rise,	يَطْلُعُ	مَطْلَعٌ a time or place of rising (of a star or constellation).
غَرَبَ to set,	يَغْرِبُ	مَغْرِبٌ a time or place of setting (of the sun), i.e. the West.
شَرَقَ to rise,	يَشْرِقُ	مَشْرِقٌ a time or place of rising (of the sun), i.e. the East.
سَجَدَ to adore,	يَسْجُدُ	مَسْجِدٌ a mosque.
نَسَكَ to perform the rites of the Hajj,	يَنْسِكُ	مَنْسِكٌ a time or place of sacrifice, or of performing the rites of the Hajj.

جزر to slaughter,	يَجْزِرُ	مَجْزَرٌ a time or place of slaughter.
سكن to dwell,	يَسْكُنُ	مَسْكَنٌ a dwelling.
نبت to grow,	يَنْبِتُ	مَنْبِتٌ a place where a plant grows.
رفق to rest the elbow,	يَرْفُقُ	مَرْفِقٌ a place where one leans with the elbow.
سقط to fall,	يَسْقُطُ	مَسْقُطٌ a place in which one falls.
فرق to part (the hair),	يَفْرِقُ	مَفْرِقٌ the parting of the hair.
نحر to breathe through the nose	يَنْخِرُ	مَنْخَرٌ the nostril.

(7) NOUN OF INSTRUMENT.

When a primitive noun it is of course irregular; as قَدِيمٌ “an adze,” سَكِينٌ “a knife.” When derived from verbs, the most common forms are :

MEASURE.

مِفْعَلٌ
مِفْعَالٌ

EXAMPLE.

مِزْبَرٌ a file.
مِفْتَاحٌ a key.

مِفْعَلَةٌ { (usually in words with)
a weak final radical,
but sometimes in sound
(verbs), } مِصْفَاةٌ (for مِصْفِيَّةٌ) a strainer.
مِكنَسَةٌ a broom.

Rare forms are :

مِفْعَلٌ as مِسْعُطٌ a snuff-box, مِأْخَلٌ a sieve, مِدْقٌ a pestle, anything used to pound with; مِدْهَنٌ an instrument for oiling or varnishing, also an oil-jar.¹

مِفْعَلَةٌ as مِكْحَلَةٌ a box for *kohl*, i.e. antimony, with which they anoint the eyes, مِحْرَصَةٌ a box for alkali or soda.

¹ The same form is used for the instrument with which a thing is applied, or in which it is kept.

(8) NOUN OF QUALITY.

This noun is called by the Arab grammarians “the Attribute resembling the Agent,” and implies the existence of an inherent quality.

From trilaterals it is irregular in formation; as ^{حَسَنٌ} “handsome,” from ^{حَسَنَ}; ^{عَطَشَانٌ} “thirsty,” from ^{عَطَشَ}; ^{فَاعِلٌ} “accomplished,” from ^{فَعَّلَ}.

It is seldom formed from any but neuter verbs of the measures ^{فَعَّلَ}, as ^{فَعْلٌ}, and ^{فَعِلَ}, as ^{عَلِمَ}.

From all beside the simple trilateral verb it is identical in form with the Agent; as ^{مُعْتَدِلٌ} “equable, moderate,” from ^{إِعْتَدَلَ}.

(9) NOUN OF COLOUR OR DEFECT.

This is properly ranked with the Noun of Quality, and is regular in its formation on the measure ^{أَفْعَلٌ}; as ^{أَسْمَرٌ} “brown,” ^{أَحُولٌ} “squinting,” ^{أَهْيَفٌ} “having a slender waist.”

It will be observed that the 9th conjugation of the derived forms is nothing more than this noun with its final radical doubled to give it action, and, in fact, transform it into a verb.

(10) NOUN OF SUPERIORITY (OR COMPARATIVE).

^{أَفْعَلٌ} as ^{أَفْضَلٌ} more accomplished, ^{أَعْلَمٌ} more learned.

This form serves for both comparative and superlative; as

^{أَكْبَرُ مِنْ زَيْدٍ} Greater than Zeid.
^{صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ}
^{أَكْبَرُ} God is Greatest.

If indefinite it is comparative and if definite superlative.

When its use is impossible, the word أَشَدُّ “stronger” is employed instead, followed by the adverbial accusative of the noun; as

أَشَدُّ حُمْرَةً Stronger as to redness,

because the form أَحْمَرٌ, signifies the presence of colour without reference to its degree, and has not, therefore, a comparative or superlative force.

It follows from this that the Noun of Superiority, when formed from simple trilaterals, is always of the first-mentioned measure أَفْعُلْ.

From all other verbs it is made by the addition of the word أَشَدُّ “more” or “stronger;” as

أَشَدُّ انتِقَامًا more or most vengeful.

(11) THE NOUN OF EXCESS OR INTENSIVE AGENT.

The most common forms of this noun are :

فَعَّالٌ	as	نَصَّارٌ	a great helper.
فَعِيلٌ	,,	صَدِيقٌ	a very truthful person.
مُنْعِيلٌ	,,	مُسْكِينٌ	a poor or wretched person.
مُنْعَالٌ	,,	مُكْسَلٌ	a very lazy person.
فُعُولٌ	,,	رَسُولٌ	an apostle, one entrusted with an important mission.
		جَهُولٌ	a very ignorant man.
فَعِيلٌ	,,	مَرِيضٌ	ill, sick.
		جَرِيحٌ	wounded.

This last form is often equivalent in meaning to the passive participle *مَنْعُولٌ*.

In all the above cases the addition of a consonant or long vowel appears to give a sense of intensity, corresponding in this respect to the four-letter group of derived verbs.

By the addition of *ā* to imply unity, still greater intensity is given to the noun; as

عَلَامَةٌ a very learned man.

رَآوِيَّةٌ a reciter.

Other but rarer forms of the Noun of Excess are :

فَعْلٌ as *غَفْلٌ* very heedless.

فَعْلَةٌ „ *ضَحْكَةٌ* a man who laughs a great deal
(with the *ā* of unity).

فَاعُولٌ „ *فَارُوقٌ* Discriminating (a title of the
Khalīfeh Omar).

فَعُولٌ „ *قُدُّوسٌ* Most Holy.

فَعْلٌ „ *ضَخْمٌ* bulky.

فَعْلٌ „ *حَذِرٌ* cautious.

Note.—It will be found of great assistance to the student to take any of the roots which have been given as examples in the preceding pages and construct for himself the various derived forms by means of the tables and the dictionary. Thus he may take the root *ضَرَبَ* occurring several times on page 47. The dictionaries will tell him that *ضَرَبَ* makes its aorist *يَضْرِبُ*, and this by the table on page 32 he will see belongs to the third class of simple triliterals.

In the table on pp. 56—57 then we find that the imperative of this class is **اِفْعَلْ**, and by substituting (1) **ض** for **ف** (2) **ر** for **ع** and (3) **ب** for **ل** we get **اِضْرِبْ**, which is the imperative of the verb in question.

Coming next to the noun of action, we find that for transitive verbs the form is **فَعْلٌ** and **ضَرْبٌ** belonging to this class, its noun of action should be **ضَرْبٌ**, which is the proper form. Similarly we get

Noun of Unity.	Agent.	Patient.	Noun of Action in <i>mim.</i>
ضَرْبَةٌ	ضَارِبٌ	مَضْرُوبٌ	مَضْرِبٌ

Again, amongst the derived conjugations, suppose we wish to form the third; we have then

Preterite.	Aorist.
ضَارَبَ = فَاعَلَ	يُضَارِبُ = يَبْ...عَلُ

i.e. (the dots implying that any letters coming between the first and second radicals are unchanged) **يُضَارِبُ**.

Passive (Preterite).	Passive (Aorist).
ضُورِبَ = فُوعِلَ	يُضَارَبُ = يُ...عَلُ

i.e. (all intermediate letters remaining unchanged) **يُضَارَبُ**.

Noun of Action.	Agent.
مُضَارَبَةٌ = مُفَاعَلَةٌ	مُ...عَلٌ

i.e. (the letters represented by the dots being unchanged as before) **مُضَارَبٌ**.

Patient.	} مُضَارَبٌ = as before مُ...عَلٌ
Noun of Action in <i>mim.</i>	
Noun of Time and Place.	

And so on with all the other forms.

As it is in this method of deriving its forms that Arabic differs from all non-Semitic languages, the importance of early acquiring practice in it cannot be over-estimated.

Another advantage is that the learner speedily begins to appreciate the fact that, when he has once mastered the table, every fresh root that he learns adds some six or seven score of fresh words to his vocabulary together with the different shades of meaning of each.

The following table shews the correspondence between the various derived verbal forms :

SIMPLE TRILITERAL VERB.		ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.		Impera- tive.	NOUN OF ACTION.	
		Preterite.	Aorist.	Preterite.	Aorist.		Transitive.	Neuter.
1. (See p. 32.)	Class 1	فَعَلَ	يَفْعُلُ	فُعِلَ	يُفْعَلُ	أَفْعُلْ	فَعْلٌ	فُعُولٌ
	„ 2	”	يَفْعُلُ	”	”	أَفْعُلْ	”	”
	„ 3	”	يَفْعُلُ	”	”	أَفْعُلْ	”	”
	„ 4	فَعِلَ	يَفْعُلُ	”	”	أَفْعُلْ	”	فَعْلٌ
	„ 5	”	يَفْعُلُ	”	”	أَفْعُلْ	”	”
	„ 6	فَعَلَ	يَفْعُلُ	”	”	أَفْعُلْ	”	{ فَعَالَةٌ فُعُولَةٌ فَعْلٌ }
DERIVED CONJUGATIONS.								
1ST GROUP. (One letter added.)	2	فَعَّلَ	يُفَعِّلُ عِلٌ	فُعِّلَ	يُفَعِّلُ عِلٌ	فُفَعِّلْ	{ تَفْعِيلٌ تَفْعِيلَةٌ }	
	3	فَاعَلَ	”	فُوعِلَ	”	”	{ فُعَالٌ مُفَاعَلَةٌ }	
	4	أَفْعَلَ	”	أَفْعِلَ	”	أَفْعِلْ	إِفْعَالٌ	
2ND GROUP. (ت prefixed.)	5	تَفَعَّلَ	يَتَفَعَّلُ عِلٌ	تُفَعِّلُ عِلٌ	”	تَفَعَّلْ	تَفَعُّلٌ	
	6	تَفَاعَلَ	”	”	”	”	”	
3RD GROUP. (Two or more let- ters added.)	7	إِفْعَعَلَ	يُفْعَعِّلُ عِلٌ	”	”	إِفْعَعِّلْ	إِفْعَعُّلٌ	
	8	إِفْعَعَلَ	”	”	”	”	”	
	10	إِسْتَفْعَلَ	”	”	”	”	”	
4TH GROUP. (Colour or Defect.)	9	إِفْعَلَّ	يَفْعَلُّ عِلٌ	”	”	إِفْعَلِّلْ	إِفْعَلِّلٌ	
	11	إِفْعَالَّ	يَفْعَالُّ	”	”	”	”	
	12	إِفْعَوَعَ	يَفْعَوُّ عِلٌ	”	”	إِفْعَوِّلْ	إِفْعَوِّلٌ	
	13	إِفْعَوَّلَ	”	”	”	”	”	

TABLE OF FORMS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

[illegible]

IRREGULAR VERBS.

(36). Irregular verbs are those of which the second and third radicals are alike, or which contain one of the weak letters *أ*, *و*, or *ي*. They are of five kinds:

I. *Doubled*, in which the second and third radical are alike, and in the inflections of which an assimilation of the two last letters takes place for the sake of euphony; as *مَدَدَ* for *مَدَدَ*.

II. *Hemzated*, in which one of the three radicals is a *hemzeh*; as *أَخَذَ* “he took,” *سَأَلَ* “he asked,” *قَرَأَ* “he read.”

III. *Assimilated*, in which the first radical is either *و* or *ي*; as *وَعَدَ* “he promised,” *يَبَسَ* “it was dry.”

[As the occurrence of either of these weak letters in the place of the first radical affects the forms of the verb but slightly, the inflection is *assimilated* to that of the sound verbs, whence the name].

IV. *Hollow*, which have one of the weak letters *و* or *ي* for the medial letter; as *قَالَ* (for *قَوَلَ*) “he said,” *بَاعَ* (for *بَيَعَ*) “he sold.”

V. *Defective*, of which the final radical is a weak letter; as *خَرَأَ* (for *خَرَوَ*) “he made a raid,” *رَوَى* (for *رَوِيَ*) “he threw,” *رَضَى* (for *رَضُوَ*).

Combinations of these may of course occur, and a verb may have all the three radicals weak; as *أَوَى* “he repaired to,” “he had recourse to.”

It will be noticed that the weak consonants or semi-vowels are *أ* *hemzeh* (not *alif*), *و* *wáw*, and *ي* *yá*: *alif* is not regarded as a consonant at all, but only as a prop for *hemzeh* or as a letter of prolongation.

(37). PARADIGMS OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

I. DOUBLED VERBS.

مَدَّ "to extend," فَرَّ "to flee," عَضَّ "to bite."

PASSIVE.		Imperative.	ACTIVE.		
Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Passive.	
يُمَدُّ	مَدَّ	مَدِّ	يُمَدُّ	مَدَّ	1
يُفَرُّ	فَرَّ	فَرِّ	يُفَرُّ	فَرَّ	2
يُعَضُّ	عَضَّ	عَضِّ	يُعَضُّ	عَضَّ	3

In the preterite and aorist the only change is the euphonic assimilation, as مَدَّ for مَدَّ, and يُمَدُّ for يُمَدُّ; as this throws back the vowel of the second radical in the aorist, the *hemzet el-wasl* is no longer required in the imperative. See (11) and (25).

DERIVED CONJUGATIONS OF THE DOUBLED VERB.

Verbal Noun.	Imperative.	PASSIVE.		ACTIVE.		
		Aorist.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Preterite.	
إِمْدَانٌ	{ أَمَدِّ or أَمَدِّ }	يُمَدُّ	أَمَدَّ	يُمَدُّ	أَمَدَّ	4th
تَمْدِيدٌ	مَدِّ	يُمَدِّ	مَدَّ	يُمَدِّ	مَدَّ	2nd
مُحَادَّةٌ or مُحَادَّةٌ	{ مَادَّ or مَادَّ }	يُمَادُّ	مُودِّ	{ يُمَادُّ or يُمَادُّ }	{ مَادَّ or مَادَّ }	3rd
تَمْدُنٌ	تَمَدِّ	يَتَمَدِّ	تَمَدَّ	يَتَمَدِّ	تَمَدَّ	5th
تَمَانٌ	تَمَادِّ	يَتَمَادُّ	تُمُودِّ	يَتَمَادُّ	{ تَمَادَّ or تَمَادَّ }	6th
إِنْمِدَانٌ	إِنْمَدِّ	يُنْمَدُّ	أَنْمَدَّ	يُنْمَدُّ	أَنْمَدَّ	7th
إِسْتِدَانٌ	إِسْتَدِّ	يُسْتَدُّ	أَسْتَدَّ	يُسْتَدُّ	أَسْتَدَّ	8th
إِسْتِمْدَانٌ	إِسْتَمَدِّ	يُسْتَمَدُّ	أَسْتَمَدَّ	يُسْتَمَدُّ	أَسْتَمَدَّ	10th

It will be noticed that in the 3rd and 6th the ^ا (which is the characteristic letter of the conjugation), is in the passive changed by the ^و (which is the characteristic vowel of the voice), into the corresponding semi-vowel, namely ^و. The forms ^{مَادَ}, ^{مَادَ}, etc., as well as ^{مَادَ} (for ^{مَادَ}), in the agent, are exceptions to the rule which prohibits a quiescent letter from following a long vowel. There are two reasons which make this exception admissible: first, that if the long vowel were shortened it would be impossible to distinguish between such forms as the 3rd conj. active and the passive of the first; and, second, because when the assimilation is resolved, the first letter is found to be only *apparently* quiescent, e.g. ^{مَادَ} = ^{مَادَ}, and not ^{مَادَ}.¹

PRETERITE OF THE DOUBLED VERB.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
^{مَدَدْنَ}	^{مَدُّوا}	^{مَدَّتَا}	^{مَدَّا}	^{مَدَّتْ}	^{مَدَّ} 3rd person.
^{مَدَدْتُمْ}	^{مَدَدْتُمْ}	^{مَدَدْتُمَا}		^{مَدَدْتِ}	^{مَدَدْتُ} ² 2nd „
^{مَدَدْنَا}				^{مَدَدْتُ}	1st „

It will be observed that the assimilated letters are

¹ In these paradigms I have omitted examples of the 4th group of derived conjugations, as they are of rare occurrence, and when they are found the weak radical seldom undergoes permutation.

² Two other forms of the 2nd person preterite are admissible, namely: ^{مَدَدْتِ} as ^{مَدَدْتِ} or ^{مَدَدْتِ} as ^{مَدَدْتِ}. The last is constantly used in modern Arabic.

N.B.—Where a consonant may be pronounced with any one of two or three vowels, all the vowels are written as in ^{مَدَدْتِ}, which may stand for the 1st person or the 2nd person masculine, or the 2nd person feminine of the preterite. It is usual in such cases in MSS. to write the word ^{مَعًا} “together,” in small characters over the whole.

resolved whenever the second of the two letters would be quiescent, because otherwise it would violate the rule which prohibits two quiescent letters from occurring together.

The passive differs from the active only in the vowels.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
مُذِّنَ	مُذَوَّا	مُذَّتَا	مُذَّا	مُذَّتْ	مُذَّ 3rd person.
مُذِّتَنَ	مُذِّتَمَ	مُذِّتَمَا		مُذِّتَتْ	مُذِّتَتْ 2nd „
مُذِّنَا				مُذِّتَتْ	1st „

AORIST OF THE DOUBLED VERB

The aorist is also regular, the only changes being the necessary resolution of the assimilated letters in the feminines plural, as يَمُذِّنَ where يَمُذَّنْ would violate the rule above referred to.

AORIST ACTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يَمُذِّنَ	يَمُذُونُ	يَمُذَّانِ	يَمُذَّانِ	يَمُذُّ	يَمُذُّ 3rd person.
يَمُذِّنَ	يَمُذُونُ	يَمُذَّانِ		يَمُذِّينَ	يَمُذُّ 2nd „
يَمُذِّنَا				يَمُذُّ	1st „

AORIST PASSIVE

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يَمُذَّنَ	يَمُذُونُ	يَمُذَّانِ	يَمُذَّانِ	يَمُذُّ	يَمُذُّ 3rd person.
يَمُذِّنَ	يَمُذُونُ	يَمُذَّانِ		يَمُذِّينَ	يَمُذُّ 2nd „
يَمُذِّنَا				يَمُذُّ	1st „

IMPERATIVE OF THE DOUBLED VERB.

The same remarks apply to this as to the other tenses. It will be noticed, however, that in the plural fem. the *hemzet el-wasl* is restored by the rule (25) given on p. 29.

PLURAL.		DUAL.	SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Common.	Fem.	Masc.
أَمْدَدْنَ	مَدَدَا	مَدَا	مُدِّي	مُدِّ 2nd person.

II. HEMZATED VERBS.

1. Verbs having *hemzeh* for the first radical.—أَثَرٌ “to relate,” أَمَلَ “to hope,” أَرَجَ “to exhale or diffuse an odour,” أَهَبَ “to equip,”¹ أَسَلَ “to be slender.”

PASSIVE.		Imperative.	ACTIVE.		
Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.	
يُؤَثَّرُ	أَثَرَ	إِثْرُ	يَأْثُرُ	أَثَرَ	1
يُؤَمَّلُ	أَمَلَ	أَمِلْ	يَأْمَلُ	أَمَلَ	2
يُؤَرَّجُ	أَرَجَ	إِرْجُ	يَأْرَجُ	أَرَجَ	3
[يُؤَسَّلُ]	[أَسَلَ]	[أُسِلْ]	يَأْسَلُ	أَسَلَ	5

These forms, it will be seen, correspond exactly to those of the sound verbs (p. 32). The only change being that when the *alif* which supports the *hemzeh* is preceded by a vowel, — or —, characteristic of the form, it is changed into the corresponding semivowel, as يَأْثُرُ for يُوَثَّرُ.

¹ This verb is not used in the 1st conjugation, but is given in native grammars as an example of the form.

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH INITIAL HEMZEH.

Verbal Noun.	Imperative.	PASSIVE.		ACTIVE.		
		Aorist.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Preterite.	
إِشَارَ	أَشِرْ	يُوشِرْ	أَوَّشِرْ	يُوشِرْ	أَشِرْ	4th
تَأْثِيرَ	أَثِرْ	يُؤْثِرْ	أَثَرْ	يُؤْثِرْ	أَثِرْ	2nd
مَوَاقِدَ	أَثِرْ	يُؤْثِرْ	أَوَّثِرْ	يُؤْثِرْ	أَثِرْ	3rd
تَأْثِرَ	تَأْثِرْ	يَتَأْثِرْ	تَوَثِّرْ	يَتَأْثِرْ	تَأْثِرْ	5th
تَأْثِرَ	تَأْثِرْ	يَتَأْثِرْ	تَوَثِّرْ	يَتَأْثِرْ	تَأْثِرْ	6th
إِنْشَارَ	إِنْشِرْ	يُنْشِرْ	أَنْوِثِرْ	يُنْشِرْ	إِنْشِرْ	7th
إِيتَارَ	إِيتِرْ	يُؤْتِرْ	أَوْتِرْ	يُؤْتِرْ	إِيتِرْ	8th
إِسْتِمَارَ	إِسْتَأِرْ	يُسْتَأِرْ	أَسْتَوِّرْ	يُسْتَأِرْ	إِسْتَأِرْ	10th

Here again the only changes are those undergone by the *alif* ا, which serves as the prop to *hemzeh*, as أَثَرٌ for يَأْثِرُ for يُوْثِرُ as before. In the 4th and 8th, إِشَارٌ and إِيْتَارٌ are for إِنْشَارٌ and إِنْوِثَارٌ, where the second of two *hemzehs* which come together yields and is changed into the ي, corresponding to the preceding vowel *kesrah*. So too in the passive of the 4th, أَوَّثِرْ is for أَثَرٌ. In the verbal noun of the 7th and 10th the *hemzeh* with *kesrah* beginning a syllable but not a word, has for its prop a ي without dots. See (12) p. 14. In the 8th إِيْتَرٌ is sometimes further contracted into إِثَرٌ, as إِتَخَذَ from أَخَذَ.

2. Verbs having *hemzeh* for the medial radical.—سَمَ "to be wearied," سَأَلَ "to ask," لَوَمَ "to be mean."

PASSIVE.		Imperative.	ACTIVE.		
Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.	
يَسَامُ	سَمِ	إِسَامُ ¹	يَسَامُ	سَمِ	1
يَسَالُ	سَلَ	إِسَالُ ¹	يَسَالُ	سَالُ	2
يَلَامُ	لَمِ	الْوَمُ	يَلَامُ	لَمِ	3

All the changes in this and the table of derived forms, depend upon the rule that a *hemzeh* beginning a syllable, but not a word, takes as its prop the semivowel homogeneous to the vowel by which it is surmounted, and if this be ي the dots are omitted.

DERIVED FORMS OF VERBS WITH INITIAL HEMZEH.

Verbal Noun.	Imperative.	PASSIVE.		ACTIVE.		
		Aorist.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Preterite.	
إِسَالٌ	اسْمَلْ	يَسَالُ	اسْمَلْ	يَسْمَلُ	اسَالُ	4th
تَسْمِيلٌ	تَسْمَلْ	يَسْمَلُ	تَسْمَلْ	يَسْمَلُ	تَسَالُ	2nd
مَسْأَلَةٌ	سَأَلْ	يَسْأَلُ	سَوَّلْ	يَسْأَلُ	مَسْأَلُ	3rd
تَسْأَلٌ	تَسْأَلْ	يَتَسْأَلُ	تَسْمَلْ	يَتَسْأَلُ	تَسْأَلُ	5th
تَسْأَلٌ	تَسْأَلْ	يَتَسْأَلُ	تَسْوَلْ	يَتَسْأَلُ	تَسْأَلُ	6th
إِنْسَالٌ	اِنْسَلْ	يَنْسَالُ	اِنْسَلْ	يَنْسَمَلُ	اِنْسَالُ	7th
اِسْتِمَالٌ	اِسْتَمَلْ	يَسْتَمَلُ	اِسْتَمَلْ	يَسْتَمَلُ	اِسْتَالُ	8th
اِسْتِسْمَالٌ	اِسْتَسْمَلْ	يَسْتَسْمَلُ	اِسْتَسْمَلْ	يَسْتَسْمَلُ	اِسْتَسْمَالُ	10th

¹ The ء is sometimes dropped in the imperative, in which case the *hemzet el-waṣl* is no longer needed, (25) p. 30. Thus اِسْمَالُ becomes سَمَلْ.

3. Verbs with *hemzeh* for the final radical.—هَنَا “to congratulate,” بَرَأَ “to create,” صَدَى “to rust,” قَرَأَ “to read,” جَرَوُ “to be brave.”

PASSIVE.		Imperative.	ACTIVE.		
Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.	
يُهَنَّى	هَنَى	اهْنِي	يُهَنَّى	هَنَا	1
يُبْرَأُ	بَرَأَ	ابْرَأْ	يُبْرَأُ	بَرَأَ	2
يُصَدَّى	صَدَى	اصْدَأْ	يُصَدَّى	صَدَى	3
يُقْرَأُ	قَرَى	اقْرَأْ	يُقْرَأُ	قَرَأَ	4
يُجْرَوُ	جَرَى	اجْرَوُ	يُجْرَوُ	جَرَوُ	5

All the changes in these, as well as the derived forms, depend upon the rule that the prop for *hemzeh* may be a weak consonant homogeneous to the preceding vowel.

DERIVED FORMS OF VERB WITH FINAL HEMZEH.

Verbal Noun.	Imperative.	PASSIVE.		ACTIVE.		
		Aorist.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Preterite.	
إِبْرَأْ	ابْرَأْ	يُبْرَأُ	أَبْرَى	يُبْرِي	أَبْرَأَ	4th
تَبْرَأْ	بَرَأْ	يُبْرَأُ	بَرَى	يُبْرِي	بَرَأَ	2nd
مَبَارَاةٌ	بَارِ	يُبَارَأُ	بُورَى	يُبَارِي	بَارَأَ	3rd
تَبْرَوُ	تَبْرَأْ	يَتَبْرَأُ	تَبْرَى	يَتَبْرِي	تَبْرَأَ	5th
تَبَارَوُ	تَبَارَأْ	يَتَبَارَأُ	تَبُورَى	يَتَبَارِي	تَبَارَأَ	6th
إِنْبِرَأْ	إِنْبَرِ	يُنْبَرَأُ	أَنْبَرَى	يُنْبَرِي	أَنْبَرَأَ	7th
إِنْبِرَأْ	إِنْبَرِ	يُنْبَرَأُ	أَنْبَرَى	يُنْبَرِي	أَنْبَرَأَ	8th
إِسْتَبْرَأْ	إِسْتَبْرِ	يُسْتَبْرَأُ	أَسْتَبْرَى	يُسْتَبْرِي	أَسْتَبْرَأَ	10th

The tenses of the *hemzated* verbs do not differ from those of the sound verb, thus :

INITIAL HEMZEH.

Preterite Active	اَثَرَ	اَثَرْتُ	اَثَرْتُ, etc.
„ Passive	اُثِرَ	اُثِرْتُ	اُثِرْتُ, etc.
Aorist Active	يُأَثِرُ	يُؤَثِّرُ, etc.	
„ Passive	يُؤَثَّرُ	يُؤَثَّرُ, etc.	

MEDIAL HEMZEH.

Preterite Active	سَالَ	سَالَتْ	سَالَتْ, etc.
„ Passive	سُئِلَ	سُئِلْتُ	سُئِلْتُ, etc.
Aorist Active	يَسَالُ	يُسَالُ, etc.	
„ Passive	يُسَالُ	يُسَالُ, etc.	

FINAL HEMZEH.

Preterite Active	بَرَا	بَرَأْتُ	بَرَأْتُ, etc.
„ Passive	بُرِيَ	بُرِئْتُ	بُرِئْتُ, etc.
Aorist Active	يُبْرِئُ	يُبْرِئُ, etc.	
„ Passive	يُبْرِئُ	يُبْرِئُ, etc.	

III. ASSIMILATED VERBS.

The changes that take place in these verbs are: (1) when either *kesrah* or *dhammah* precedes the weak letter, they change it into the homogeneous weak consonant; N.B. when *fethah* precedes it, a diphthong is formed;

(2) when the verb is of the measure **يَعْلُ** in the aorist, the **و** of verbs beginning with that letter is dropped in that tense.

1. INITIAL **و**.

وَعَدَ "to promise," **وَجَلَ** "to be afraid," **وَدَعَ** "to let alone," **وَرِثَ** "to inherit," **وَسَمَ** "to be beautiful."

PASSIVE.		Imperative.	ACTIVE.		
Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.	
يُوعَدُ	وُعِدَ	عِدْ	يَعِدُ	وَعَدَ	1
يُوجَلُ	وُجِلَ	اِجْلِ	يُوجَلُ	وَجَلَ	2
يُودَعُ	وُدِعَ	Wanting.	Wanting.	وَدَعَ	3
يُورِثُ	وَرِثَ	رِثْ	يَرِثُ	وَرِثَ	4
يُوسَمُ [يُوسَم]	وُسِمَ [وُسِم]	اَوْسَمْ	يُوسَمُ	وَسَمَ	5

The tenses are declined exactly like the sound verb, *e.g.* :

Preterite	وَعَدَ	وَعَدْتَ	وَعَدْتُ, etc.
Aorist	يَعِدُ	تَعِدُ	etc.
Ditto	يُوسَمُ	تُوسَمُ	etc.

The **و** in most of these verbs is also rejected in forming the verbal noun, but a **ز** is added by way of compensation, as

Preterite.	Aorist.	Noun.
وَعَدَ	يَعِدُ	عِدَّةٌ
وَدَعَ	يُدِعُ	دَعَةٌ
وَرِثَ	يَرِثُ	رِثْنَةٌ

2. INITIAL ي.

يَنَع “to ascend,” يَس “to be dry,” يَس “to ripen,” يَس “to be easy.”

PASSIVE.		Imperative.	ACTIVE.	
Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.
يُنَع	يَنَع	إِنَع	يُنَع	يَنَع
يُوس	يَس	إِيس	يُوس	يَس
يُفَع	يَفَع	إِفَع	يُفَع	يَفَع
يُوسِر	يُسِر	أُوسِر	يُوسِر	يُسِر

The initial ي does not make any change in the form, unless it be preceded by ء, in which case it becomes و. See p. 22.

DERIVED FORMS OF ASSIMILATED VERBS.

Verbal Noun.	Imperative.	PASSIVE.		ACTIVE.		
		Aorist.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Preterite.	
إِيعَان	أُوعِدْ	يُوعِدْ	أُوعِدْ	يُوعِدْ	أُوعِدْ	4th
تَوْعِيد	وَعِدْ	يُوعِدْ	وَعِدْ	يُوعِدْ	وَعِدْ	2nd
مَوَاعِدَة	وَاعِدْ	يُوعِدْ	وُوعِدْ	يُوعِدْ	وَاعِدْ	3rd
تَوْعِدْ	تَوْعِدْ	يُتَوْعِدْ	تَوْعِدْ	يُتَوْعِدْ	تَوْعِدْ	5th
تَوَاعِدْ	تَوَاعِدْ	يُتَوَاعِدْ	تَوُوعِدْ	يُتَوَاعِدْ	تَوَاعِدْ	6th
إِنْوَعَان	إِنْوَعِدْ	يُنْوَعِدْ	أِنْوَعِدْ	يُنْوَعِدْ	إِنْوَعِدْ	7th
إِتْعَان	إِتْعِدْ	يُنْعِدْ	أِتْعِدْ	يُنْعِدْ	إِتْعِدْ	8th
إِسْتِيعَان	إِسْتَوْعِدْ	يُسْتَوْعِدْ	أِسْتَوْعِدْ	يُسْتَوْعِدْ	إِسْتَوْعِدْ	10th

IV. THE HOLLOW VERB.

[In order to explain the nature of a medial و or ي, I must make a hypothesis. Let us suppose that the names "hollow" or "defective" really mean what they imply; namely, that the *hollow* verb has no medial radical consonant, and that the *defective* verb is actually defective in the final radical; we may then represent the hiatus by the mark * as we should do in ordinary writing; and if we refer them to one of the six classes under which the sound verbs are arranged, all difficulty vanishes. Thus قَالَ, aorist يَقُولُ, is in the dictionaries and grammars said to be a verb with a medial و of the measure فَعَلَ, aorist يَفْعَلُ, i.e. it belongs to class 1; see (26). In this case the قَالَ stands for قَوْلَ and يَقُولُ for يَقْوُلُ; the second is an obviously euphonic change, but the first is not so evidently required, since قَوْلُ *kawala* would be as easy to pronounce as قَبَلُ *kabala*.

If, however, we regard it as a *really* hollow verb, the measure will be ف_*َلْ; then instead of saying that its medial radical is و (in which case, having a medial radical, it could not be hollow), let us refer it to the class of sound verbs to which it belongs, namely يَفْعَلُ, فَعَلَ, and we get ف_*َلْ, يَفْعَلُ. Here the two *fethahs* in ف_*َلْ coalesce into َ; and the ُ *dhammah* in يَفْعَلُ, from its position in the penultimate, where it naturally receives an accent, retains the long sound which I have already supposed to be inherent to all vowels; see (5). The form is then written يَقْوُلُ, and the و, thus obtained is treated as the radical letter of the root. Similarly بَاعَ, aorist يَبِيعُ, with a medial يا ي, may be written ب_*َاعَ and referred to class 2, يَفْعَلُ, فَعَلَ, becoming ب_*َاعَ, يَبِيعُ, that is بَاعَ, يَبِيعُ. This is, of course, merely a hypothesis, but it at least suggests the *principle* of the permutations which take place in the forms of Arabic irregular verbs.]

“to fear.” خَافَ “to say,” قَالَ “to sell,” بَاعَ

PASSIVE.		Imperative.	ACTIVE.		
Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.	
يُبَاعُ	بِيعَ	بِعْ	يَبِيعُ	بَاعَ	1
يُقَالُ	قِيلَ	قُلْ	يَقُولُ	قَالَ	2
يُخَافُ	خِيفَ	خَفْ	يَخَافُ	خَافَ	3

DERIVED FORMS OF HOLLOW VERBS.

Verbal Noun.	Imperative.	PASSIVE.		ACTIVE.		
		Aorist.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Preterite.	
إِقَالَةٌ	اقْلِ	يُقَالُ	أَقِيلَ	يُقِيلُ	أَقَالَ	4th
تَقْوِيلٌ	قُولِ	يَقُولُ	قَوَّلَ	يَقْوُولُ	قَوَّلَ	2nd
مَقَاوِلَةٌ	قَاوِلِ	يَقَاوِلُ	قَوَّوِلَ	يَقَاوِلُ	قَاوَلَ	3rd
تَقْوِلٌ	تَقُولِ	يَتَقْوِلُ	تَقَوَّلَ	يَتَقْوُولُ	تَقَوَّلَ	5th
تَقَاوِلٌ	تَقَاوِلِ	يَتَقَاوِلُ	تَقَوَّوِلَ	يَتَقَاوِلُ	تَقَاوَلَ	6th
إِنْقِيَالٌ	إِنْقِلِ	يَنْقَالُ	أَنْقِيلَ	يَنْقِيلُ	أَنْقَالَ	7th
إِقْتِيَالٌ	إِقْتَلِ	يَقْتَالُ	أَقْتِيلَ	يَقْتِيلُ	أَقْتَالَ	8th
إِسْتِقَالَةٌ	إِسْتَقِلِ	يَسْتَقَالُ	أَسْتَقِيلَ	يَسْتَقِيلُ	أَسْتَقَالَ	10th

In the noun of action of verbs with a weak medial this radical is elided and ة added at the end to make up for it, as from قَامَ

إِقْوَامٌ for إِقَامَةٌ
إِسْتِقْوَامٌ ,, إِسْتِقَامَةٌ

The agent of the triliteral is فَاعِلٌ; of all the others it is

made by prefixing ^و to the aorist, and pointing the last radical but one with *kesrah*.

PRETERITE OF THE HOLLOW VERB (MEDIAL ^و), MEASURE ^{فَعَلَ} يَفْعَلُ.

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
قَلْنَ	قَالُوا	قَالَتَا	قَالَا	قَالَتْ	قَالَ 3rd person.
قَلْتُمْ	قَلْتُمْ	قَلْتُمَا		قُلْتِ	قُلْتَ 2nd „
قَلْنَا				قُلْتُ	1st „

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
قِلْنَ	قِيلُوا	قِيلَتَا	قِيلَا	قِيلَتْ	قِيلَ 3rd person.
قِلْتُمْ	قِلْتُمْ	قِلْتُمَا		قِلْتِ	قِلْتَ 2nd „
قِلْنَا				قِلْتُ	1st „

AORIST OF THE HOLLOW VERB (MEDIAL ^و).

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يَقْلْنَ	يَقُولُونَ	يَقُولَانِ	يَقُولَانِ	تَقُولُ	يَقُولُ 3rd person.
تَقْلْتُمْ	تَقُولُونَ	تَقُولَانِ		تَقُولِينَ	تَقُولُ 2nd „
نَقُولُ				أَقُولُ	1st „

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يَقْلْنَ	يَقَالُونَ	يَقَالَانِ	يَقَالَانِ	تَقَالُ	يَقَالُ 3rd person.
تَقْلْتُمْ	تَقَالُونَ	تَقَالَانِ		تَقَالِينَ	تَقَالُ 2nd „
نُقَالُ				أَقَالُ	1st „

IMPERATIVE OF THE HOLLOW VERB (MEDIAL و).

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Common.		Masc.	Fem.
قُلْنَ	قُولُوا	قُولَا		قُولِي	قُلْ 2nd person.

PRETERITE OF THE HOLLOW VERB (MEDIAL ي), MEASURE فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ.

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
بَعْنَ	بَاعُوا	بَاعَتَا	بَاعَا	بَاعَتْ	بَاعَ 3rd person.
بَعْنِ	بَعِمَ	بَعِمَا		بَعَتْ	بَعَتْ 2nd „
بَعْنَا				بَعْتُ	بَعْتُ 1st „

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
بِيعْنَ	بِيعُوا	بِيعَتَا	بِيعَا	بِيعَتْ	بِيعَ 3rd person.
بِيعْنِ	بِيعِمَ	بِيعِمَا		بِيعَتْ	بِيعَتْ 2nd „
بِيعْنَا				بِيعْتُ	بِيعْتُ 1st „

AORIST OF THE HOLLOW VERB (MEDIAL ي).

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يَبْعْنَ	يَبْعُوا	يَبْعَتَا	يَبْعَا	يَبْعَتْ	يَبْعَ 3rd person.
يَبْعْنِ	يَبْعِمَ	يَبْعِمَا		يَبْعَتْ	يَبْعَتْ 2nd „
يَبْعْنَا				يَبْعْتُ	يَبْعْتُ 1st „

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
يَبْعُونَ	يَبْعُونَ	يَبْعَانِ	يَبْعَانِ	يَبْعُ	يَبْعُ 3rd person.
تَبْعُونَ	تَبْعُونَ	تَبْعَانِ		تَبْعِينَ	تَبْعُ 2nd „
نَبْعُونَ				أَبْعُ	1st „

IMPERATIVE OF THE HOLLOW VERB (MEDIAL ي).

PLURAL.		DUAL.	SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Common.	Fem.	Masc.
يَبْعِي	يَبْعُوا	يَبْعَا	يَبْعِي	يَبْعُ 2nd person.

PRETERITE OF THE HOLLOW VERB (MEDIAL ا), MEASURE يُفْعِلُ.

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
خَفْنَ	خَافُوا	خَافَتَا	خَافَا	خَافَتْ	خَافَ 3rd person.
خَفْتُنَّ	خَفْتُمُ	خَفْتُمَا		خَفْتِ	خَفْتَ 2nd „
خَفْنَا				خَفْتُ	1st „

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
خُفْنَ	خُفُوا	خُفْتَا	خُفَا	خُفْتُ	خُفَّ 3rd person.
خُفْتُنَّ	خُفْتُمُ	خُفْتُمَا		خُفْتِ	خُفْتَ 2nd „
خُفْنَا				خُفْتُ	1st „

AORIST OF THE HOLLOW VERBS (MEDIAL 1), MEASURE **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ**.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يَخْفَيْنَ	يَخْفَوْنَ	تَخَافَانِ	يَخَافَانِ	تَخَافُ	يَخَافُ	3rd person.
تَخَفْنَ	تَخَفُونَ	تَخَافَانِ		تَخَافُ	تَخَافِينَ	2nd „
نَخَافُ				أَخَافُ		1st „

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يُخَفْنَ	يُخَفُونَ	يُخَفَانِ	يُخَفَانِ	يُخَفُ	يُخَفُ	3rd person.
تُخَفْنَ	تُخَفُونَ	تُخَفَانِ		تُخَفُ	تُخَفِينَ	2nd „
نُخَفُ				أُخَفُ		1st „

IMPERATIVE OF THE HOLLOW VERB (MEDIAL 1), MEASURE **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ**.

PLURAL.		DUAL.	SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Common.	Fem.	Masc.	
خَفْنَ	خَافُوا	خَافَا	خَافِي	خَفْ	2nd person.

V. THE DEFECTIVE VERB.

The defective verb is that which occasions most trouble to learners; the rules however which govern its permutations are very simple, and are all contained in the following table:—

CHANGES IN THE TERMINATION OF THE PRETERITE.

- a. **وَ** becomes **ا** { In the Preterite of the 1st conj. only; in all the derived forms **وَ** becomes **ي** like *c*.
- b. **و** „ **ي**
- c. **ي** „ **ي** { Here the final vowel is dropped and the **ي** is then silent, the *sethah* alone being pronounced. This letter is called *short alif*.
- d. **و** „ **و**

CHANGES IN THE TERMINATION OF THE AORIST.

d'. وُ becomes وُ	i. وُ becomes وُ
e. (وَ remains unchanged وَ)	j. وَي becomes يِ
f. وُ } become يِ	k. وَي } become وُ
g. وُ } become يِ	l. يِ becomes يِ
h. (رِ remains unchanged رِ)	

Similarly in nouns.

f'. وُ becomes يِ	
g'. وُ } " , the و and ي not being required to support <i>tenwin kesrah</i> .	
وُ " وُ (but in verbs of the form رِ (= رِ) is more commonly used).	
وُ " رِ.	

From this it follows that the subjunctive mood of the aorist, which is formed by changing the final ُ into ِ, can only be formed from verbs of the form يَنْعَلُ or يَنْعَلُ, as يَرْمِ (by h) يَغْزُو (by e).

m. The final vowel is, as we have seen, dropped in all cases except e and h. In order therefore to represent the apocopated forms of the aorist we must drop the *weak radical*; thus from يَرْمِ the form يَنْعَلُ becomes يَمْ.

These rules are all summed up in the following extract

from the *Alfiyeh*, an Arabic Grammar, in mnemonic verses, by Ibn Málík.

وَأَيُّ فِعْلٍ آخِرَ مِنْهُ الْفَ أَوْ أَوْ أَوْ يَاءٌ فَمَعْتَلًا عَرِفَ
فَالِالِفِ أَنْوَ فِيهِ غَيْرُ الْجَزْمِ وَابِدِ نَصَبَ مَا كِيدَعُو يَرْمِي
وَالرَّفْعِ فِيهِمَا أَنْوَ وَاحِذِفْ جَازِمًا ثَلَاثِينَ تَقْضِ حُكْمًا لَازِمًا

“Any verb of which the last radical is *alif* or *wáw* or *yá* is known as defective.

In the (verb with final) *alif* you must suppose all moods except the apocopated; in such verbs as يَدْعُو and يَرْمِي you may express the subjunctive mood.

In both cases you must suppose the indicative mood; and to express the apocopated mood you must cut off the final weak radical in all three; by doing so you will be following a fixed rule.”

DEFECTIVE VERES.

رَمَى “to throw,” غَزَا “to make a raid,” رَضِيَ “to be satisfied,” سَعَى “to run,” سَرَوُ “to be noble.”

PASSIVE.		Imperative.	ACTIVE.		
Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.	
يُرْمَى <i>f</i>	رُمِيَ	ارْمِ <i>m</i>	يَرْمِي <i>g</i>	رَمَى ¹ <i>c</i>	1
يُغْزَى	غُزِيَ <i>b</i>	اغْزِ	يَغْزُو <i>d</i>	غَزَا	2
يُرْضَى	رُضِيَ	ارْضِ	يَرْضَى <i>f</i>	رَضِيَ <i>b</i>	3
يُسْعَى	سُعِيَ	اسْعِ	يُسْعَى	سَعَى <i>c</i>	4
يُسْرَى [يُسْرَى]	سُرِيَ [سُرِيَ]	اسْرِ	يُسْرُو <i>d</i>	سَرَوُ	5

¹ The letters *a, b, c*, etc., refer to the rules on p. 74, which explain the permutations.

DERIVED FORMS OF DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbal Noun.	Imperative.	PASSIVE.		ACTIVE.		
		Aorist.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Preterite.	
إِغْرَا	m اغِرْ	f يَغْرِى	b اغْرِى	g يَغْرِى	a & c اغْرِى	4th
تَغْرِىة ¹	” غِرْ	” يَغْرِى	” غْرِى	” يَغْرِى	” غْرِى	2nd
مِغْرَاة	” غَارْ	” يَغَارِى	” غَوْزِى	” يَغَارِى	” غَارِى	3rd
g' تَغْرِ	” تَغْرِ	” يَتَغْرِى	” تَغْرِى	f يَتَغْرِى	” تَغْرِى	5th
g' تَغَارِ	” تَغَارْ	” يَتَغَارِى	” تَغَوْزِى	” يَتَغَارِى	” تَغَارِى	6th
إِنْغِرَاء	” اِغْرِ	” يِنْغْرِى	” اِنْغْرِى	g يِنْغْرِى	” اِنْغْرِى	7th
إِغْتِرَاء	” اِغْتِرْ	” يِغْتْرِى	” اِغْتَوْزِى	” يِغْتْرِى	” اِغْتِرِى	8th
إِسْتِغْرَاء	” اِسْتِغْرِ	” يِسْتِغْرِى	” اِسْتِغَوْزِى	” يِسْتِغْرِى	” اِسْتِغْرِى	10th

PRETERITE OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB (FINAL ِو), MEASURE فَعْلَل يَنْعَلُ

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
غُرُون	غُرُوا	غُرَتَا ²	غُرُوا	غُرْتُ ²	غُرَا	3rd person.
غُرُوتِن	غُرُوتِم	غُرُوتِمَا		غُرُوتِ	غُرُوتِ	2nd ”
غُرُونَا				غُرُوتِ		1st ”

¹ The defective verb in the 2nd conjugation always makes its noun of action تَغْرِىة instead of تَغْرِىل which is the most common form in the sound verb, as

صَنَا from تَصْنِىة

² The feminine of the 3rd person singular and of the dual active, being formed directly from the masculine, drops the ى because اِى would be inadmissible by the rule given in (9), p. 10.

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
غُرِبْنَ	غُرُوا	غُرِبَتَا	غُرِيَا	غُرِبَتْ	غُرِيَ	3rd person.
غُرِبْتِ	غُرِبْتُم	غُرِبْتُمَا		غُرِبْتِ	غُرِبْتَ	2nd „
غُرِبْنَ				غُرِبَتْ		1st „

AORIST OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB (FINAL).

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يَغْرُونَ	يَغْرُونَ	يَغْرَوَانِ	يَغْرَوَانِ	تَغْرُو	يَغْرُو	3rd person.
تَغْرُونَ	تَغْرُونَ	تَغْرَوَانِ		تَغْرَيْنِ	تَغْرُو	2nd „
تَغْرُونَ				تَغْرُو		1st „

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يُغْرَبْنَ	يُغْرَبُونَ	يُغْرَبَانِ	يُغْرَبَانِ	تُغْرَى	يُغْرَى	3rd person.
تُغْرَبْنَ	تُغْرَبُونَ	تُغْرَبَانِ		تُغْرَيْنِ	تُغْرَى	2nd „
تُغْرَبْنَ				تُغْرَى		1st „

MOODS OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB.

When a verb has a consonant for its last radical the moods which are the case-endings of the verb will be the same in the irregular as in the sound verb ; but the occurrence of a weak letter as the final radical leads to certain modifications which have been already noticed (p. 74).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يَغْزُونَ	يَغْزُوا	تَغْزُوا	يَغْزُوا	تَغْزُو	يَغْزُو	3rd person.
تَغْزُونَ	تَغْزُوا	تَغْزُوا		تَغْزِي	تَغْزُو	2nd „
نَغْزُونَ				أَغْزُو		1st „

APOCOPATED (JUSSIVE, ETC.).

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يَغْزُونَ	يَغْزُوا	تَغْزُوا	يَغْزُوا	تَغْزِ m	يَغْزِ m	3rd person.
تَغْزُونَ	تَغْزُوا	تَغْزُوا		تَغْزِي „	تَغْزِ „	2nd „
نَغْزُونَ				أَغْزِ		1st „

1ST ENERGETIC.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يَغْزُونَ	يَغْزُونَ	تَغْزُونَ	يَغْزُونَ	تَغْزُونَ	يَغْزُونَ	3rd person.
تَغْزُونَ	تَغْزُونَ ¹	تَغْزُونَ		تَغْزِينَ ¹	تَغْزُونَ	2nd „
نَغْزُونَ				أَغْزُونَ		1st „

2ND ENERGETIC.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
Wanting.	يَغْزُونَ ¹			تَغْزُونَ	يَغْزُونَ	3rd person.
Wanting.	تَغْزُونَ ¹	Wanting.		تَغْزِينَ ¹	تَغْزُونَ	2nd „
نَغْزُونَ				أَغْزُونَ		1st „

¹ For تَغْزُونَ, تَغْزِينَ, تَغْزُونَ, تَغْزِينَ, which would violate rule (9), p. 10.

IMPERATIVE OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB (FINAL **و**).

	PLURAL.		DUAL.	SINGULAR.		
	Fem.	Masc.		Fem.	Masc.	
	أَغْزُونِ	أَغْزُوا	أَغْزُوا	أَغْزِيْ	أَغْزِ	2nd pers.
1st Energetic	أَغْزُونَانِ	أَغْزُونِ ¹	أَغْزَوَانِ	أَغْزِنِ ¹	أَغْزُونِ	„ „
2nd „		أَغْزُونِ ¹		أَغْزِنِ ¹	أَغْزُونِ	„ „

PRETERITE OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB (FINAL **ي**), MEASURE **فَعَلَ يَتَعَلَّلُ**.

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.	Fem.	Masc.	DUAL.	Fem.	Masc.	SINGULAR.	Fem.	Masc.	
	رَمَيْنَ	رَمَوْا	رَمَيَا	رَمَتَا ²	رَمِيَا	رَمِيَتْ	رَمِيَتْ	رَمِيَتْ	3rd person.
	رَمَيْتُمْ	رَمَيْتُمْ	رَمَيْتُمَا			رَمَيْتِ	رَمَيْتِ	رَمَيْتِ	2nd „
	رَمَيْنَا					رَمَيْتُ	رَمَيْتُ	رَمَيْتُ	1st „

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.	Fem.	Masc.	DUAL.	Fem.	Masc.	SINGULAR.	Fem.	Masc.	
	رُمِيْنَا	رُمِيْنَا	رُمِيْنَا	رُمِيْنَا	رُمِيْنَا	رُمِيْتُ	رُمِيْتُ	رُمِيْتُ	3rd person.
	رُمِيْتُمْ	رُمِيْتُمْ	رُمِيْتُمَا			رُمِيْتِ	رُمِيْتِ	رُمِيْتِ	2nd „
	رُمِيْنَا					رُمِيْتُ	رُمِيْتُ	رُمِيْتُ	1st „

AORIST OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB (FINAL **ي**).

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.	Fem.	Masc.	DUAL.	Fem.	Masc.	SINGULAR.	Fem.	Masc.	
	يُرْمِيْنَ	يُرْمِيْنَ	يُرْمِيَانِ	يُرْمِيَانِ	يُرْمِيَانِ	يُرْمِيْ	يُرْمِيْ	يُرْمِيْ	3rd person.
	يُرْمِيْتُمْ	يُرْمِيْتُمْ	يُرْمِيْتُمَا			يُرْمِيْ	يُرْمِيْ	يُرْمِيْ	2nd „
	يُرْمِيْنَا					يُرْمِيْ	يُرْمِيْ	يُرْمِيْ	1st „

¹ See note, p. 79.² See note, p. 77.

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يُرْمِينَ	يُرْمُونَ	يُرْمِيَانِ	يُرْمِيَانِ	تُرْمِي	يُرْمِي	3rd person.
تُرْمِينَ	تُرْمُونَ	تُرْمِيَانِ		تُرْمِي	تُرْمِي	2nd „
نُرْمِي				أُرْمِي		1st „

MOODS OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB (FINAL ي), MEASURE فَعَلَ يَنْعَلُ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يُرْمِينَ	يُرْمُوا	تُرْمِيَا	يُرْمِيَا	تُرْمِي	يُرْمِي	3rd person.
تُرْمِينَ	تُرْمُوا	تُرْمِيَا		تُرْمِي	تُرْمِي	2nd „
نُرْمِي				أُرْمِي		1st „

APOCOPATED.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يُرْمِينَ	يُرْمُوا	تُرْمِيَا	يُرْمِيَا	تُرْمِ	يُرْمِ	3rd person.
تُرْمِينَ	تُرْمُوا	تُرْمِيَا		تُرْمِي	تُرْمِ	2nd „
نُرْمِ				أُرْمِ		1st „

1ST ENERGETIC.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يُرْمِينَ ¹	يُرْمُونَ ¹	يُرْمِيَانِ	يُرْمِيَانِ	تُرْمِينَ	يُرْمِينَ	3rd person.
تُرْمِينَ ¹	تُرْمُونَ ¹	تُرْمِيَانِ		تُرْمِينَ ¹	تُرْمِينَ ¹	2nd „
نُرْمِينَ				أُرْمِينَ		1st „

2ND ENERGETIC.

PLURAL.		DUAL.	SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.		Fem.	Masc.	
Wanting.	يُرْوِن ¹	Wanting.	تُرْوِين	يُرْوِين	3rd person.
Wanting.	تُرْوِن ¹		تُرْوِن ¹	تُرْوِين	2nd „
	نُرْوِين		أُرْوِين		1st „

IMPERATIVE OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB (FINAL ي), MEASURE فَعْلَ يَفْعُلْ.

PLURAL.		DUAL.	SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.		Fem.	Masc.	
	أُرْوُوا	أُرْوِيَا	أُرْوِي	أُرْمِ	2nd person.
1st Energetic	أُرْوِينَا ¹	أُرْمِيَانِ	أُرْوِن ¹	أُرْوِين	„ „
2nd „	أُرْوِن ¹		أُرْوِن ¹	أُرْوِين	„ „

PRETERITE OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB (FINAL و), MEASURE فَعِلَ يَفْعَلْ.

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.	SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.		Fem.	Masc.	
رَضُوا	رَضِين	رَضِيَا	رَضِيَتْ	رَضِيَ	3rd person.
رَضِيْتُمْ	رَضِيْتَن	رَضِيْتُمَا	رَضِيْتِ	رَضِيْتِ	2nd „
رَضِينَا			رَضِيْتُ		1st „

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.	SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.		Fem.	Masc.	
رُضُوا	رُضِين	رُضِيَا	رُضِيَتْ	رُضِيَ	3rd person.
رُضِيْتُمْ	رُضِيْتَن	رُضِيْتُمَا	رُضِيْتِ	رُضِيْتِ	2nd „
رُضِينَا			رُضِيْتُ		1st „

¹ See note, p. 79.

AORIST OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB (FINAL و), MEASURE فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ.

ACTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضِيَانِ	يَرْضِيَانِ	يَرْضِيُ	يَرْضِيُ	3rd person.
تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَوْنَ	تَرْضِيَانِ		تَرْضِي	تَرْضِي	2nd „
نَرْضِي				أَرْضِي		1st „

PASSIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضِيَا	يَرْضِيَا	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَى	3rd person.
تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَوْنَ	تَرْضِيَا		تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	2nd „
نَرْضَى				أَرْضَى		1st „

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضِيَا	يَرْضِيَا	يَرْضِيَ	يَرْضِيَ	3rd person.
تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَوْنَ	تَرْضِيَا		تَرْضِيَ	تَرْضِيَ	2nd „
نَرْضِيَ				أَرْضِيَ		1st „

APOCOPATED (JUSSIVE, ETC.).

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضِيَا	يَرْضِيَا	يَرْضِ	يَرْضِ	3rd person.
تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَوْنَ	تَرْضِيَا		تَرْضِ	تَرْضِ	2nd „
نَرْضِ				أَرْضِ		1st „

1ST ENERGETIC.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضِيَانِ	يَرْضِيَانِ	يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	3rd person.
تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَوْنَ	تَرْضِيَانِ		تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ	2nd „
نَرْضَيْنَ				أَرْضَيْنَ		1st „

2ND ENERGETIC.

PLURAL.		DUAL.	SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.		Fem.	Masc.	
Wanting.	يُرْضَوْنَ	Wanting.	تُرْضِينَ	يُرْضِينَ	3rd person.
Wanting.	تُرْضَوْنَ		تُرْضِينَ	تُرْضِينَ	2nd „
	نُرْضِينَ		أُرْضِينَ		1st „

IMPERATIVE OF THE DEFECTIVE VERB (FINAL وَ), MEASURE فَعِلَ يَفْعُلُ.

PLURAL.		DUAL.	SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.		Fem.	Masc.	
	أُرْضُوا	أُرْضِيَا	أُرْضِي	أُرْضِ m	3rd person.
1st Energetic	أُرْضِيَانِ	أُرْضِيَانِ	أُرْضِينَ	أُرْضِينَ	2nd „
2nd „ Wanting.	أُرْضَوْنَ	Wanting.	أُرْضِينَ	أُرْضِينَ	1st „

DOUBLY IMPERFECT VERBS.

1. INITIAL وَ AND FINAL يَ OR يَ.

(38). (فَعِلَ يَفْعُلُ, measure وَ, initial وَ and final يَ), “to guard;” (فَعِلَ يَفْعُلُ, measure وَ, initial وَ and final وَ), “to be sore-footed;” (فَعِلَ يَفْعُلُ, measure يَ, initial وَ and final يَ), “to follow close upon.”

PASSIVE.		Imperative.	ACTIVE.		
Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.	
يُوقَى	وُقِيَ	قِ	يُوقِي	وُقِيَ	1
يُوجَى	وُجِيَ	جِ	يُوجِي	وُجِيَ	2
يُولَى	وُلِيَ	لِ	يُولِي	وُلِيَ	3

These are mere combinations of the defective with the initial وَ, and follow the rules given for each. Thus—وُقِيَ is of the form فَعِلَ يَفْعُلُ; like وَعَدَ it rejects its *wāw* in the aorist, and like رَمَى it changes وَ into يَ, and يَ into يَ by *f* and *g*.

2. MEDIAL و AND FINAL و OR ی.

طَوَى (final ی, measure فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ), "to wrap;" رَوَى (final و, measure فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ), "to be well irrigated."

PASSIVE.		Imperative.	ACTIVE.		
Aorist.	Preterite.		Aorist.	Preterite.	
يُطَوَّى	طَوَّى	اِطْوِ	يُطَوِّي	طَوَّى	1
يُرَوَّى	رَوَّى	اِرْوِ	يُرَوِّي	رَوَّى	2

In these no change takes place in the second radical, which retains its power as a consonant. The final ي follows the rule of يَ and يِ in رَوَّى and رَغِيَّ.

Note.—The Verb حَيَّى, although in all other cases conforming to the foregoing rules, in the tenth conjugation loses its second radical; as—

Preterite اِسْتَحْيَى or اِسْحَى
 Aorist يَسْتَحْيِي „ يَسْحَى
 Imperative اِسْتَحِّ „ اِسْحَ and so on.

Combinations with *hemzeh* and the other weak letters also occur; in these cases it is only necessary to apply to each letter the required rule according to the foregoing tables. Thus اَوَّى, which is of the form فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ, becomes اَوَّى يَأْوِي by *c* and *g* for اَوَّى يَأْوِي. Similarly to form the imperative اُفْرِطْ we have اِوِ by the rule on p. 63 and by *m* for اَوَّى.

Again, رَأَى of the measure فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ becomes رَأَى يَرَأَى by *c* and *f* for رَأَى يَرَأَى; the *hemzeh* is then rejected, and the form becomes رَأَى يَرَى. Similarly the apocopated form of aorist is يَر by *m*, and the imperative رَ or رَدْ by (13).

(39). FORMATION OF VERBAL NOUNS FROM IRREGULAR VERBS.

Preterite.	Aorist.	Verbal Noun.	Agent.	Passive Participle.	Noun of Time and Place.
مَدَّ	يُمَدُّ	مَدٌّ	مَادٌّ	مَمْدُودٌ	
أَثَرَ	يَأْثُرُ	أَثَرٌ	آثِرٌ	مَأْثُورٌ	
سَأَلَ	يَسْأَلُ	سَوَالٌ	سَائِلٌ	مَسْئُولٌ	
هَنَأَ	يَهْنِئُ	هِنَاءٌ هِنَاءَةٌ	هَانِيٌ	مَهْنُوءٌ	
وَعَدَ	يَعِدُ	عِدَّةٌ وَعْدٌ	وَاعِدٌ	مَوْعُودٌ	مَوْعِدٌ
يَنْعَى	يَمْنَعُ	يَنْعٌ	يَانِعٌ		
قَالَ	يَقُولُ	قَوْلٌ	قَائِلٌ	مَقُولٌ	مَقَالٌ
بَاعَ	يَبِيعُ	بَيْعٌ	بَائِعٌ	مَبِيعٌ	مَبِيعٌ
خَافَ	يَخَافُ	خَوْفٌ	خَائِفٌ	مَخْوفٌ	
غَزَا	يَغْزُو	غَزْوٌ	غَازٍ	مَغْزُوعٌ	مَغْزَى
رَمَى	يُرْمِي	رَمْيٌ	رَامٌ	مَرْمِيٌّ	مَرْمِيٌّ
رَضِيَ	يَرْضَى	رِضَاٌ رِضَاٌ	رَاضٍ	مَرْضُوعٌ (or مَرْضُوعٌ)	
وَقَى	يَقِي	وَقَايَةٌ وَقِيٌ	وَاقٍ	مَوْقِيٌّ	
وَجَى	يُوجِي	وَجِيٌ	وَاجٍ	مَوْجِيٌّ	
وَلَّى	يَلِي	وَلِيٌ	وَالٍ	مَوْلِيٌّ	
طَوَى	يَطْوِي	طَيٌّ	طَاوٍ	مَطْوِيٌّ	
رَوَى	يُرْوِي	رَيٌّ رِيٌّ	رَاوٍ	مَرْوِيٌّ	

¹ If the verbal noun be of the form فَعْلَةٌ the و will become ا, as غَزَاٌ for غَزْوَةٌ; it is, however, retained in a few nouns, as مَدَّوٌ, see p. 16 (S).

² When the noun is of the form فَعْلٌ, the case-endings are absorbed by f', p. 75; but when it is of the form فَعْلٌ, these rules no longer apply, and no change therefore takes place, as وَجَى (for وَجِيٌّ), while رَمْيٌ is regularly formed.

The formation of the remaining nouns is regular, and can present no difficulty; in the form ^{أَفْعَلُ}أَفْعَلُ, from verbs with a medial weak radical, the strong form is used, as ^{أَسَوْدُ}أَسَوْدُ, not ^{أَسَادُ}أَسَادُ.

HOLLOW VERBS DECLINED AS STRONG VERBS.

(40). A few verbs with a weak medial radical pointed with *kesrah* are declined like strong verbs.

Preterite.	Aorist.	Agent.	
^{عَوِرَ} عَوِرَ	^{يَعْوِرُ} يَعْوِرُ	^{عَاوِرٌ} عَاوِرٌ	to be one-eyed.
^{عَوِزَ} عَوِزَ	^{يَعْوِزُ} يَعْوِزُ	^{عَاوِزٌ} عَاوِزٌ	to be wanting.
^{حَوِلَ} حَوِلَ	^{يَحْوِلُ} يَحْوِلُ	^{حَاوِلٌ} حَاوِلٌ	to squint.
^{صِيدَ} صِيدَ	^{يَصِيدُ} يَصِيدُ	^{صَايِدٌ} صَايِدٌ	afflicted with glanders (a camel).
^{خِيدَ} خِيدَ	^{يَخِيدُ} يَخِيدُ	^{خَايِدٌ} خَايِدٌ	to be delicate in body.

Note.—The tables given for the sound or regular verb will also serve for the conjugation of the weak or irregular verbs; in every case, however, the principles already given for the permutation of letters must be applied. The following is an example of this process, which will be found of the greatest assistance in enabling the student to grasp the principles of Arabic grammar.

First find the form required amongst the derived conjugations (p. 43); next apply the rules for euphonic change, p. 20 (17). Then if it be a tense, refer to the paradigms of the preterite, aorist, or imperative. If any further change be then required, again apply the rules of permutation.

Thus to find the first person aorist of the 3rd conjugation from ^{خَزَا}خَزَا "to make a raid or foray." We look in the table (p. 43 or 56) for the

third conjugation, which we find to be فَاعَلَ; the corresponding form of خَزَا will obviously be خَازَا. Again, the aorist of the third is of the measure يَفْعَلُ.....يُفْعِلُ, which in this case will be يُعَازِرُ; but وُ by g becomes ي.

A further reference to the table of persons in the aorist, p. 27 (23), teaches us to substitute the prefix of the first person أُ for the ي of the 3rd person, and we get أُعَازِرُ *ugházir*, the form required

The final short vowel ُ of the aorist is variable, depending upon the action of particles, etc., but the remaining vowels of the forms are constant, and therefore exert a stronger influence upon a weak letter.

By applying these principles, all difficulties as to the conjugation of verbs containing weak radicals will disappear; and we shall find that such a thing as a really irregular verb does not exist in the Arabic language.

The student is recommended to practise this process until he is completely familiar with all the permutations which can occur in conjugating a weak verb; the foregoing tables, in which examples of each kind of irregular verb are given, will enable him to correct his exercises.

INDECLINABLE VERBS.

(41). Indeclinable verbs are those which have only one tense. They are—(1) لَيْسَ “he is not,” عَسَى “perhaps,” which have only a preterite.

(2) The following which are only found in the imperative: هَاتِ “give,” تَعَالَ “come.”

These are declined like a regular imperative, thus—

PLURAL.		DUAL. Common.	SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.		Fem.	Masc.
هَاتِينَ	هَاتُوا	هَاتِيَا	هَاتِي	هَاتِ

Some grammarians include *كَلَّمَ*, which is, however, not properly a verb; it is most frequently found in the expression *كَلَّمَ جَرًّا*, literally, "take and drag along" = "and so on."

THE NOUN.

(42). In the category of nouns the Arabs include also pronouns and certain prepositions, adverbs, and interjections. Nouns are either primitive or derived.

PRIMITIVE NOUNS.

Primitive nouns are those which cannot be referred to any verbal root. The following are the most common forms of primitive nouns.

1. Triliterals.

MEASURES. EXAMPLES.

فَعْلٌ	فَرَسٌ	horse.
فَعْلٌ	عُنُقٌ	neck.
فَعْلٌ	إِبِلٌ	camel.
فَعْلٌ	صَرَدٌ	a sort of bird.
فَعْلٌ	سِنَبٌ	grape.

MEASURES. EXAMPLES.

فَعْلٌ	قَلْبٌ	heart.
فَعْلٌ	كَيْتٌ	shoulder.
فَعْلٌ	تَضُدٌ	arm.
فَعْلٌ	قُلٌّ	lock.
فَعْلٌ	حِمْلٌ	load.

2. Quadriliterals.

MEASURES. EXAMPLES.

فَعْلٌ	جَعْفَرٌ	small stream.
فَعْلٌ	دِمَقْسٌ	silk.
فَعْلٌ	تَضَفَرٌ	saffron (in flower).
فَعْلٌ	دِرْهَمٌ	a dirhem (<i>δραχμή</i>), a coin.

MEASURES. EXAMPLES.

فَعْلٌ	قِرْمِزٌ	crimson.
فَعْلٌ	عَلِيطٌ	stout.
فَعْلٌ	جَنْدَبٌ	species of locust.
فَعْلٌ	ضِمْبٌ	misfortune.

3. Quinqueliterals.

MEASURES. EXAMPLES.

فَعْلَلْ سَفْرَجَل quince.

فَعْلَلْ قِرْطَعْب cloud.

MEASURES.

EXAMPLES.

فَعْلَلْ قَدْءَمَل stout (a camel)

فَعْلَلْ جَحْمَرِش an old woman.

Primitive nouns such as “a horse,” “a camel,” etc., cannot of course be reduced to rule, and must be learnt by practice.

NOUNS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

(43). I have already treated of the nouns immediately derived from verbs, and corresponding more or less to our participles. There are a great many other forms expressive of specific ideas which may be studied with advantage; the principal of these are the following.

1. Trades and offices are of the measure فَعَالَة; as

صِنَاعَة craft, artizanship.

تِجَارَة trading.

خِيَاطَة tailoring.

زِرَاعَة agriculture.

كِتَابَة office of secretary.

وِزَارَة office of vizier.

وِلَايَة office of viceroy.

خِلَافَة office of Caliph.

2. Pains of the body are of the measure فُعَال; as

صَدَاع headache.

زُكَام catarrh.

سُعَال cough.

كُبَاد liver complaint.

3. Sounds are of the measure فَعِيل or فُعَال; as

صُرَاح cry.

نُبَاح bark.

نُهَاق bray.

نُهَات roar.

صَفِير whistling.

صَهِيل neigh.

شَرِيق sob.

4. Motion, commotion, or emotion are expressed by the form **فَعْلَان**, and sometimes **فَعِيل** ; as

خَفَقَان palpitating, fluttering.		دَوْرَان revolving.
جَرِيَان running.		رَجِيل departure.

5. Flight or avoidance by **فِعَال** ; as

فِرَار flight.		شِرَار "bolting," running off.
نِفَار flight, aversion.		إِبَاء refusal.

6. A small portion is expressed by **فِعْلَة** ; as

كِسْرَة a broken crust.		خِرْقَة a rag.
قِطْعَة a fragment.		

7. A small quantity, by **فَعْلَة** ; as

قَبْضَة a handful.		شُرْبَة a drink (of water, etc.).
نَبْذَة a trifle.		

8. Colour in the abstract, by **فَعْلَة** ; as

حُمْرَة redness.		صَفْرَة yellowness.
-------------------------	--	----------------------------

9. Small pieces, refuse, by **فُعَالَة** ; as

قِرَاضَة clippings, filings.		كُنَاسَة sweepings.
بِرَادَة filings.		

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

(44). There are only two genders in Arabic, masculine and feminine ; some words, however, have only one form for both, and may therefore be called of the common gender. The neuter does not exist, but its place is most commonly supplied by the feminine.

The following are feminine :

1. Proper names of women, as هِنْدٌ "Hind," مَرْيَمُ "Mary," and nouns applicable only to females, as أُمُّ "a mother," أُخْتُ "a sister," حَامِلٌ "pregnant."

2. Nouns ending in ة, as ضَارِبَةٌ "a striker" (female), unless the sense be opposed to it; خَلِيفَةٌ "Caliph," and some proper names of men, as عُبَيْدَةُ "Obeideh," طَلْحَةُ "Talḥah."

3. Nouns ending in يَ, as سُلْمَى "Sulmá" (a proper name), حَسَنَى "most beautiful" (female), ذِكْرَى "remembrance," دُنْيَا (for دُنْيَى) "the world."

[If this يَ is not a grammatical termination, but belong to the root, it may be masculine.]

4. Nouns ending in آء, as الْخَنْسَاءُ "Khansá" (a proper name), حَمْرَاءُ "red," كِبْرِيَاءُ "grandeur, sublimity," صَحْرَاءُ "desert."

5. Proper names of towns and countries, as مِصْرُ "Egypt," الشَّامُ "Syria."

6. Names of wind, fire, or wine, as رِيحٌ "wind," شَمَالٌ "the north wind," نَارٌ "fire," خَمْرٌ "wine."

7. The double parts of the body, as يَدٌ "hand," عَيْنٌ "eye," كَتِفٌ "shoulder," رِجْلٌ "foot." (Some others which are not double are also feminine, as سِنَّ "tooth," كَبِدٌ "liver.")

8. Collective nouns, especially when they add ة to express an individual of the species, as حَمَامٌ "dove" (the *genus* dove), حَمَامَةٌ "a dove."

9. All "broken" plurals.

10. The following nouns are considered as feminine,

although they do not all come under the heads given above.

أَرْضٌ	earth.	شَمْسٌ	sun.
أَرْنَبٌ	hare.	ضَبٌّ	hyena.
أَفْعَى	viper.	ضِلَعٌ	rib.
بَيْرٌ	well.	عُرُوشٌ	prosody.
ثَعْلَبٌ	fox.	عَصَا	staff.
جَهَنَّمٌ	} Hell. See above, 6.	عَقْرَبٌ	scorpion.
جَحِيمٌ		فَهْدٌ	cheetah (hunting leopard).
سَعِيرٌ		فَأْسٌ	axe.
سَقَرٌ		فِرْدَوْسٌ	Paradise.
لُفَى		قَوْسٌ	bow.
حَرْبٌ	war.	كَأْسٌ	cup.
خَمْرٌ	wine.	مُونِسٌ	razor.
دَارٌ	house.	نَارٌ	fire.
دِرْعٌ	coat of mail.	نَعْلٌ	sandal.
دَلْوٌ	bucket.	نَفْسٌ	soul.
رَحَى	hand-mill.	يَمِينٌ	oath.
سُوقٌ	market.		

FORMATION OF THE FEMININE FROM THE MASCULINE.

(45). The feminines of masculine nouns are formed as follows.

1. The ordinary method is by adding ة ; as

ضَارِبٌ	fem.	ضَارِبَةٌ	a striker.
مَضْرُوبٌ	„	مَضْرُوبَةٌ	struck.

ي and ا before ة become ا; as

فَتًى a youth, fem. فَتَاةٌ a young girl.

2. Nouns of the form فَعْلَانُ make their feminines in فَعْلَانِي; as

سَكْرَانُ drunk, fem. سَكْرَانِي
غَضَبَانُ angry, ,, غَضَبَانِي

But فَعْلَانُ and فُعْلَانُ make their feminines in the usual manner فَعْلَانَةٌ and فُعْلَانَةٌ; as

نَدَمَانُ repentant, fem. نَدَمَانَةٌ
عُرْيَانُ naked ,, عُرْيَانَةٌ

3. أَفْعَلُ when it expresses the comparative or superlative makes its feminine فَعْلِي; as

أَكْبَرُ greatest, fem. كُبْرَى
أَصْغَرُ smallest ,, صَغْرَى
أَوَّلُ first (for أَوَّلُ) ,, أُولَى
آخِرُ (for آخِرُ) ,, أُخْرَى

4. أَفْعَلُ when it is descriptive of colour or deformity has for its feminine فَعْلَاءُ; as

أَحْمَرُ red fem. حَمْرَاءُ
أَصْفَرُ yellow ,, صَفْرَاءُ
أَحْدَبُ hump-backed ,, حَدْبَاءُ

5. فَعُولٌ when it has the signification of فَاعِلٌ has no different form for the feminine, as

رَجُلٌ صَبُورٌ a patient man.
إِمْرَأَةٌ صَبُورٌ a patient woman.

But ^{فَعُولٌ} with the signification of ^{مَنْعُولٌ} makes ^{فَعُولَةٌ} in the feminine, as

^{مَرْكُوبٌ}	a riding horse or camel, fem.	^{مَرْكُوبَةٌ}
^{حَلُوبٌ}	a milch camel	^{حَلُوبَةٌ}
^{رَسُولٌ}	a messenger (one sent)	^{رَسُولَةٌ}

6. *Vice versa* ^{فَعِيلٌ} in the sense of ^{مَنْعُولٌ} has only one form for the masculine and feminine, as

^{رَجُلٌ قَتِيلٌ}	a murdered man
^{إِمْرَأَةٌ قَتِيلَةٌ}	a murdered woman
^{رَجُلٌ جَرِيحٌ}	a wounded man
^{إِمْرَأَةٌ جَرِيحَةٌ}	a wounded woman,

while ^{فَعِيلٌ} with the meaning of ^{فَاعِلٌ} makes ^{فَعِيلَةٌ} in the feminine.

^{شَفِيعٌ}	an intercessor, fem.	^{شَفِيعَةٌ}
^{نَصِيرٌ}	a helper,	^{نَصِيرَةٌ}
^{لَطِيفٌ}	nice,	^{لَطِيفَةٌ}

The other forms of the intensive nouns ^{مَنْعَلٌ}, ^{مَنْعَلٌ}, and ^{مَنْعِيلٌ}, being also nouns of instrument, do not take the feminine termination, with the exception of ^{عَدُوٌّ} “an enemy,” fem. ^{عَدُوَّةٌ}; ^{وَسْكَينٌ} “a poor person,” fem. ^{وَسْكَينَةٌ}; ^{وَمِيقَاتٌ} “speaking the truth,” fem. ^{وَمِيقَاتَةٌ}.

7. Nouns which by their nature can only apply to females neither require nor take a feminine termination, as

^{حَامِلٌ}	pregnant.
^{طَالِقٌ}	a divorced wife.
^{نَادِيَةٌ}	} a girl with swelling breasts.
^{كَائِبَةٌ}	
^{حَائِضٌ}	menstruating.

COMMON GENDER.

(46). The following nouns are used either as masculine or feminine :

إِزَارٌ veil.	صَاعٌ a dry measure,
إِصْبَعٌ finger.	ضُحًى forenoon.
نَدَى breast.	ضَرْبٌ honey.
تُرَى earth.	طَرِيقٌ road.
جَنَاحٌ wing.	تَجَرٌ buttocks.
حَالٌ state, condition.	عُرْسٌ wedding.
حَانُوتٌ store, shop.	عَسَلٌ honey (wild).
رَحِمٌ womb.	عُتَابٌ eagle.
رَمَحٌ lance.	عُنُقٌ neck.
سَبِيلٌ road.	عَنْكَبُوتٌ spider.
سُرَى night journey.	فَرَسٌ horse or mare.
سِكِّينٌ knife.	فُلْكَتٌ ship.
سِلَاحٌ arms.	قَدَرٌ pot, kettle.
سُلْطَانٌ dominion.	قَنَأٌ nape of the neck.
سَلَامٌ peace.	قَوْسٌ bow.
سَلَمٌ staircase, ladder.	كُرَاعٌ shin-bone.
سَمَاءٌ heaven.	إِسَانٌ tongue.
شَعِيرٌ barley.	لَيْلٌ night.
صِرَاطٌ way.	مِسْكٌ musk.
صُلْحٌ peace.	مَعَى intestines.
صَلِيفٌ side of the neck.	مِلْحٌ salt.

All nouns not included in the foregoing categories are masculine.

NOTE ON THE TERMINATION \tilde{S} .

(47). The termination \tilde{S} expresses either the feminine gender or unity.

1. In derived nouns it generally serves to mark the feminine of the individual to which the quality or action applies; as ضَارِبَةٌ “a female striker” (as distinguished from a male striker).

2. In primitive nouns it serves to mark the feminine generally; as غُلَامٌ “a slave boy” (as a class), غُلَامَةٌ “a slave girl” (as a class).

3. Sometimes it distinguishes the individual from the species; as ثَمَرٌ “fruit,” ثَمَرَةٌ “a fruit.”

4. It distinguishes singular from plural, as هَدِيَّةٌ “a gift,” هَدِيَّاتٌ “gifts.”

5. And sometimes *vice versa*, as جَمَّالٌ “a camel driver,” جَمَّالَةٌ “camel drivers.”

6. It is used also to compensate for a letter which has been dropped or apocopated, as إِقَامَةٌ for إِقَامٌ.

7. It serves to corroborate the plural, as صَيَّاقِلَةٌ “polishers.”

8. And, lastly, it is used as a sign of intensity, as عَلَّامٌ “a learned man,” عَلَّامَةٌ “a very learned man;” رَآوٍ “a reciter,” رَآوِيَةٌ “a professed reciter.”

Note.—The pronominal ت (fem.) is written ت at the end of verbs, as ضَرَبَتْ; and ت at the end of nouns, as ضَارِبَةٌ.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

THE CASES.

(48). Arabic nouns have three cases, the nominative or subjective, accusative or objective, and genitive or dependent. [I shall use the terms subjective, dependent, and objective as more in accordance with the principles of Arabic grammar.] These cases seem originally to have

been expressed by the three long vowels *و*, *ا* and *ي* (see p. 7). To these *tenwin*, i.e. the nasal vowels, succeeded for the indefinite noun, and the short vowels were employed in the definite noun, thus:

INDEFINITE.		DEFINITE.	
		With the Article.	With Pronouns.
Subjective	كِتَابٌ a book.	الْكِتَابُ	كِتَابِي
Dependent	كِتَابٍ of a book.	الْكِتَابِ	كِتَابِي
Objective	كِتَابًا a book.	الْكِتَابَ	كِتَابِي

THE ANCIENT DECLENSION.

(49). Some few nouns retain the ancient form of declension; they are the following: أَبَ “father,” أَخَ “brother,” حَمَّ “father-in-law,” شَيْءَ “thing,” ذُو “possessor,” فَمَّ “mouth,” as

	Indefinite.	With the Article.	With Pronouns.	In Construction.
Subjective	أَبٌ a father	الْأَبُ	أَبِي	أَبُو زَيْدٍ
Dependent	أَبٍ	الْأَبِ	أَبِي	أَبِي زَيْدٍ
Objective	أَبًا	الْأَبَ	أَبِي	أَبَا زَيْدٍ

From this it will be seen, that for these nouns to take the ancient form of declension they must be placed in construction with an affixed pronoun or a following noun. They may also be declined like ordinary nouns:

Subjective	أَبُهُ	أَبُ زَيْدٍ
Dependent	أَبِيهِ	أَبُ زَيْدٍ
Objective	أَبَهُ	أَبُ زَيْدٍ

As يَا أَبَتِي أَتَدْرِي فِي الْكَرَمِ وَمَنْ يَشَابِهَ أَبَهُ فَمَا ظَالِمٌ

“Adiy follows the example of his father in generosity,

And he who resembles his father is not in fault.”

Or they may take ا in all three cases, thus :

Subjective	أَبَادُ	أَبَا زَيْدٍ
Dependent	أَبَادٍ	أَبَا زَيْدٍ
Objective	أَبَادَ	أَبَا زَيْدٍ

As ^اإِنَّ ^اأَبَاهَا ^اوَأَبَا ^اأَبَاهَا ^اقَدْ ^ابَلَغَا ^افِي ^االْمَجْدِ غَايَتَاهَا

“Verily her father and her father’s father

Have reached the same limit to which she has arrived.”

فَمَ and هُنَ may be declined in the ordinary manner, or after the ancient manner, as

	With the Article.	With Pronouns.
Subjective	فَمَ أَلْتَمَ	فُودُ or فَمُهُ
Dependent	فَمٍ أَلْتَمَ	فَمِهِ ,, فِيمِهِ
Objective	فَمًا أَلْتَمَ	فَادُ ,, فَعَمَهُ

	With Pronouns.	With a Noun.
Subjective	فَمِي or فَيَّ	فُو زَيْدٍ or فَمُ زَيْدٍ
Dependent	فَمِي ,, فَيَّ	فِي زَيْدٍ ,, فَمِ زَيْدٍ
Objective	فَمِي ,, فَايَ	فَا زَيْدٍ ,, فَمِ زَيْدٍ

ذُو signifying “possessor,” is always declined in the ancient manner ; thus

Subjective	ذُو	as ذُو مَالٍ
Dependent	ذِي	,, ذَا مَالٍ
Objective	ذَا	,, ذِي مَالٍ

THE CASES OF NOUNS WITH A WEAK FINAL RADICAL.

(50). The existence of a weak radical at the end of a noun must obviously affect the case endings ; the

following results (already treated of, see p. 74) must be remembered :

Nouns of the measure *فُعْلٌ* from verbs with a final *و*, in the root, change the *و* into *ا* by *f'*, as *رِضًا* for *رِضُو*.

Nouns of the measure *فُعْلٌ* from verbs with a final *ي*, change the *ي* into *ى*, as *فَتًى*.

Nouns of more than three letters, of the form *عَلَّ****, whether from a final radical, or *ى*, make their termination in *ى* : as *مَرْتَمًى*, from *رَمَى*; *مَلَكًى*, from *لَهَا*.

Nouns ending in *و* or *ى* change that termination into *ـ* by *g'*.

Examples: *رِضًا* "satisfaction;" *فَتًى* "a youth;" *قَاضٍ* "a Cadi."

MEASURE.		INDEFINITE.		DEFINITE.	
				With Article. *With Pronoun.	
<i>فِعْلٌ</i>	Subjective	<i>رِضًا</i>	for <i>رِضُو</i>	<i>الرِّضَا</i>	<i>رِضَادُ</i>
	Dependent	<i>رِضًا</i>	„ <i>رِضُو</i>	<i>الرِّضَا</i>	<i>رِضَادُ</i>
	Objective	<i>رِضًا</i>	„ <i>رِضُوا</i>	<i>الرِّضَا</i>	<i>رِضَادُ</i>
<i>فَعْلٌ</i>	Subjective	<i>فَتًى</i>	„ <i>فَتًى</i>	<i>الْفَتَى</i>	<i>فَتَادُ</i> (or <i>فَتِيهٌ</i>)
	Dependent	<i>فَتًى</i>	„ <i>فَتًى</i>	<i>الْفَتَى</i>	<i>فَتَادُ</i> (or <i>فَتِيهٌ</i>)
	Objective	<i>فَتًى</i>	„ <i>فَتًى</i>	<i>الْفَتَى</i>	<i>فَتَادُ</i> (or <i>فَتِيهٌ</i>)
<i>فَاعِلٌ</i>	Subj.	<i>قَاضٍ</i> for <i>قَاضِي</i>		<i>القَّاضِي</i>	<i>قَاضِيهٌ</i>
	Depend.	<i>قَاضٍ</i> „ <i>قَاضِي</i>		<i>القَّاضِي</i>	<i>قَاضِيهٌ</i>
	Obj.	<i>قَاضِيًا</i> „ <i>قَاضِيًا</i> (regular)		<i>القَّاضِي</i> (regular)	<i>قَاضِيهٌ</i> (regular)

IMPERFECTLY DECLINED NOUNS.

(51). Certain words are not susceptible of *tenwīn*, and employ *fethuh* both in the dependent and objective case. Such nouns may be arranged in four classes.

1. *a.* Proper names which have been changed from their original form ; as

عَمَرُ Omar, originally عَاوِرُ the one who lives.

زُحَلُ Zuhel (the planet Saturn) ,, زَاحِلُ the loiterer.

b. Foreign proper names of more than three letters, or in which the middle consonant is pointed with a vowel ; as يُونُسُ “Joseph,” اِبْرَاهِيْمُ “Abraham.”

Note.—Such proper names as سَلِيْمٌ or نُوحٌ are declined ; the first, because it is an Arabic word, and the second, because it has three letters, the middle one of which is quiescent.

2. *a.* Distributive or collective numerals from 1 to 4.

أَحَادُ ones, } to { رُبَاعٌ fours.
وَاحِدٌ one by one, } { مَرَبَعٌ four by four.

Some grammarians include the remaining numerals up to ten ; viz.—

خَمَاسٌ fives, } to { عَشَارٌ tens.
خَمْسٌ five by five, } { عَشْرٌ ten by ten.

b. plural of أُخْرَى (fem. of آخِرُ), and such words as جَمَعُ “all,” كَثَرُ “some,” بَتَّعُ “some,” بَضَعُ “few,” which are analogous to the numerical forms above given.

c. Nouns of the form أَفْعَلٌ, if nouns of colour or description, and not making the feminine in ة ; as أَفْضَلُ “more accomplished,” أَحْمَرُ “red.”

Note.—Such words as أَرْبَعٌ “four” (fem.), being neither descriptive nor comparative, and other nouns of the same form, which moreover make the feminine in ة, are declined.

3. *d.* Nouns of the form فَعْلَانٌ, if they are adjectival or descriptive, and do not make their feminine in ة, as مَكْرَانٌ

“drunk,” feminine سَكْرِي; but if the first syllable be pointed with ء, as عُرْيَان “naked,” or if they have a substantival sense, as صَوَان “a flint,” or make feminines in ة, as نَدَمَان, fem. نَدَمَانَةٌ “repentant,” they are declinable.

4. The following nouns ending in يَ or آ; (1) if that termination mark the feminine, as ذِكْرِي “remembrance,” سَحْرَاءُ “a rock.” (2) Proper names, as زَكْرِيَّا. (3) Broken plurals, as جَرَحَى “wounded,” أَصْدِقَاءُ “friends.” (4) Descriptive or passive adjectives, as حَبَلَى “pregnant,” حَمْرَاءُ “red.”

Note.—Proper names ending in ة, whether masculine or feminine, as طَلْحَةُ and فَاطِمَةُ, are imperfectly declined.

5. Proper names of *females* not ending in ة, if they have more than three letters, or if they have three letters the middle one of which is pointed with a vowel, as زَيْنَبُ “Zeinab” (a woman’s name), سَقَرُ “Hell”; but if they are of three letters, and the middle one is quiescent, they may be either declined or not, as

جِنْدُ or جِنْدَ Hind (a woman’s name).

جِنْدُ ,, { جِنْدِ ,, ,,
جِنْدًا

Note.—Compound proper names are treated of in the Syntax.

6. Proper names ending in اُن, as عِمْرَانُ.

7. Proper names having a verbal form, as أَحْمَدُ “Ahmad”; or if they appear actually part of a verb, as يَزِيدُ “Yazid,” شَمَرُ “Shammar” (Shomer).

8. Broken plurals which have two letters after an

inserted *alif*, as مَسَاجِدُ “places of worship,” جَوَامِعُ “mosques,” دَوَابُّ “beasts of burden” (for دَوَابُّ); or which have three letters after the inserted *alif*, the middle of such letters being a quiescent ي, as مَصَابِيحُ “lamps,” and قَنَادِيلُ “candles.”

[The omission of *tenwîn* in these forms probably arises from the operation of the principle advocated in (5), p. 8, respecting the shortening of vowels which do not receive the accent.]

Exception.—When a *ṣ* follows such letters, the plural is declined, as صَيَافِلُهُ “polishers.”

Note.—All indeclinable nouns when in construction or preceded by the article take *kesrah* in the oblique case, as مَرَرْتُ بِأَفْضَلِكُمْ.

Sometimes by poetical license an imperfectly declined noun is made declinable, as in the following verse:—

فَكَانَهُ فِي الْحَسَنِ صُورَةُ يُوسُفَ وَكَانَنِي فِي الْحَزَنِ قَلْبُ أَبِي

“Tis as though he in his beauty were Joseph’s form,

And as though I, in my grief, were his (Joseph’s) father’s heart.”

Where يُوسُفَ is improperly used for يُوسُفَ.

INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

(52). Some nouns are altogether indeclinable, as نَفْثَوَيْهِ “Niftawaihi,” سِبَوَيْهِ “Sibawaihi,” and صَمٌ “silence!” though indeclinable, when definite drop the *tenwîn* and become مَ, صَ, the difference in meaning being that the former is vaguer and more general.

THE NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

(53). There are three numbers in Arabic nouns, singular, dual, and plural.

THE DUAL.

(54). The dual has only one form to express the dependent and objective cases ; the terminations are—

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
Subjective	انْ—	تانْ—
Dependent, }	انْ—	تانْ—
Objective	ينْ—	متينْ—

In construction, or when followed by an affixed pronoun, the *ي* is dropped.

The rules of permutation which hold in verbs apply equally to nouns.

In trilateral nouns ending with *short alif*, such as عَصَا (for عَصَو) “a staff,” فَتًى (for فَتَي) “a youth,” the original radical must be restored in forming the dual, thus عَصَوَان and فَتَيَان. But if there be more than three letters, the *ي* is retained, even although the original radical may be *و*, as مِرْتَمًى (from رَمَي) “thrown,” وَلَهًى (from لَهَو) “a musical instrument,” “a toy,” both of which make their dual with *ي*, as مِرْتَمَيَان and وَلَهَيَان.

It may be taken as a rule that final *alif* ا when it occurs later than the third letter in a word is to be written *ي*.

In weak nouns ending in *long alif* followed by *hemzeh* the following rules hold.

If the termination is the sign of the feminine, as حَمْرَاء “red,” صَخْرَاء “a rock,” we may use either *hemzeh*, و, or *ي* in adding on the dual termination, as

حَمْرَايَان or حَمْرَاوَان, حَمْرَاءَان
صَخْرَايَان or صَخْرَاوَان, صَخْرَاءَان

But of these the second is most common.

If the termination be added to the root without being a feminine sign, you may either leave it unchanged or change it to و, as from عِلْبَاءٌ “a sinew in the neck,” dual عِلْبَاوَان or عِلْبَاءَان.

If it be substituted for a radical letter, as كِسَاءٌ (from كَسَو), we may either leave it unchanged or change it into wāw, as كِسَاءَان and كِسَاوَان.

Words of over five letters may drop the final *alif* in the dual, although the insertion of the euphonic و is the more regular method, as قَاعِيعَاءٌ “a jerboa’s hole,” dual قَاعِيعَاوَان or قَاعِيعَان.

The two following nouns

خَصِيَّةٌ testicles,

أَلْيَةٌ buttocks,

in forming the *dual* reject the feminine termination ة, as in the following verse from the *Hamásah*

كَانَ خَصِيمِيَّةٌ مِنَ التَّدَلْدَلِ سَحَقَ جَرَابٍ فِيهِ ثِنْتَا حَنْظَلٍ

“Fit quasi duo ejus testiculi huc illuc fluitantes pera essent e corio
facta ac longo jam usu attrita, intra quam duæ cucurbitæ
inclusæ sint.”

This verse presents an instance of an another grammatical peculiarity, namely, the use of ثِنْتَان, the numeral *two*, instead of the dual of the noun حَنْظَلَان. There appears to be an ellipse of some such word as حَبَّة *grain*, as in the Persian idiom دودانه سیب “two apples.”

THE PLURAL.

(55). The plural in Arabic is formed either by affixes or by a modification of the original form of the singular, as in English we say ship, pl. ships; man, pl. men.

The first kind is called technically a regular plural; the second a broken plural.

The regular plural has only one form for the dependent and objective cases.

If the singular be a regularly formed participial measure, the plural is made by addition: as

Masc.	فَاعِلٌ — nom.	} This is an expansion of the singular termination $\frac{ع}{و}$, for as $\frac{ع}{و} un = وُ' u$, so $فَاعِلٌ una = وُ' u u$.
„	فَاعِلِينَ — oblique	
Fem.	فَاعِلَاتٌ —	} This is an expansion of the regular feminine affix $ة$.
„	فَاعِلَاتٍ —	

REGULAR MASCULINE PLURAL.

(56). The regular masculine affixed form is only used for—

1. Nouns of a participial form derived from verbs making their feminine in $ة$ and signifying rational beings.

2. Proper names of men, provided they consist of a single word, and do not end in $ة$.

3. Diminutives of proper names of the description just mentioned, and diminutives of ordinary nouns, provided they denote rational beings, and are of the masculine gender, as

رَجُلٌ a little man, plural رَجُلُونَ

4. Relative adjectives ending in $ِي$.

5. Nouns of the measure أَفْعَالُ provided they have the comparative or superlative meaning.

It cannot be used in nouns which are common to both genders, as

جَرِيحٌ wounded. صَبُورٌ patient.

There are a few words which form exceptions to the rules above given; they are

ابن son,	plural	بنون
اهل family,	„	اهلون
ذو possessor,	„	أولو and ذوو
عالم world, universe,	„	عالمون
ارض earth,	„	ارضون
عشر ten,	„	عشرون twenty.

(And the other cardinal numbers, thirty, forty, etc., between twenty and ninety.)

سنة year,	plural	سِنُون
-----------	--------	--------

Together with all nouns similar to the last, *i.e.* nouns of which the last radical is cut off and a *ṣ* added by way of compensation, as مائة “a hundred,” and شجرة “a thorny tree,” ضَمُون.

A peculiarity of the class of plurals last mentioned is that in the dependent case they may be treated as broken plurals, and declined throughout; *e.g.*

Sub. سِنِين	Dep. سِنِينِ	Obj. سِنِينًا
-------------	--------------	---------------

When the last letter of a noun is a weak *و*, *ي*, or *tenwin* — the rules given on p. 75 for the change in the termination of the aorist of verbs and of nouns must be applied.

قاضٍ a judge,	plural	{ قَاضُونَ by <i>i</i> .
		{ قَاضِينَ „ <i>j</i> .
مُطَفِّي Mustafá,	„	{ مُطَفِّونَ „ <i>k</i> .

Before a *hemzet el-wasl* these lose their *ن* and take *ـ* and *ـ* respectively, as مُطَفِّىَ اللَّهِ, pl. مُطَفِّوِ اللَّهِ.

In construction with a following noun the regular plural loses its final ^ن, as

ضَارِبُو زَيْدٍ the strikers of Zeid.

FEMININE REGULAR PLURAL.

(57). In forming the regular feminine plural, nouns of the form ^{فَعْلَةٌ} remove the *sukún* and point the second radical like the first, making the plural ^{فَعْلَاتٌ}; unless the second radical be weak, in which case the *sukún* is not removed, as

بَيْضَةٌ an egg, plural بَيْضَاتٌ.

[The Benu Hudheil do not observe this rule, as the following verse, describing an ostrich, by one of their poets, proves—

أَخُو بَيْضَاتٍ رَأَيْتُ مَتَاوِبَ

“The brother of eggs going to and fro night and morn.”]

If the noun be adjective the *sukún* remains. Sometimes it is retained improperly by poetical license, as in the verse

فَتَسْتَرِيحُ النَّفْسُ مِنْ زَفَرَاتِهَا

“And the soul shall rest from its sighing.”

Nouns *substantive* of the form ^{فَعْلَةٌ} make their plural ^{فَعْلَاتٌ}, and sometimes for the sake of euphony ^{فَعْلَاتٌ}. If the weak letter be ^ي the *dhammah* must not be employed.

When the second and third radicals are alike, the *sukún* is retained in all cases in forming the regular feminine plural; as ^{شَدَّةٌ} pl. ^{شَدَّاتٌ} “attack;” ^{رَدَّةٌ} pl. ^{رَدَّاتٌ} “rejection;” ^{غُدَّةٌ} pl. ^{غُدَّاتٌ} “glanders.”

أَتٌ becomes أَاتٌ

وَاتٌ (from final و) ,,

يَاتٌ (from final ي) ,,

N.B. $\tilde{\text{a}}$ whether singular or plural becomes ت when followed by a vowel, as إِخْوَةٌ “brothers,” إِخْوَتُهُ “his brothers.”

ا when in construction becomes اِ in the dependent case (see p. 14); these follow the ordinary rule of permutation; e.g. subj. نِسَاؤُهُ “his women,” dep. نِسَائِهِ.

But if the second radical be weak, as دِيمَةٌ “perpetual rain,” the *sukún* may remain and the letter be pointed with *fethah*, because the Arabs are averse from the sound *yi*, which results from pointing ي with *kesrah*.

If the last radical be weak, as رِشْوَةٌ “bribery,” the *sukún* may either remain or the letter be pointed with *fethah*; thus, pl. رِشْوَاتٌ¹ or رِشَوَاتٌ.

But if the first radical has *dhammah* or *kesrah*, such change must not be made, as ذِرْوَةٌ pl. ذِرَوَاتٌ “pinnacle.”

Nouns substantive of the form فَعْلَةٌ make the plural فَعَلَاتٌ as حَجْرَةٌ pl. حَجَرَاتٌ “retirement,” “a chamber,” and sometimes فَعَلَاتٌ.

[The Benu Tamím allow the *sukún* to remain in this case, but if the second radical be weak, as in دَوْلَةٌ “vicissitude,”² the *sukún* may remain, and it may be pointed with *fethah*, as دَوَلَاتٌ or دُولَاتٌ.]

The regular feminine plural in أَت is frequently used in nouns which have a neuter sense, as

حَمَامٌ bath, pl. حَمَامَاتٌ
رَوْضَانٌ the month Ramaḍhan, ,, رَوْضَانَاتٌ

¹ See p. 60, note 2.

² دَوْلَةٌ is considered by some as equivalent in meaning to دُولَةٌ “a state or dynasty.”

BROKEN PLURALS.

(58). There are two kinds of plurals recognized by the Arabic grammarians ; namely, the plural of paucity, and the plural of multitude.

The plural of paucity expresses any number between three and ten.

The plural of multitude denotes any number from ten to infinity.

So also a plural form, where only one exists, is necessarily common to both, but most nouns have two or more forms.

When a plural of such a noun is required, it is for the most part formed on the measure of the regular feminine plural by affixing أَتْ.

The plural of a plural cannot be less than nine.

The plural of paucity, as well as the sound or regular plural, cannot be less than three or more than ten (unless this be the only form of plural in use for a particular noun, in which case there can obviously be no such limitation).

PLURAL OF PAUCITY.

(59). There are four measures of the plural of paucity :

أَفْعَالٌ as أَرْجُلٌ from رَجُلٌ foot.

فُعْلَةٌ ,, غُلَامٌ slave

أَفْعِلَةٌ ,, أَكْسِيَّةٌ ,, كِسَاءٌ dress. (This only occurs in words which have the penultimate a long vowel).

أَفْعَالٌ ,, أَحْمَالٌ ,, حِمْلٌ load. This is common to plurals of multitude also.

The first and last forms are capable of having a second plural formed from them on the ordinary measure of quadrilaterals, *i.e.* أَفَاعِلُ and أَفَاعِلُ.

The sound plural and the plural of paucity denote several *individuals*, while the broken plural denotes rather the *whole class*.

(60). Nouns implying multitude, if they have not a singular, as قَوْمٌ “people,” “a tribe,” and plural nouns (unless the singular be distinguished by ة, as شَجَرٌ “trees,” شَجَرَةٌ), are called analogues of the plural شِبْهُ أَجْمَعِ.

GENDER OF BROKEN PLURALS.

(61). Broken plurals are invariably treated as feminine; thus a certain poet says,

إِنَّ قَوْمِي تَجَمَّعُوا وَبِتَلِّي حَدَّثُوا
لَا أَبَالِي بِجَمْعِهِمْ كُلُّ جَمْعٍ مَوْنٌ

“Verily my people collected together,
And talked of murdering me;
I care not for their collecting—
Every crowd (or *plural*) is effeminate!”

FORMS OF BROKEN PLURALS.

(62). There are three forms of broken plurals.

1. That which inserts an additional letter among the original letters of the singular, as رِجَالٌ plural of رَجُلٌ.

2. That which rejects a letter, as رُسُلٌ, the plural of رَسُولٌ “an apostle.”

3. That which changes the vowels only, as أُسَدٌ plural of أَسَدٌ “lion.”

Irregular broken plurals are formed from trilateral nouns and from some of the quadrilateral verbal nouns treated of in p. 46.

PLURAL OF QUADRILITERALS.

(63). The measure for the plurals of quadrilaterals, excluding those mentioned in the last paragraph, may be regularly represented by the signs ⁽⁴⁾ (3) ⁽²⁾ (1), which will be found to embrace all the forms فَوَاعِلُ, فَوَاعِلُ, مَنَاجِلُ, etc., as the position of any of the three radicals in the form is immaterial. Thus from مَنَاجِلُ “key,” we get ⁽⁴⁾ ⁽³⁾ ⁽²⁾ ⁽¹⁾ مَنَاجِلُ = مَنَاجِلُ (the َ changing the ا into ي), where the first radical ن of the root occurs in the second place of the measure (2). And from جَوَاهِرُ “jewel,” we have ⁽⁴⁾ ⁽³⁾ ⁽²⁾ ⁽¹⁾ جَوَاهِرُ = جَوَاهِرُ, where the first radical ج occurs in the first place (1).

PLURALS OF QUINQUELITERALS.

(64). In words of five or more letters all above four are cut off in forming the plural, as

عَنْدَلِيْبٌ nightingale, plural عَنَادِلُ (يَب) ⁽⁴⁾ (3) ⁽²⁾ (1) ن ن ن ل
سَفَرَجَلٌ quince, „ سَفَارِجُ (ل) ⁽⁴⁾ (3) ⁽²⁾ (1) س ن ن ر ح

NOTE ON THE FORMATION OF PLURALS.

(65). It is worth remarking that the letters used in the formation of plurals are the same as those which are used in the formation of *tenses*, viz. اَنِيتْ; in fact, these, the long vowels, and the *teshdid*, or doubling of a consonant, are all the increments in use; they are strictly analogous, both in nouns and verbs; for just as they modify

the action of a verb in a manner corresponding to the modification of the form, so they modify the nature of the noun.

Two main ideas seem to influence the formation of plurals.

1. The addition of one or more letters to express an addition to the sense as in verbs.

2. Marking the opposition between singular and plural.

These are still further influenced by the nature of the vowels used, as a careful study of all the forms will show.

In the measures of the broken plurals, as in the measures of the verbs, the vowels are the characteristic and really important part of the form.

They will therefore exert their usual influence upon a weak letter; thus $\text{مَفَاتِيحُ} = (4) \text{ } ^\circ (3) \text{ } ^\circ (2) \text{ } (1)$, and should by the rule for the formation of broken plurals from quadriliteral nouns make $^\circ (4) \text{ } (3) \text{ } ^\circ (2) \text{ } (1)$, that is مَفَاتِيحُ ; but the ـ is the most important form to preserve, and the $\text{ } ^\circ$ therefore yields and is changed to ي , the word becoming مَفَاتِيحُ .

Plurals are for the most part irregular, but some measures are of more common use than others.

TABLES OF BROKEN PLURALS.

(65). The following tables will be found to contain examples of every form of broken plurals in use. The left hand column contains the measures of the singular; the horizontal line at the top of the page gives the measures of the plural.

1. TABLE OF BROKEN PLURALS

فعل	فَعْلَة	فَعْلَة	فعل
فعل	ثور pl. ثُورَة or ثَيْرَة ox. زوج ,, زَوْجَة { husband or wife (yoke fellow). خرد ,, خِرْدَة truffle.	ثور pl. ثَيْرَة ox.	
فعل	Rare. قرد pl. قِرْدَة ape. فيل ,, فَيْلَة elephant.		
فعل	Not from defective verbs. قرط pl. قِرْطَة ear-ring. درج ,, دِرْجَة casket. دب ,, دِبَة bear. كوز ,, كَوِزَة pitcher.	خصن pl. خِصْنَة branch.	
فعل		إخوة pl. (أخو) أخ brother. فتى pl. فِتْيَة (فتى) youth.	أسد pl. أَسْد lion.
فعل			
فعل			

FROM TRILITERAL NOUNS.

فَعْلٌ	فِعَالٌ	فَعُولٌ
	Substantives or triliteral adjectives which make a feminine in ^س ا. It is rare in hollow and defective verbs. (See also the quadriliterals.)	This is confined to nouns, and is not formed from those derived from verbs with a medial ^و .
	^س عَبْد pl. ^س عِبَاد slave. ^س بَحْر pl. ^س بَحَار sea. ^س ثَوْب pl. ^س ثِيَاب garment. ^س صَعْب pl. ^س صِعَاب difficult.	^س بَحْر pl. ^س بَحُور sea. ^س نَفْس pl. ^س نَفُوس soul. ^س دَلْو pl. ^س دَلِي (دَلُو) bucket. ^س بَيْت pl. ^س بِيوت house. ^س فِلْس pl. ^س فِلُوس a small copper coin
	^س قِدَاح pl. ^س قِدَاح arrow. ^س ذِئْب pl. ^س ذِيَاب wolf.	^س حَمُول pl. ^س حَمَل load. ^س نَمُوس pl. ^س نَمُوس ichneumon. ^س ضَرَس pl. ^س ضَرُوس (tooth).
	^س صَلَب pl. ^س صَلَاب hard. ^س رَمَاح pl. ^س رَمَاح lance.	^س جُنُود pl. ^س جُنُود soldier. ^س بُرُود pl. ^س بُرُود cloak. ^س قَتْل pl. ^س قَتُول lock.
^س اَسَد pl. ^س اَسَد lion. ^س وَتْن pl. ^س وَتْن idol.	^س جَبَل pl. ^س جِبَال mountain. ^س جَمَل pl. ^س جَمَال camel.	^س اَسَد pl. ^س اَسُود lion. ^س كَبِد pl. ^س كَبُود liver. ^س وَتْل pl. ^س وَتُول (ibex (Syrian)).
^س نَمِر pl. ^س نَمِر leopard.	^س رَجُل pl. ^س رِجَال man. ^س سَبْع pl. ^س سَبَاع beast.	

TABLE OF BROKEN PLURALS

	فَعِيل Rare.	أَفْعَال A plural of Paucity; it is used for all trilateral nouns which do not make their plural in أَفْعَال, especially from assimilated and hollow verbs.
فَعْل	عَبْد pl. عِبِيد slave. كَلْب ,, كَلِيب dog.	ثَوْب pl. أَثْوَاب garment. سَيْف ,, أَسْيَاف sword. شَيْء (not أَشْيَاء) a thing. يَوْم ,, أَيَّام day. بَيْت ,, أَبْيَات {verse of poetry (distich). وَقْتُت ,, أَوْقَات time.
فَعِل		إِسْم pl. أَسْمَاء name. بِر pl. أَبَار or آبَار well. حِمْل ,, أَحْمَال load.
فَعَلَ		قَتَلَ pl. أَقْتَال lock.
فَعَلْ		ابْن (بَنَى) pl. أَبْنَاء son. مَطَر ,, أَمْطَار rain. بَاب ,, أَبْوَاب door. أَب (أَبَى) ,, أَبَاء father. رَحَى (رَحَى) ,, أَرْحَاء handmill.

FROM TRILITERAL NOUNS—*continued*.

<p style="text-align: center;">افعل</p> <p>A plural of Paucity, but not from hollow verbs¹; it is used as the plural of all <i>feminine</i> nouns having a long vowel in the penultimate.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">افْعِلَة</p> <p>A plural of Paucity.</p>
<p>بحر pl. ابجر sea.</p> <p>دلو ,, ادل (ادلو) bucket.</p> <p>ظبي (اظبي) fawn.</p> <p>وجه ,, اوجه face.</p> <p>نفس ,, انفس soul.</p> <p>فلس ,, افلس (a small copper coin.</p>	<p>فرخ pl. افرخة (chick (young of bird).</p> <p>نعل ,, انعيلة sandal.</p>
<p>شبل pl. اشبل lion's cub.</p> <p>رجل ,, ارجل foot.</p> <p>ضلع ,, اضلع rib.</p>	<p>Rare.</p> <p>زر pl. ازرة (azr) button.</p>
<p>قفل pl. افقل lock.</p>	<p>Rare.</p> <p>برج pl. أبرجة tower.</p> <p>جحر ,, اجحرة hole of a reptile.</p>
<p>جبل pl. اجبل mountain.</p> <p>عصا ,, اعصى (عصو) staff.</p>	<p>Rare.</p> <p>زاد (زود) ازدية viaticum.</p> <p>خال (خول) اخولة (maternal uncle.</p> <p>فتا (فتو) قنفة back of the neck.</p>

¹ عين pl. اعين an eye, is rare.

² See page 104, line 20.

TABLE OF BROKEN PLURALS

	افعال (Continued).	افعال (Continued).
فعل	See page 116.	See page 117.
فعل	Ditto.	Ditto.
فعل	Ditto.	Ditto.
فعل		
فعل	انمار pl. نمر leopard.	
فعل	اعضاد pl. عَضِد arm.	اسب pl. سبع beast (rare).
فعل	Rare. ارطاب pl. رطب fresh date.	
فعل	آبال pl. اِبل camels.	
فعل	اعناق pl. عُنُق neck.	

FROM TRILITERAL NOUNS—*continued*.

فِعْلَان	فَعْلَان	فِعَالَةٌ Rare.
	سقف pl. سقوف roof. بطن ,, بطنان belly.	
حوت pl. حيتان fish. سور ,, سمران wall. عود ,, عودان aloes-wood.		
خرب pl. خربان bustard. تاج (توج) تاجان crown. نار pl. نيران fire. فتي (فتى) فتيان youth. إخوان (اخو) اخ brother.	بلد pl. بلدان town. حمل ,, حملان lamb. ذكر ,, ذكران male.	حجارة pl. حجير a stone.
نغر pl. نغران nightingale. صرد ,, صردان a kind of bird. جرذ ,, جردان field rat.		

TABLE OF BROKEN PLURALS FROM TRILITERAL NOUNS—

continued.

	فَعُولَةٌ Rare.	مَفَاعِلُ
فَعْلٌ	Rare. بَعْلٌ pl. بَعُولَةٌ husband. عَمٌّ , عَمُّوَةٌ paternal uncle. خَالَ { خَوُولَةٌ (خَوْل) } maternal uncle.	شَيْخٌ pl. شُيَاحٌ elder, chief.
فِعْلٌ		شِبْهٌ pl. مَشَابِهٌ likeness.
فَعْلٌ		حَسَنٌ pl. مَحَاسِنٌ beauty.

2. TABLE OF BROKEN PLURALS FROM TRILITERAL FEMININE NOUNS.

فَعْلَةٌ	فَعْلٌ	فِعَالٌ	فِعَالٌ	فَعْلٌ	أَفْعَالٌ
فَعْلَةٌ قَرْيَةٌ دَوْلَةٌ نُوبَةٌ	فَعْلٌ pl. قَرْيَاتٌ a village. " دَوْلَاتٌ a dynasty. " نُوبَاتٌ a vicissitude.	فِعَالٌ pl. قِصَاعٌ dish. " مَرَاتٍ (time) " ضِعَاعٌ farm.	فِعَالٌ pl. قِصَاعٌ dish. " مَرَاتٍ (time) " ضِعَاعٌ farm.	فَعْلٌ حَلَقٌ pl. حَلَقَاتٌ ring (circle).	أَفْعَالٌ
فَعْلَةٌ Rare. لَحْيَةٌ جَلِيَّةٌ	فَعْلٌ pl. لَحْيَاتٌ a beard. " جَلِيَّاتٌ an ornament.	فِعَالٌ pl. قِطَعٌ fragment. " جَمَجَمٌ maxim. " لَمَعٌ (lock of hair). " سِيرٌ character.	فِعَالٌ pl. قِطَعٌ fragment. " جَمَجَمٌ maxim. " لَمَعٌ (lock of hair). " سِيرٌ character.	فَعْلٌ نِعْمَةٌ pl. نِعَمَاتٌ favours.	أَفْعَالٌ
فَعْلَةٌ كَهْفَةٌ صَوْرَةٌ قُبَّةٌ شَرَرٌ	فَعْلٌ pl. كَهْفَاتٌ a present. " صَوْرَاتٌ a form. " قُبَّاتٌ a dome. " شَرَرٌ white mark on a horse's forehead.	فِعَالٌ pl. رِقَاعٌ strip, rag, " بَقَاعٌ note. " بَقَاعٌ valley.	فِعَالٌ pl. رِقَاعٌ strip, rag, " بَقَاعٌ note. " بَقَاعٌ valley.	فَعْلٌ رِقَابٌ pl. رِقَابَاتٌ (nape of neck). " لَمَرٌ fruit.	أَفْعَالٌ

1 أَهْوَانٌ (أَهْوَانٌ) makes أَهْوَانٌ in the plural.

3. TABLE OF BROKEN PLURALS

	فعل	فعل
فَعَالٌ	قَذَالٌ pl. قَذَالٌ neck.	قُذَالٌ pl. قُذَالٌ neck. سَيَالٌ ,, سَيَالٌ (the thorny acacia.
فِعَالٌ		كِتَابٌ pl. كُتُبٌ book. فِرَاشٌ ,, فِرَاشٌ carpets. Not from defective or doubled verbs. ¹
فُعَالٌ		كَرَاعٌ pl. كُرُعٌ shin bone.
فَعِيلٌ	قَضِبٌ pl. قَضِبٌ rod.	قُضِبٌ pl. قُضِبٌ rod. سَرِيرٌ ,, سَرِيرٌ (throne, bed- stead. نَذِيرٌ ,, نَذِيرٌ one who warns
فَعِيلَةٌ		سَنْيْنَةٌ pl. سَنْيْنَةٌ boat. صَحِيفَةٌ ,, صَحِيفَةٌ page, folio.
فُعُولٌ	رَسُولٌ pl. رُسُلٌ messenger.	رُسُولٌ pl. رُسُولٌ messenger. عَمُودٌ ,, عَمُودٌ column. صَبُورٌ ,, صَبُورٌ patient.

¹ عَنَانٌ pl. عَنَانٌ "reins," is an exception.

FROM THE MOST COMMON VERBAL NOUNS.

فِعَالٌ	فَعِيلٌ Rare.	أَفْعَالٌ Plural of Paucity.
	حَرِيمٌ sacred, pl. حَرِيمٌ women, harem.	Feminine. عُنُقٌ pl. عُنُقٌ neck.
	حِمَارٌ pl. حَمِيرٌ ass.	Feminine. أُذْرُعٌ pl. ذِرَاعٌ fore-arm. نَهَارٌ ,, نَهَارٌ river.
		أُغْرَبٌ pl. غُرَابٌ crow. (rare).
Not passive in signification. شَرِيفٌ pl. شَرِيفٌ noble. مَرِيضٌ ,, مَرِضٌ sick. طَوِيلٌ ,, طَوِيلٌ tall.		Feminine. أَيْمَنٌ pl. يَمِينٌ

TABLE OF BROKEN PLURALS

	افعال Plural of Paucity.	فعلاء
فَعَالٌ		
فِعَالٌ		
فُعَالٌ		
فَعِيلٌ	Rational and not passive. Rare. شَرِيفٌ pl. أَشْرَافٌ noble. مَيِّتٌ (for مَوْتٌ) dead.	Rational beings and not passive. فَقِيرٌ pl. فَتَرَاءٌ poor. امِيرٌ prince. رؤسَاءٌ chief.
فَعِيلَةٌ		خُلَفَاءٌ pl. خَلِيفَةٌ Caliph.
فُعُولٌ	أَعْدَاءٌ,, عَدُوٌّ enemy.	

FROM THE MOST COMMON VERBAL NOUNS—*continued.*

<p>أَفْعَالٌ</p> <p>Used in doubled and defective verbs where فَعْلَانٌ would otherwise occur; it is rare in feminine nouns.</p>	<p>فَعْلَةٌ</p> <p>Plural of Paucity.</p>	<p>أَفْعَالٌ</p> <p>Plural of Paucity; also used in all quadriliterals which have a long vowel for the third letter.</p>
	<p>غَزَالٌ pl. غَزَلَةٌ gazelle.</p>	<p>جَنَاحٌ pl. أَجْنَحَةٌ wing.</p> <p>طَعَامٌ pl. أَطْعِمَةٌ food.</p>
		<p>إِلَهٌ pl. آلِهَةٌ god.</p> <p>إِمَامٌ pl. أَيْمَةٌ (Imám (high-priest).</p>
	<p>غُلَامٌ pl. غِلْمَةٌ slave boy.</p>	<p>أَفِيدَةٌ pl. فَوَادٍ heart.</p>
<p>Rational and not passive; principally from defective or doubled verbs.</p> <p>أَوْلِيَاءٌ pl. وَلِيٍّ saint.</p> <p>أَشْدَأُ,, شَدِيدٌ</p> <p>أَغْنِيَاءٌ,, غَنِيٌّ rich.</p> <p>أَصْدِقَاءٌ,, صَدِيقٌ friend (sincere)</p> <p>أَحِبَّاءٌ,, حَبِيبٌ friend (loving).</p>	<p>صَبِيَةٌ pl. صَبِيٍّ boy.</p>	<p>From doubled and defective verbs.</p> <p>أَصْبِيَةٌ pl. صَبِيٍّ boy.</p> <p>أَعَزُّ,, عَزِيزٌ (dear, mighty).</p> <p>أَحَبُّ,, حَبِيبٌ beloved.</p> <p>أَرْغِفَةٌ,, رَغِيفٌ (cake (loaf).</p>
		<p>أَعْمَدَةٌ pl. عَمُودٌ column.</p>

TABLE OF BROKEN PLURALS

	فَعْلَى Used with nouns adjective implying pain or suffering.	فَعْلَانْ Not from hollow verbs.
فَعَالٌ		غَزَالٌ pl. غَزَالَانْ gazelle.
فَعَالَةٌ		
فِعَالٌ		
فِعَالَةٌ		
فَعَالٌ		عُقَابٌ pl. عُقَابَانْ eagle. غُلَامٌ „ غُلَامَانْ slave boy. غُرَابٌ „ غُرَابَانْ crow.
فَعِيلٌ	زَمِنٌ pl. زَمِنَى paralytic. حَمَقٌ „ حَمَقَى silly.	
فَعِيلٌ	Denoting affliction or injury. جَرَحِي pl. جَرَحَى wounded. قَتَلِي „ قَتِيلٌ slain. مَوْتِي (مَوْتٌ) „ مَوْتٌ dead. أَسِيرٌ „ أَسِيرٌ captive.	صَبِيَّانْ (صَبِيٌّ) „ صَبِيٌّ a boy.
فَعِيلَةٌ		
فَعُولٌ		
فَعُولَةٌ		

FROM THE MOST COMMON VERBAL NOUNS—*continued*.

فَعْلَانُ Not from hollow verbs.	فَعَائِلُ Feminine quadriliterals.	فَعَالِي
	شَمَائِلُ pl. شَمَائِلُ (north- wind.	
	سَحَابَةُ pl. سَحَابٌ cloud.	
	رِسَالَةٌ pl. رِسَائِلُ epistle.	
رَغِيفٌ pl. رَغَافٌ loaf. قَضِيبٌ ,, قَضَائِبُ rod. خَلِيلٌ ,, خَلَائِلُ friend.		يَتَامَى pl. يَتَامَى an orphan. نَدَامَى ,, نَدِيمٌ { a boon companion.
	جَزَائِرُ pl. جَزَائِرُ island.	هَدَايَا pl. هَدَايَا gift. مَنَآيَا ,, مَنَآيَا fate. رَعَايَا (subjects, peasantry.
عَمَدَانُ pl. عَمَدَانُ	عَجَائِزُ pl. عَجَائِزُ { old woman.	
	حَلَائِبُ pl. حَلَائِبُ { milch camel.	

¹ For هَدَائِي to avoid the concurrence of the two *yās* هَدَايَا.

FROM THE MOST COMMON VERBAL NOUNS—*continued*.

فِعَالٌ	فَعْلَانٌ	فَعْلَى
	<p>اعْمَى (اعْمَى) pl. عَمِيَانٌ blind.</p> <p>أَصْلَعٌ pl. صُلْعَانٌ bald.</p> <p>أَصَمٌ „ صَمَانٌ deaf.</p>	<p>أَحْمَقٌ pl. حَمَقَى silly.</p>
عَطَشَانٌ pl. عَطَاشٌ thirsty.		<p>كَسَلَانٌ pl. كَسَلَى lazy.</p> <p>غَضَبَانٌ „ غَضَبَى angry.</p>
نَدَامَانٌ pl. نَدَامٌ repentant.		
خِمَاصٌ pl. خِمَاصَانٌ ravenous, emaciated.		

4. BROKEN PLURALS OF THE MASCULINE AGENT, FORM فَاعِلٌ.

فَعْلٌ Rare.	فِعَالٌ
شَارِبٌ pl. شَرِبٌ drinker.	صَاحِبٌ pl. صَحَابٌ comrade.
نَاصِرٌ „ نَاصِرٌ helper.	نَائِمٌ „ نَائِمٌ sleeper.
تَاجِرٌ „ تَجَرٌ merchant.	تَاجِرٌ „ تَجَارٌ merchant.
رَاكِبٌ „ رَكَبٌ rider.	رَاعٌ „ رَعَاءٌ peasant.
	قَائِمٌ „ قَائِمٌ standing.
فَعْلٌ Rare.	فِعَالَةٌ
تَاجِلٌ pl. نَهَلٌ thirsty.	نَاهِبٌ pl. نِهَابَةٌ plunderer.
خَادِمٌ „ خَدَمٌ servant.	صَاحِبٌ „ صَحَابَةٌ comrade.
طَالِبٌ „ طَلَبٌ seeker.	افْعَالٌ Plural of paucity ; rare.
تَابِعٌ „ تَبِعٌ follower.	طَاهِرٌ pl. طَاهِرٌ purified, clean.
	نَاصِرٌ „ نَاصِرٌ helper.
فَعْلَةٌ Not from defective verbs.	فَعْلٌ Not derived from defective verbs.
فَاعِلٌ pl. فَعَلَةٌ workman.	حَاكِمٌ pl. حَاكِمٌ ruler.
كَامِلٌ „ كَمَلَةٌ perfect.	نَائِمٌ „ نَائِمٌ sleeper.
سَاحِرٌ „ سَحَرَةٌ magician.	غَائِبٌ „ غَائِبٌ absent.
بَايِعٌ „ بَاعَةٌ for بَيْعَةٌ seller.	غَازٍ „ غَزَى warrior (rare).

BROKEN PLURALS OF THE MASCULINE AGENT فاعِلٌ—continued.

<p>فَعَالٌ Not from defective verbs.</p>	<p>فَعْلَانٌ</p>
<p>حَاكِمٌ pl. حُكَّامٌ ruler. نَائِمٌ „ نَوَامٌ sleeper. كَافِرٌ „ كُفَّارٌ } misbeliever (Pagan). تَاجِرٌ „ تَجَّارٌ merchant. غَازٍ „ غَزَاةٌ warrior (rare).</p>	<p>فَارِسٌ pl. فَرَسَانٌ horseman. شَابٌ „ شَبَابٌ youth. فَعِيلٌ Rare.</p>
<p>فُعُولٌ Rare.</p>	<p>حَاجٌ pl. حَاجِجٌ pilgrim. غَازٍ „ غَزِيٌّ warrior.</p>
<p>وَاقِفٌ pl. وَقُوفٌ stander. جَالِسٌ „ جُلُوسٌ sitter. قَاعِدٌ „ قُعُودٌ sitter. شَاهِدٌ „ شُهُودٌ witness. جَاثٍ „ جَثِيٌّ (for جَثْوَى) kneeling.</p>	<p>فَعْلَاءٌ شَاعِرٌ pl. شُعَرَاءٌ poet. عَاقِلٌ „ عَقْلَاءٌ {rational, intellectual. صَالِحٌ „ صَلَحَاءٌ righteous. These are probably plurals of obsolete forms فَعِيلٌ, as شُعَيْرٌ, etc.</p>
<p>فَوَاعِلٌ Substantives.</p>	<p>فُعْلَى Denoting affliction or injury.</p>
<p>سَاحِلٌ pl. سَوَاحِلٌ coast. Masculine (rare). فَارِسٌ „ فَوَارِسٌ horseman. تَابِعٌ „ تَوَابِعٌ follower. Feminines (common). حَاوِلٌ „ حَوَائِلٌ pregnant.</p>	<p>هَالِكٌ pl. هَالِكِيٌّ perishing. عَائِلٌ „ عَائِلِيٌّ {having a large family, poor.</p>
<p>فِعْلَانٌ حَاطٍ pl. حِيطَانٌ wall (inclosing).</p>	<p>فَعْلَةٌ Denoting rational beings and derived from defective verbs. قَاضٍ pl. قَضَاةٌ (قَضِيَّةٌ) Cadi. رَامٌ „ رَوَاةٌ (رَوِيَّةٌ) archer. غَازٍ „ غَزَاةٌ warrior. رَآءٍ „ رَوَاةٌ Rhapsodist (reciter of poetry).</p>

5. BROKEN PLURALS OF THE FEMININE AGENT, FORM فَاعِلَةٌ.

	فَعْلٌ	فَوَاعِلٌ
فَاعِلَةٌ	صَوْمٌ pl. صَائِمَةٌ fasting.	Substantives. صَوَاقِقٌ pl. صَائِقَةٌ thunder-clap.
	بَاهِلَةٌ she camel turned loose to pasture. , , بَاهِلٌ	نَوَادِرٌ , , نَادِرَةٌ rarity. Feminine adjectives. صَوَاحِبٌ pl. صَاحِبَةٌ companion. جَوَارٍ¹ (slave) girl. , , جَارِيَةٌ (شَوَانِي for) شَوَانٍ , , غَانِيَةٌ

¹ See p. 130, note.

6. BROKEN PLURALS

	(1) َ	(2) اَ	(3) (4) ُ
	أَفَاعِلُ	فَعَالِلُ	
فِعْلَلُ		فَعْدَعُ pl. ضَفَادِعُ frog.	
فَعْلَلَة		قَنَاطِرُ ,, قَنَاطِرَة bridge, arch.	
إِفْعَلُ	إِصْبَعُ pl. أَصَابِعُ finger.		
أَفْعَلُ	أَفَاعٍ ¹ viper. ,, أَفْعَى		
أَفْعَلُ when used as substantives.	أَكْبَرُ greatest one. ,, أَكْبَرُ		
تَفْعِلَة			
مَفْعِلَة			
مَفْعَلُ			
فَعْلَلُولُ		عَنَّاكِبُ pl. عَنَكَبُوتُ spider.	
فَعْلَلِيلُ		عَنْدَلِيلُ ,, عَنَدَلِيْبُ nightingale	
فَعْلَلَة		قَلَانِسُ (dervish's cap. ,, قَلَنْسَوَة	
فَاعِلُ	خَاتَمُ a signet-ring. pl. خَوَاتِمُ	طَوَائِعُ ,, طَابَعُ a stamp.	
فَاعِلٌ		قَوَالِبُ pl. قَالِبُ a mould. See p. 132.	

¹ See p. 130, note.

OF QUADRILITERALS.

(4) (3) (2) (1)	
تَفَاعِلُ	مَفَاعِلُ
تَجَارِبُ pl. ⁵ تَجْرِبَةٌ experience.	
	مَعَايِشُ pl. ⁵ مَعِيشَةٌ livelihood. ¹
	مَعَانِي pl. ⁵ مَعْنَى meaning.

¹ Note that in plurals of the form مَفَاعِلُ in nouns derived from verbs whose medial radical is ي, this ي resumes its power as a consonant, and does not change into *hemzeh* as in all other cases. A few in و follow the same rule: as مَنَازِدُ plural مَنَازِرُ "desert." Exceptional cases are مَعَاصٍ "a place for diving," and مَعَارِدُ "a cave," from غوص and غور, which make مَعَايِصُ and مَعَايِرُ, as if from غيص and غيبر.

BROKEN PLURALS

(1) (2) (3) (4)		
	فَعَالِيلُ	تَفَاعِيلُ
فَعْلَانُ	سُلْطَانُ pl. سُلَاطِينُ Sultan.	
فَعْلَى not being a noun of relation.	كُرَاسِيَّ pl. كُرْسِيَّ throne.	
فَعْلِيَّةُ		
فِعِيلُ	سَكَائِينُ pl. سِكِّينُ knife.	
تَفْعِيلُ		تَصَاوِيرُ pl. تَصَوِيرُ picture. تَوَارِيخُ ,, تَارِيخُ date, history.
مِنْعَالُ		
مِنْعِيلُ		
مِنْعُولُ		
فَاعُولُ		
يَفْعُولُ		

OF QUADRILITERALS—*continued*.

(4)	(3)	(2)	(1)
مَفَاعِلُ	يَفَاعِلُ	فَوَاعِلُ	
مَحْظِيَّةٌ pl. مَحَاطِيٌّ {favourite wife.			
مِفْتَاحٌ pl. مِفَاتِيحٌ key.			
مِسْكِينٌ pl. مَسَاكِينٌ poor.			
مَضْمُونٌ pl. مَضَامِينٌ {contents, composition.			
		جَوَامِيسُ pl. جَامُوسٌ buffalo	
		جَوَامِيسُ „ جَاسُوسٌ spy.	
	يَنَابِيعٌ pl. يَنْبُوعٌ fountain.		

Exceptional forms :

دِنَارٌ pl. دِنَانِيرٌ a certain coin, as if from دِنَارٌ.

دِيَوَانٌ (دِيَوَانٌ for دِيَوَانٌ) دِيَوَانٌ {a collection of poems, a register, as if from دِيَوَانٌ „ دِيَوَانٌ.

اَتُونٌ or اَتَانِينٌ or اَتَانِينٌ an oven, as if from either اَتُونٌ or اَتُونٌ.

BROKEN PLURALS OF QUADRILITERALS, ETC.—*continued.*

	فَعَالِلَةٌ
فَعَلَّلَ	مَلَايِكَةٌ pl. مَلَائِكَةٌ an angel.
أَفْعَلَّ	أَسَاقِفَةٌ pl. اسَاقِفَة a bishop (ἐπίσκοπος).
فَعِيلَ	صَيَّقَلَ pl. صَيَاقِلَةٌ a polisher. قَيَّصَرَ ,, قَيَّاصِرَةٌ Caesar, an Emperor (Czar).
فَعْلُولَ	فَرَّاعِنَةٌ pl. فَرَّاعُونٌ Pharaoh.
فَعْلِيلَ	تَلَامِيذٌ pl. تَلَامِيذٌ and تَلَامِيذٌ student, pupil.
فِيْعْلُولَ	فَلَانِسِفَةٌ pl. فِيلَسُوفٌ philosopher (φιλόσοφος).
مَفْعَلِيَّ	مَغَارِبِيَّ pl. مَغَارِبَةٌ a Moor.
مَفْعَلِيَّ	مُحَالِلِيَّ pl. مُحَالِلَةٌ of the family of Mohalleb.
فَعْلَلِيَّ	دِمَاشِقِيَّ pl. دِمَاشِقَةٌ a Damascene.
فَعْلَالِيَّ	بَغْدَادِيَّ pl. بَغْدَادَةٌ a Baghdadí.
فَعَالٍ	جَبَابِرَةٌ pl. جَبَابِرٌ a giant, powerful one.

When a word has several meanings in the singular, generally has a different form of broken plural for each—

عَبْدٌ pl. عَمِيدٌ slaves, عِبَادٌ servants (of God), i.e. mo-

عَيْنٌ ,, عَيُونٌ eyes or fountains, أَعْيُنٌ (Pl. of Paucity) eyes

tains, أَعْيَانٌ nobles.

بَيْتٌ ,, بُيُوتٌ houses,

أَبْيَاتٌ verses of poetry (distichs).

PLURALS OF PLURALS.

(66). In the measure of the quadrilaterals and quinqueliterals are formed plurals of plurals; thus,

يَدِ (يَدِي) pl. اَيْدٍ (اَيْدِي) hands, pl. of pl. اَيْدٍ (اَيْدِي) gifts.

Or a regular plural may be formed from the broken plural, but it must be a feminine plural; see

طَرِيق road, pl. طَرِيقَات , pl. of pl. طَرِيقَات.

IRREGULAR PLURALS.

(67). Plurals formed from singulars obsolete and other than those to which they are referred.

أُم mother, pl. أُمَّهَات	as if from	أُمِّهَات
فَم mouth, ,,	أَفْوَاد	فَوَاه
مَاء water, ,,	أَمْوَاد	مَاد

The two following are also irregular.

نِسَاء women, pl. نِسْوَة and نِسْوَان
 إِنْسَان man, ,, أَنَاس (rare and poetic) and نَاس

From relative adjectives a collective plural may be formed by simply adding the feminine termination ة¹ as,

شَافِعِي Shafiite, coll. pl. شَافِعِيَّة the Shafiite sect.

The table opposite this page (No. 7) contains a general view of the broken plurals.

¹ See p. 97 (47).

EXAMPLES OF THE DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

(68). REGULARLY DECLINED NOUNS.

1. Nouns derived from a verb (except أَفْعَلُ) and denoting rational beings; as مَذْنِبٌ, fem. مَذْنِبَةٌ “a sinner.”

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
مَذْنِبَاتٌ	مَذْنِبُونَ	مَذْنِبَتَانِ	مَذْنِبَانِ	مَذْنِبَةٌ	مَذْنِبٌ	Subjective
مَذْنِبَاتٍ	مَذْنِبِينَ	مَذْنِبَتَيْنِ	مَذْنِبَيْنِ	مَذْنِبَةٍ	مَذْنِبٍ	Dependent
do.	do.	do.	do.	مَذْنِبَةً	مَذْنِبًا	Objective

2. Proper names consisting of three letters the middle of which is quiescent; as زَيْدٌ *Zeid*, a man's name; هِنْدٌ *Hind*,¹ a woman's name.

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
هِنْدَاتٌ	زَيْدُونَ	هِنْدَانِ	زَيْدَانِ	هِنْدٌ	زَيْدٌ	Subjective
هِنْدَاتٍ	زَيْدِينَ	هِنْدَيْنِ	زَيْدَيْنِ	هِنْدٍ	زَيْدٍ	Dependent
do.	do.	do.	do.	هِنْدًا	زَيْدًا	Objective

3. Proper names of men having an intelligible signification in Arabic; as مُحَمَّدٌ *Mohammed* (Praised).

PLURAL.	DUAL.	SINGULAR.	
Masc.	Masc.	Masc.	
مُحَمَّدُونَ	مُحَمَّدَانِ	مُحَمَّدٌ	Subjective
مُحَمَّدِينَ	مُحَمَّدَيْنِ	مُحَمَّدٍ	Dependent
do.	do.	مُحَمَّدًا	Objective

¹ Words of this class, *i.e.* trilateral names of females, may be imperfectly declined (see p. 102).

4. Broken plurals, except those of the form (4) (3) (2) (1), (4) (3) (2) (1), and those ending in ^سى or ^آى; as ^سأسد "lions," ^سقردة "apes."

PLURAL.		
^س قردة	^س أسد	Subjective
^س قردة	^س أسد	Dependent
^س قردة	^س أسدا	Objective

(69). IMPERFECTLY DECLINED NOUNS.

1. Proper names of men or women not included in classes 2 and 3 of the previous section: ^سعثمان "Othman," ^سزينب "Zeinab."

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
^س عشمانون	^س عشمانون	^س عشمانان	^س عشمانان	^س عشمان	^س عشمان	Subjective
^س عشمانين	^س عشمانين	^س عشمانين	^س عشمانين	^س عشمان	^س عشمان	{ Dependent and Objective

2. Nouns of the form ^سأفعل, whether comparative or descriptive of colour and deformity; as ^سأفعل "more accomplished."

PLURAL.	DUAL.	SINGULAR.	
Masc.	Masc.	Masc.	
^س أفعلون	^س أفعلان	^س أفعل	Subjective
^س أفعلين	^س أفعلين	^س أفعل	{ Dependent and Objective

3. Nouns of the form ^سفعلى, adjectival and descriptive, and which do not make their feminine by the addition of ^س.

These are declined like ^سعثمان in the last paradigm but one.

4. Broken plurals of the form (4) (3) | (2) (1), (4) (3) | (2) (1); as *دِرَاهِمٌ* “dirhems” (drachmæ); *مِفْتَاحٌ* “keys.”

<i>مِفْتَاحٌ</i>	<i>دِرَاهِمٌ</i>	Subjective
<i>مِفْتَاحٍ</i>	<i>دِرَاهِمٍ</i>	{ Dependent and Objective
<i>مِفْتَاحًا</i>	<i>دِرَاهِمًا</i>	

(70). DECLENSION OF NOUNS ENDING IN A WEAK LETTER.

1. Nouns ending in *آء*, the *hemzeh* being radical.

These are declined quite regularly; as *قَرَّاءٌ* “a reader.”

PLURAL.	DUAL.	SINGULAR.
<i>قَرَّاءُونَ</i>	<i>قَرَّاءَانِ</i>	<i>قَرَّاءٌ</i> Subjective
<i>قَرَّاءِينَ</i>	<i>قَرَّاءَيْنِ</i>	<i>قَرَّاءٌ</i> Dependent
		<i>قَرَّاءًا</i> Objective

2. Nouns ending in *آء*, this termination being derived from a final radical *و* or *ي*; as *كِسَاوٌ* for *كِسَاءٌ* “a suit of clothes.”

PLURAL.	DUAL.	SINGULAR.
A regular plural cannot be formed from such a noun as this. See p. 106 (56), 1.	<i>كِسَاءَانِ</i>	<i>كِسَاءٌ</i> Subjective
	<i>كِسَاوَانِ</i>	
	<i>كِسَاءَيْنِ</i>	<i>كِسَاءٌ</i> Dependent
	<i>كِسَاوَيْنِ</i>	<i>كِسَاءٌ</i> Objective

رِدَائٌ for *رِدَايٌ* “a mantle,” is similarly declined.

When the termination *آء* is added to the root but is not a sign of the feminine, as *عِلْبَاءٌ* “a sinew,” it is declined in the same manner, but the form *عِلْبَاوَانِ* is preferable in the dual.

3. Nouns ending in آء .

PLURAL.	DUAL.	SINGULAR.
The regular plural is wanting. See p. 130, note.	عَذْرَاوَانِ عَذْرَاوَيْنِ	عَذْرَاءٌ Subjective عَذْرَاءٌ { Dependent and Objective

Broken plurals in آء are declined like the singular of this.

4. Proper names of men ending in آء ; as زَكَرِيَّا "Zachariah."

PLURAL.	DUAL.	SINGULAR.
زَكَرِيَّاءُ زَكَرِيَّائِيْنَ	زَكَرِيَّاءَانِ or $\text{زَكَرِيَّاءَاوَانِ}$ زَكَرِيَّاءَيْنِ or $\text{زَكَرِيَّاءَاوَيْنِ}$	زَكَرِيَّاءٌ Subjective زَكَرِيَّاءٌ { Dependent and Objective

5. Triliterals ending in اٌ for وٌ .

PLURAL.	DUAL.	SINGULAR.
Regular plural wanting. See p. 96 (56).	عَصَوَانِ عَصَوَيْنِ do.	عَصَاٌ Subjective عَصَاٌ Dependent عَصَاٌ Objective

Similarly أَبٌ , أَخٌ , etc., for أَبَوٌ , أَخَوٌ , make أَبَوَانِ , أَخَوَانِ , etc., in the dual.

6. Nouns ending in ى for يٌ .

PLURAL.	DUAL.	SINGULAR.
Regular plural wanting. See p. 96 (56).	فَتَيَانِ فَتَيَيْنِ do.	فَتًى Subjective فَتًى Dependent فَتًى Objective

Nouns ending in *ى* (without the *tenwīn*) are similarly declined in the dual.

7. Quadrilaterals ending in *ـ* for *و* or *ى*.

PLURAL.	DUAL.	SINGULAR.
قَاضُونَ	قَاضِيَانِ	قَاضٍ Subjective
قَاضِينَ	قَاضِيَيْنِ	قَاضٍ Dependent
		قَاضِيًا Objective

FORMATION OF NOUNS NOT IMMEDIATELY DERIVED FROM VERBS.

NOUN OF RELATION.

(71). The noun of relation is formed by affixing the syllable *ى* and rejecting all such inflections as the *z* of the feminine, or the signs of the dual and plural, as *مَكَّةَ*, relative *مَكِّيَّ*; *زَيْدَانِ* “two Zeids,” rel. *زَيْدِيَّ*; *زَيْدُونَ*, rel. *زَيْدِيَّ*.

In nouns which themselves end in the termination *ى*, the relative is formed by rejecting this, if preceded by more than two letters, and adding the termination *ى*, as *كُرَيْشِيَّ*, rel. *كُرَيْشِيَّ*, so that the two are identical in form; but if preceded by only one letter, the first of the two *yās* *ي* is pointed with *fethah* and the second is changed into *و*, as *حَيَّيَّ* “an Arab village,” rel. *حَيَوِيَّ*. If the first of the two *yās* *ي* stand in place of a *و*, it is also changed into that letter, as *طَوِيَّ* “a fold,” rel. *طَوَوِيَّ*.

When the third or fourth letter of a word is the short *alif* *ا* or *ي* (see p. 74 c.), it is changed into *و*, before the relative affix, as *عَصَا* “staff,” *عَصَوِيَّ*; *فَتَى* “youth,” *فَتَوِيَّ*;

but if the short *alif* is the fifth letter in the word, it is apocopated altogether before the termination ـِيّ ; as حُبَارِيّ “a bustard,” مُصْطَفَى “Mustafa” (chosen), مُصْطَفَى .

In forming the noun of relation from nouns ending in *long alif*, when radical, the same rules must be applied which were given in the case of the dual (see p. 104), as قُرَّاء “a reader,” قُرَّائِيّ ; عِنبَاء “a sinew in the neck,” عِنبَائِيّ ; كِسَائِيّ and عِلْبَائِيّ “a garment,” كِسَائِيّ and عِلْبَائِيّ . But if it be a sign of the feminine, the noun of relation should be formed with و ; as حَمْرَاء “red,” حَمْرَآوِيّ .

When the termination of a noun is ـ occurring after the second or third letter, and being a substitute for the final *yá* with *tenwín* ـِيّ (y' p. 75), this is changed into *wáw* و , and the preceding letter is pointed with *fetḥah* in forming the noun of relation, as قَاضٍ “a judge,” قَاضَوِيّ .

If, however, the final *yá* follows a quiescent letter, it remains unchanged, as ظَبِيّ “a fawn,” ظَبِيِّيّ (see p. 86, note 2).

If it occur as the fifth letter of a word, it is rejected altogether in the noun of relation, as مُعْتَدٍ “inimical,” rel. مُسْتَعِدِّيّ ; مُسْتَعِلٍ “grand,” “lofty,” rel. مُسْتَعِلِيّ .

If the penultimate is ـِيّ , in nouns derived from verbs of which the final radical is *weak*, or in nouns ending in ـِ , and derived from verbs with a *sound* middle letter, as عَلِيّ (= عَلِيَّو for عَلِيِّيّ), جُهَيْنَةَ and حَنِيفَةَ , the *yá* is dropped in forming the relative: as عَلَوِيّ “a descendant of ‘Alí,” جُهَيْنِيّ “of the tribe of Juheineh,” and حَنِيفِيّ “Hanefite” (a sect); but if the final radical is *sound*, or the medial *weak* or doubled, the *yá* is retained; thus عَقِيلٌ , a proper

name, جَلِيلَةٌ "excellent," طَوِيلٌ "tall," عَقِيلٌ; كَبِدٌ جَلِيلٌ.

If the second letter of a word be pointed with *kesrah*, this vowel is changed to *felḥah* in forming the relative, as كَبِدٌ "liver," but if the *kesrated* letter follow more than one letter, it may be either changed or not at pleasure: تَغْلِبُ "Taghleḥ" (proper name of the founder of an Arab tribe), تَغْلِبِي or تَغْلِي.

In forming relatives from plurals the noun must be restored to its regular form, as فَرَائِضُ "religious duties," unless the plural be used as a proper name, as أَنْمَارٌ "Leopards" (name of a tribe), أَنْصَارٌ "Helpers" (title of the companions of Mohammed), أَنْصَارِي.

Nouns of relation from compound words are formed by adding the termination ي to the first portion and rejecting the last, as بَعْبَكٌ "Baalbekk," بَعْلِي "fifteen," خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ; بَعْلِي "son," unless the first portion be the words ابْنُ "father," in which case the noun of relation is made from the last portion only, as أَبُو بَكْرٍ "Abu Bekr," بَكْرِي; ابْنُ الْوَلِيدِ "Ibn el Walíd," وَلِيدِي "Abda 'l Kais," قَيْسِي.

In forming the noun of relation from nouns of which the first radical has been apocopated, the suppressed letter is restored, if the last radical be a weak letter; as شَيْءٌ "marking," وَشَوِي; but not otherwise, as عِدَّةٌ "a promise," عِدِّي "promissory."

In words of which the last letter has been apocopated without any compensatory *hemzeh* being added, or of which the medial letter has a vowel in the original form,

as أَبٌ (for أَبُو), and شَفَّةٌ “lip” (for شَفَّةُ), the missing letter is restored in forming the relative, and the compensating ة, if it exist, is dropped, as أَبَوِي “paternal,” شَفَوِي “labial.” But if the compensating *hemzeh* has been added, as ابْنِ (for بَنِي), or the middle letter is quiescent in the original form, as دَمٌ (for دَمِي), it may be restored or not at pleasure: if restored, it takes the form of و, even though the original radical be ي, as ابْنِي or بَنَوِي “filial,” دَمِي or دَمَوِي “bloody.”

In words which consist originally of only two letters, when the last is a sound consonant, this may be either doubled or not, as كَمْ “how much?” rel. كَمِي or كَمِي; but if the last letter be a و, *wáw*, it is always doubled, as كَوِي “if.”

If the last letter be an *alif*, it is doubled, and either *hemzeh* or *wáw* is substituted for the second *alif* thus obtained, as in لَاِي (a proper name), لَاَوِي, لَاَوِي.

Another form of the relative termination is اِنِّي. This is principally used in technical or scientific terms; as جِسْمَانِي “corporeal,” رُوحَانِي “spiritual,” بَرَانِي “external,” جَوَانِي “internal.”

Very irregular forms are شَامِي “Syrian,” يَمَانِي “of Yemen.” (These are declined like قاضٍ).

ABSTRACT NOUN.

(72). From the Noun of Relation an Abstract Substantive is formed by the addition of the feminine termination ة, as إِلَهٌ “a god,” إِلَهِي “divine,” إِلَهِيَّةٌ “divinity.” In theological works (especially Christian) the termination

مَلَكُوتٌ is used instead, as لَاهُوتٌ “divinity,” “deity,” “kingdom (of heaven).”

THE DIMINUTIVE.

(73). The diminutive is formed by inserting يَ (quiescent *yá*) after the second letter of the noun, and pointing the initial letter with *dhammah* and the second letter with *fethah*, as رَجُلٌ “a man,” dim. رَجُلَيْتٌ.

If the noun has more than three letters, all which follow the inserted يَ are pointed with *kesrah*, as دِرْهَمٌ “a drachma,” dim. دِرْهَمِيَّتٌ.

In such nouns, however, if the additional letter is not a radical, but is one of the feminine affixes ة, يَ or آ, the inserted *alif* of such forms as the broken plural أَفْعَالٌ, or the termination أَكُن added to proper names or epithets, such letter retains its original pointing with *fethah*, as تَمْرٌ “a date,” dim. تَمْرِيَّتٌ; صَغِيرٌ “small,” dim. صَغِيرِيَّتٌ; حُمْرٌ “red,” dim. حُمْرِيَّتٌ; أَحْمَالٌ “loads,” dim. أَحْمَالِيَّتٌ; سَكْرَانٌ, a proper name, dim. سَكْرَانِيَّتٌ; أُحْيِمَالٌ “drunk,” dim. أُحْيِمَالِيَّتٌ.

In nouns where the characteristic vowel has changed a weak radical into another weak radical homogeneous with itself, such radical is restored, as بَابٌ (for بَوْبٌ) “a door,” (مَوْزَانٌ for مِيزَانٌ) “a balance,” (نَيْبٌ for نَابٌ) “a fang,” (بُيُوتٌ for بَوَيْتٌ).

A quiescent weak letter before the inserted يَ of the diminutive is changed to و, *wáw*, as ضَوْبَرٌ, dim. ضَوْبَرِيَّتٌ; حَيْدَرٌ “a lion,” dim. حَيْدَرِيَّتٌ; يُونُسٌ, dim. يُونُسِيَّتٌ. But if the weak letter occur after the يَ *yá* of the diminutive, it becomes يَ, as مِفْتَاحٌ “a key,” dim. مِفْتَاحِيَّتٌ; عَصْفُورٌ “a small bird,” dim. عَصْفُورِيَّتٌ.

The reason for these last two rules is obvious, because the characteristic vowels of the diminutive form are *dhammah* at the beginning and *kesrah* at the end, and consequently these vowels influence any weak letters which may occur in these respective positions.

When the last syllable of the noun of more than three letters contains a long vowel, such vowel is influenced by the *kesrah* characteristic of the form, and becomes *yá* by the rules of permutation already given, as *عَصْفُورٌ*, dim. *عَصْفَرِيٌّ*. In nouns of four letters of which the third is a long vowel, such long vowel coalesces with the *yá* of the diminutive, as *عَلَمٌ* "slave boy," dim. *عَلَمِيٌّ* for *عَلَمِيَّ*.

When there are more than four *radical* letters in the word, the diminutive is formed by applying the above rule for quadriliterals, and rejecting all after the fourth letter, as *سَقَرَجَلٌ* "quince," *سَقَرَجِيٌّ*. Sometimes the rejected letters are compensated for by inserting a *yá*, as *سَقَرَجِيَّ*.

In nouns which contain five or six letters, but which are derived forms of the simple trilateral noun or verb, the diminutive is formed by rejecting the servile (or characteristic) letters of the derived form, but not the participial prefix *mím*, as *مُسْتَخْرِجٌ* "deducing," dim. *مُسْتَخْرِجِيٌّ*; *مُضْطَرَبٌ* "agitated," dim. *مُضْطَرَبِيٌّ*.

In words which are feminine in meaning, but not in form, or which are arbitrarily considered as feminine, the feminine termination *ũ* is added to the diminutive, as *دَوْبَرَةٌ* "house," *دَوْبَرِيَّةٌ*; *عَيْنٌ* "eye," *عَيْنِيَّةٌ*.

In nouns of two letters from which the third has been apocopated, such apocopated letter is restored in the diminutive, as *دَمٌ* (دَهَى) "blood," *دَهِيٌّ*.

If anything has been substituted for the apocopated letter, it is dropped in the diminutive, as *رَبْنِيٌّ*, *رَبْنِيَّةٌ*.

for ^{سَمِي} سَمِي, unless the substituted letter be the feminine termination, in which case it is retained, as ^{شَفِي} شَفِي “lip,” ^{شَفِيَّة} شَفِيَّة. In ^{أَخْت} أَخْت “sister,” ^{بِنْت} بِنْت “daughter,” the feminine termination ت assumes its usual form in the diminutive, which becomes ^{أَخِيَّة} أَخِيَّة, ^{بِنِيَّة} بِنِيَّة.

In nouns of more than three letters of which a radical has been dropped, this is not restored in the diminutive, as ^{قَاضٍ} قَاضٍ “a Cadi,” ^{قُؤَيْضٍ} قُؤَيْضٍ.

Diminutives of plurals of paucity, or of regular plurals, may be obtained by the foregoing rules, as ^{أَضْلَع} أَضْلَع “ribs,” ^{هُنَيْدَات} هُنَيْدَات “Hinds,” ^{زَيْدُونَ} زَيْدُونَ “Zeids,” ^{أُضْيِلَع} أُضْيِلَع.

Broken plurals of multitude, however, are not susceptible of a diminutive form; this is only obtained from the singular, which is then inflected with a regular plural masculine in the case of rational masculine nouns, and a regular feminine plural in the case of feminine or irrational nouns; as ^{شُعَرَاء} شُعَرَاء “poets,” (from ^{شَاعِر} شَاعِر); ^{جُمَيْلَات} جُمَيْلَات “camels,” ^{جَمَل} جَمَل (from ^{هِنْد} هِنْد “Hinds,” ^{هُنْدُ} هُنْدُ (from ^{جَمَل} جَمَل).

Compound nouns take the diminutive only in the first part of the compound; as ^{بَعْلَبَكْ} بَعْلَبَكْ “Baalbekk,” ^{عَبْدُ اللَّهِ} عَبْدُ اللَّهِ “Abd 'allah,” ^{عَبِيدُ اللَّهِ} عِبِيدُ اللَّهِ; ^{عَشْر} عَشْر “fifteen,” ^{خَمِيسَة} خَمِيسَة عَشْر.

Declinable nouns only are susceptible of a diminutive.

Diminutives of the demonstrative pronouns occur, though rarely, and their initial vowel is always *fethah* instead of *dhammah*, as ^{ذَا} ذَا “that,” ^{ذِيَا} ذِيَا “that,” fem. ^{تَا} تَا “that,” fem. ^{الَّذِي} الَّذِي “who,” ^{الَّتِي} الَّتِي “who,” fem. ^{ذَالِك} ذَالِك “that,” ^{ذَالِكَة} ذَالِكَة “that,” fem. ^{الْتِيَا} الْتِيَا.

THE PRONOUNS.

(74). The Pronouns are of two kinds, separate and affixed.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The separate pronouns are :

	SINGULAR.			DUAL. Common.	PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Common.	Fem.		Masc.	Common.	Fem.
1st person		أَنَا I.				نَحْنُ we.	
2nd „	أَنْتَ thou.		أَنْتِ thou.	أَنْتُمَا ye two.	أَنْتُمْ ye.		أَنْتُنَّ ye.
3rd „	هُوَ he.		هِيَ she.	هُمَا they two.	هُمْ they.		هُنَّ they.

These only express the nominative case.

هُوَ and هِيَ before the conjunctions وَ and فَ may lose their first vowel and become وَهُوَ and وَهِيَ; أَنَا is pronounced *ănă* (not *ăná*), and is considered in poetry as consisting of two short syllables.

2. The affixed pronouns are :

	SINGULAR.			DUAL. Common.	PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Common.	Fem.		Masc.	Common.	Fem.
1st person		يَ my, me.				نَا	
2nd „	كَ thy, thee.		كِ thy, thee.	كُمَا your, you two.	كُم your, you,		كُنَّ your, you.
3rd „	لَ his, him.		هَا her.	هُمَا their, them two.	هُمْ their, them.		هُنَّ their, them.

These only express the oblique or objective cases.

THE NÚN OF PRECAUTION.

(75). With verbs the يَ of the first person becomes نِي; the ن thus employed is called نُونُ الْإِقْرَافَةِ *the nún of precaution*,

because it serves to prevent confusion in verbs, the inflexions of which, when they consist of short vowels, would otherwise be absorbed by the letter of prolongation. This confusion actually takes place in nouns, there being no distinction between the various cases of a noun when the pronoun of the first person is affixed to it; as كِتَابِي "my book," (nom. and objective), "of my book," etc.

The *nūn of precaution* is often used with certain particles which resemble verbs, such as إِنَّ "verily," أَنَّ "that," لَكِنَّ "but," كَأَنَّ "as if," لَعَلَّ "perhaps." It is always used with لَيْت "would that." It is also used with the particles مِنْ "from," عَنْ "that;" generally with لَدُن "with," "near." With قَدْ or قُتَّ in the sense of "enough," it may be used, but is more frequently rejected. It is not unfrequently employed when the pronoun of the first person is added to the form مَا أَفْتَرْنِي إِلَى عَفْوِ اللَّهِ, expressing admiration, as "How much I need the forgiveness of God!"

CHANGES IN VOWELS, ETC., BEFORE THE AFFIXED PRONOUNS.

(76). After a long vowel ي becomes ى, as خَطَايَا "sins," خَطَايَايَ "my sins."

The pronouns of the third person, when preceded by *kesrah* — or ي, change their *dhammah* to *kesrah*, as كِتَابِهِ, "(of) his book;" عَلَيْهِمْ "upon them."

N.B. If a *hemzet el-wasl* follows the plural masculine pronoun, the *mīm* must be pointed with ِ, as عَلَيْهِمُ السَّلَامُ "peace be upon them!"

The feminine termination ٌ becomes َ before the affixed pronoun, as كِتَابَتُهَا "writing," كِتَابَتُهَا "her writing."

As the addition of the affixed pronoun serves to

make the noun definite, the *tenwin* necessarily disappears (see p. 7).

The **و** of the regular plural and the **ي** of the dual are omitted before the affixed pronouns, as كِتَابُهُ “his two books;” ضَارِبُوهُ “his strikers.”

With the affixed pronoun of the first person singular the **و** and **ي** coalesce into **يَّ**, as ضَارِبِيَّ for ضَارِبُيَّ (by *j*, p. 75).

Similarly the mute **ا** is dropped in the third person masc. plural of the preterite, as كَتَبُوْهُ “they wrote it.”

A VERB GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVE PRONOUNS.

(77). When a verb governs two accusatives, and both of these happen to be affixed pronouns, as اَعْطَيْتُكَ “I gave thee it,” the second may be either joined or written separately, the word اَيَّا being used as a peg on which to hang it; thus اَعْطَيْتُكَ اَيَّاهُ “I gave thee it.”

If the two pronouns are joined, the natural order of the persons must be followed, the 1st preceding the 2nd, and the 2nd coming before the 3rd.

N.B. The separate form with اَيَّا can only be used—(1) in a case like that given above, where two affixed pronouns would otherwise come together; or (2) where an affixed pronoun would immediately follow the pronominal termination of a verb, both referring to the same person, as كُنْتُ اَيَّاهُ “I was he,” where كُنْتُ اَيَّاهُ would be preferred; or (3) where it is required to place the accusative pronoun before the verb for the sake of emphasis, as اَيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ “Thee we worship.”

When pronouns of the second person plural are followed by another affixed pronoun, a long **و** is introduced

between the two, as ^{اَعْطَيْتُكَمُ} "I gave you," ^{اَعْطَيْتُكُمْوَهُ} "I gave you it," ^{اَعْطَيْتُمُ} "you gave," ^{اَعْطَيْتُمُوَهُ} "you gave it" (^{مُوَ} appears to have been the original full form of the termination of these pronouns).

NOTE ON THE PRONOMINAL SIGNIFICATION OF THE INFLECTIONS OF VERBS.

(78). The last rule assumes a fact which the student will do well to bear in mind, namely, that the prefixes and affixes by which the different persons of a verb are formed are in reality nominative pronouns: the affixes serve for the preterite, the prefixes for the aorist, the tense itself being indeclinable: thus

^{قَتَلَ} expresses the mere act of "killing" in the preterite:

^{قَتَلَ} "he killed" (the *fethah* representing the pronoun *he*).

^{قَتَلَتْ} "she killed" (the *fethah* again is the pronoun and ^ت is the feminine termination, which in nouns assumes the form ^ة).

^{قَتَلْتُ} "I killed" (^ت is the pronoun *I* in the preterite of verbs); and so on.

^{يَقْتُلُ} expresses the mere act of "killing" in the aorist:

^{يَقْتُلُ} "he kills" (^{يَ} is the pronoun *he* with the aorist).

^{تَقْتُلُ} "she kills," etc. (^{تَ} is the pronoun *she* with the aorist), and so on.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(79). The Demonstrative pronoun is ^{ذَا} "that," and is thus declined:

PLURAL.	DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
أُولَى or أَوْلَادُ	تَانِ	ذَانِ	ذِي	ذَا	Subjective
"	تَيْنِ	ذَيْنِ	"	"	{ Dependent and Objective

ذَا is seldom used by itself, and when it forms a compound the feminine singular assumes the form تِي or ذِي at the end, and تَا or ت at the beginning.

When ذُو signifies "possessor" (see p. 99), it is fully declined as follows:

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
ذَوَاتُ (أَوَّلَاتُ)	ذَوُو (أَوَّلُو)	ذَوَاتَا	ذَوَا	ذَاتُ	ذُو Subjective
ذَوَاتِ (أَوَّلَاتِ)	ذَوِي (أَوَّلِي)	ذَوَتَي	ذَوَى	ذَاتِ	ذِي Dependent
				ذَات	ذَا Objective

For the ordinary demonstrative denoting distant objects ذَا is compounded with the affixed pronouns كَ, كِ, كِ, كِ; as ذَاكَ "that."

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
أُولَئِكَ (أَوَّلَئِكَ)	ذَانِكَ	ذَانِكَ	ذَانِكَ	ذَاكَ	Subjective
	ذَيْنِكَ	ذَيْنِكَ	ذَيْنِكَ	تِيكَ تَاكَ	{ Dependent and Objective

More usually the emphatic لِ is interposed, in which case the لِ is written defectively in the singular, as ذَاكَ; see p. 15 (3). In the dual the two liquids لِ and نِ coalesce into نِ: thus

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
أُولَئِكَ (أَوَّلَئِكَ)	ذَانِكَ	ذَانِكَ	ذَانِكَ	ذَلِكَ	Subjective
„	ذَيْنِكَ	ذَيْنِكَ	ذَيْنِكَ	„	{ Dependent and Objective

The ordinary demonstrative for near objects is formed by prefixing لَ "lo!" "here," to ذَا, the لِ being generally

defectively written, as هَذَا “this,” which is declined as follows :

PLURAL.	DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
هَآؤُلَاءِ	هَاتَانِ	هَذَانِ	هَذِي	هَذَا	Subjective
”	هَتَيْنِ	هَذَيْنِ	”	”	{ Dependent and Objective

For additional emphasis هَـ may be added to the above, as هَـذَاكَ “this here,” which is then declined :

PLURAL.	DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Common.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
هَآؤُلَآئِكَ	هَاتَانِكَ	هَذَانِكَ	هَاتِيكَ	هَذَاكَ	Subjective
”	هَتَيْنِكَ	هَذَيْنِكَ	”	”	{ Dependent and Objective

THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

(80). The Relative pronoun is formed by prefixing لَ to the demonstrative with the addition of the article, and is thus declined :

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.		
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	
اللَّاتِي	{ الَّذِينَ	اللَّتَانِ	اللَّذَانِ	الَّتِي	الَّذِي	Subjective
or اللَّوَاتِي	{ [الْأُولَاءِ]					{ Dependent and Objective
		اللَّتَيْنِ	اللَّذَيْنِ			

Other relatives are—مَنْ “who,” مَا “what.” مَنْ and مَا are also used as Interrogatives.

Note.—مَنْ and مَا are substantives, and are never used, like الَّذِي, as in a merely adjectival sense: *e.g.*

رَأَيْتُ مَنْ جَاءَ I saw who (him who) came.

= رَأَيْتُ الرَّجُلَ الَّذِي جَاءَ I saw the man who came.

[مَنْ “who?” is sometimes, though very rarely, declined :

PLURAL.		DUAL.		SINGULAR.	
Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.
مَنَات	مَنُون	مَنَتَان	مَنَان	مَنَة	مَنُو Subjective
مَنَات	مَنِين	مَنَتَيْن	مَنِين	مَنَة	مَنِي Dependent
”	”	”	”	مَنَة	مَنَا Objective]

مَا is indeclinable.

[*Note*.—ذَا and its compounds are also indeclinable ; that is, they are not susceptible of inflexions for case-endings ; the inflexions for number and gender not being considered by the Arabic grammarians as declension.]

أَيُّ (fem. أَيَّة) “who” is declined like a regular noun. A compound word may be formed with this and the relatives مَنْ and مَا, which will then have the sense of “-soever,” as أَيُّمَنْ “whosoever,” أَيُّمَا “whatsoever.” The first portion of this compound is declinable.

THE ARTICLE.

(81). The article اَلْ is indeclinable.

It is used with nouns to specify—

1. The individual ; as اَلْقَادِي “the Cádi” (in question).
2. The species اَلْفَرَس “the horse” (as distinguished from the camel, etc.) ; اَلْإِنْسَان “mankind.”
3. To distinguish an individual *par excellence* ; as اَلْمَدِينَةُ “El Medina,” *the* city (*i.e.* of the Prophet).
4. To make an epithet into a proper name or *sobriquet* ; as اَلْحَارِث “Al Harith,” *lit.* “the ploughman.”
5. In certain proper names ; as اَلْعَزِي “the (idol) Ashtoreth,” etc.

The use of the Relative pronouns and of the Article is treated of in detail in the Syntax.

THE NUMERALS.

(82). THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

		MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	
1	١	{ أَحَدٌ وَاحِدٌ	{ إِحْدَى وَاحِدَةٌ	This is declined as an ordinary dual noun.
2	٢	إِثْنَانِ	{ إِثْنَتَانِ ثُثْنَانِ	
3	٣	ثَلَاثَةٌ	ثَلَاثٌ	From 3 to 10 the numerals assume the feminine form for the masculine, and <i>vice versa</i> .
4	٤	أَرْبَعَةٌ	أَرْبَعٌ	
5	٥	خَمْسَةٌ	خَمْسٌ	From three to ten the numerals govern a broken plural of the noun numbered, which is put in the oblique case. If the noun have a plural of paucity, this is to be preferred, as "ثَلَاثَةُ غِلْمَةٍ" "3 slaves."
6	٦	سِتَّةٌ	بِئْسَ بَيْدَتٌ (بِئْسَ)	
7	٧	سَبْعَةٌ	سَبْعٌ	
8	٨	ثَمَنِيَّةٌ	(ثَمَانِي) ثَمَانٍ	
9	٩	تِسْعَةٌ	تِسْعٌ	
10	١٠	عَشْرَةٌ	عَشْرٌ	The numerals compounded with ten are indeclinable, both taking <i>fethah</i> in all cases. The ten thus used in the compound follows the ordinary rule for masculine and feminine, while the units reverse it, as stated above.
11	١١	أَحَدُ عَشْرٍ	إِحْدَى عَشْرَةٍ	
12	١٢	إِثْنَا عَشْرٍ	إِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةٍ	
13	١٣	ثَلَاثَةُ عَشْرٍ	ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةٍ	
14	١٤	أَرْبَعَةُ عَشْرٍ	أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةٍ	
15	١٥	خَمْسَةُ عَشْرٍ	خَمْسَ عَشْرَةٍ	

		MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	
16	١٦	سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ	سِتُّ عَشْرَةَ	<i>From 11 to 99 the numerals take an accusative singular of the thing numbered.</i>
17	١٧	سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ	سَبْعٌ عَشْرَةَ	
18	١٨	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ	ثَمَانِيٌ عَشْرَةَ	
19	١٩	تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ	تِسْعٌ عَشْرَةَ	
20	٢٠	عِشْرُونَ		
21	٢١	أَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	إِحْدَى وَعِشْرُونَ	<i>ثَلَاثُونَ عِشْرُونَ, etc., are common to both genders, and are declined like ordinary sound plurals, see (56) p. 107.</i>
22	٢٢	إِثْنَانِ وَعِشْرُونَ	إِثْنَتَانِ وَعِشْرُونَ	
23	٢٣	ثَلَاثَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	ثَلَاثٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	
24	٢٤	أَرْبَعَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	أَرْبَعٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	
25	٢٥	خَمْسَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	خَمْسٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	
26	٢٦	سِتَّةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	سِتُّ وَعِشْرُونَ	<i>In compounding numerals with 20, 30, etc., and a unit, the unit is placed first, the two are connected by the conjunction وَ and, and both are declined.</i>
27	٢٧	سَبْعَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	سَبْعٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	
28	٢٨	ثَمَانِيَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	ثَمَانٍ وَعِشْرُونَ	
29	٢٩	تِسْعَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	تِسْعٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	
30	٣٠	ثَلَاثُونَ		
40	٤٠	أَرْبَعُونَ		
50	٥٠	خَمْسُونَ		
60	٦٠	سِتُّونَ		
70	٧٠	سَبْعُونَ		
80	٨٠	ثَمَانُونَ		

		MASCULINE.	
90	٩٠	تِسْعُونَ	The word مِائَةٌ "hundred" is common to both genders.
100	١٠٠	مِائَةٌ	
200	٢٠٠	مِائَتَانِ	From 100 to 1000 the numerals govern the singular of the noun numbered, which they put in the oblique case, as مِائَةٌ رَجُلٍ "a hundred men."
300	٣٠٠	ثَلَاثَ مِائَةٍ	
400	٤٠٠	أَرْبَعَ مِائَةٍ	When the hundreds are compounded with units, they are put in the oblique case of the singular.
500	٥٠٠	خَمْسَ مِائَةٍ	
600	٦٠٠	سِتَّ مِائَةٍ	[مِائَةٌ is pronounced as if written مِائَاتٍ mi-ātan.]
700	٧٠٠	سَبْعَ مِائَةٍ	
800	٨٠٠	ثَمَانِ مِائَةٍ ثَمَانِي	
900	٩٠٠	تِسْعَ مِائَةٍ	
1000	١٠٠٠	أَلْفٌ	أَلْفٌ "a thousand" is common to both genders.
2000	٢٠٠٠	أَلْفَانِ	
3000	٣٠٠٠	ثَلَاثَةَ أَلْفٍ	Thousands compounded with units follow the rules above given, i.e. they are treated as a thing numbered. Thus for 3000 to 10000 the broken plural أَلَفٍ is used in the oblique case; from 10000 to 99000 the accusative singular أَلْفًا is used; and from 100000 upwards the oblique singular أَلْفٍ.
4000	٤٠٠٠	أَرْبَعَةَ أَلْفٍ	
5000	٥٠٠٠	خَمْسَةَ أَلْفٍ	
6000	٦٠٠٠	سِتَّةَ أَلْفٍ	
7000	٧٠٠٠	سَبْعَةَ أَلْفٍ	
8000	٨٠٠٠	ثَمَانِيَةَ أَلْفٍ	
9000	٩٠٠٠	تِسْعَةَ أَلْفٍ	

		MASCULINE.	
10000	١٠٠٠٠	عَشْرَةُ آلَافٍ	
11000	١١٠٠٠	أَحَدُ عَشَرَ آلَافًا	In these cases the hundred and unit are written as one word.
12000	١٢٠٠٠	إِثْنَا عَشَرَ آلَافًا	
13000	١٣٠٠٠	ثَلَاثَةُ عَشَرَ آلَافًا	
100000	١٠٠٠٠٠	مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ	
200000	٢٠٠٠٠٠	مِائَتَا أَلْفٍ	In these cases the hundred and unit are written as one word.
300000	٣٠٠٠٠٠	ثَلَاثُمِائَةِ أَلْفٍ	
400000	٤٠٠٠٠٠	أَرْبَعُمِائَةِ أَلْفٍ	
1000000	١٠٠٠٠٠٠	أَلْفٌ أَلْفٍ	
2000000	٢٠٠٠٠٠٠	أَلْفَا أَلْفٍ	
3000000	٣٠٠٠٠٠٠	ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ أَلْفٍ	

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

(83). The ordinal numbers for the units (except the first) are formed on the measure of the agent, masc. فَاعِلٌ, fem. فَاعِلَةٌ; the tens, hundreds and thousands do not differ from the cardinal numbers.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	
أَوَّلٌ	أَوَّلَى	1st
ثَانٍ	ثَانِيَّةٌ	2nd
ثَالِثٌ	ثَالِثَةٌ	3rd

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	
رَابِعٌ	رَابِعَةٌ	4th
خَامِسٌ	خَامِسَةٌ	5th
سَادِسٌ	سَادِسَةٌ	6th
سَابِعٌ	سَابِعَةٌ	7th
ثَامِنٌ	ثَامِنَةٌ	8th
تَاسِعٌ	تَاسِعَةٌ	9th
عَاشِرٌ	عَاشِرَةٌ	10th
حَادِي عَشَرَ	حَادِيَّةُ عَشْرَةٍ	11th
ثَانِي عَشَرَ	ثَانِيَّةُ عَشْرَةٍ	12th
ثَالِثَ عَشَرَ	ثَالِثَةُ عَشْرَةٍ	13th
etc.		
عِشْرُونَ		20th
حَادِي وَعِشْرُونَ	حَادِيَّةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	21st
ثَانِي وَعِشْرُونَ	ثَانِيَّةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	22nd
ثَالِثَ وَعِشْرُونَ	ثَالِثَةُ وَعِشْرُونَ	23rd
etc.		
تِسْعُونَ		90th
حَادِي وَتِسْعُونَ	حَادِيَّةٌ وَتِسْعُونَ	91st
etc.		

(84). OTHER CLASSES OF NUMERALS.

1. The adverbial numerals are formed as follows :

مَرَّةً, نَوْبَةً once (*lit.* one time, one turn, etc.).

مَرَّةً ثَانِيَةً or ثَانِي مَرَّةً or ثَانِيًا twice.

مَرَّةً ثَالِثَةً or ثَالِثًا thrice.

And so on.

We may also use the objective case of the noun of unity, thus :

ضَرَبَهُ ضَرْبَةً, ضَرَبْتُمُوهُ ضَرْبَتَيْنِ he struck him once, twice, etc.

2. The distributive numerals are—

أَحَادًا or مَوْحِدًا one by one.

ثَنَاءً, مَشْنًى or اِثْنَيْنِ اِثْنَيْنِ two by two.

ثَلَاثًا, مَثَلَتًا three by three.

رَبَاعًا, مَرْبَعًا four by four.

And so on.

These are imperfectly declined.

3. The multiplicative numerals are :

مُفْرَدًا single.

مُثَلَّثًا triple, threefold.

مُشْنًى double, twofold.

مَرْبَعًا quadruple, fourfold, square.

And so on.

4. The adjectival numerals are :

ثَنَائِي dual, consisting of two.

رَبَاعِي quadruple, consisting of

ثَلَاثِي treble, consisting of three.

four.

And so on.

5. Fractions are :

نِصْفٌ half.

ثُلُثٌ or ثُلُثٌ or ثُلُثٌ a third.

رَبْعٌ	”	رَبْعٌ	”	رَبْعٌ	a fourth.	} The plural of these fractions is of the form أَفْعَالٌ
		etc.	to			
عَشِيرٌ	”	عَشِيرٌ	”	عَشِيرٌ	a tenth.	

The fractions above *a tenth* are expressed by the use of the words جُزْءٌ “part,” أَجْزَاءٌ “parts of,” as

ثَلَاثَةُ أَجْزَاءٍ مِنْ أَرْبَعِينَ جُزْأً 3 parts of 40 parts, $\frac{3}{40}$ th.

6. The recurring numerals are :

ثُلَاثًا الثُلَاثُ every third.

رَبْعًا الرَّبْعُ every fourth.

7. Approximate numbers are expressed as follows : بَعْضٌ “a few,” used with the units from 3 to 9, as—

غَلِبَتِ الرُّومُ فِي أَدْنَى الْأَرْضِ وَهُمْ مِنْ بَعْدِ غَلِبِهِمْ سَيَغْلِبُونَ فِي بَعْضِ سِنِينَ

“The Greeks are conquered in the nearer parts of the earth, but they shall conquer after being conquered in a few years.”—Kor. xxx. 1.

ثَمَنٌ “a few more,” used with the tens, hundreds and thousands, as : عَشْرَةً وَ ثَمَنٌ “upwards of ten.”

Sometimes the words أَوْ يَزِيدُونَ “or they exceed” are used in imitation of the passage of the Korān.

وَأَرْسَلْنَاهُ إِلَى مِائَةِ الثِّبِّ أَوْ يَزِيدُونَ

“And we sent him to a hundred thousand or more.”—Kor. xxxvii. 147.

Similarly el-Behá Zoheir has—

وَلَشَّمْتُهُ فِي خَدِّهِ فَعَدَدْتُ الثَّأِثَ أَوْ يَنْأَجِرُ

“I kissed him on his cheek, and counted a thousand kisses or *thereabouts*.”

لَحْوُ “about,” مَا يَزِيدُ عَلَى “what exceeds,” and similar expressions, followed by the number, are also used in this sense.

PARTICLES.

(85). Under the head Particle the Arabs include Prepositions, Conjunctions, Adverbs, and Interjections.

PREPOSITIONS.

(86). The prepositions are either inseparable (*i.e.* are written as one word with the following noun) or separable.

The inseparable prepositions are five in number, namely .

ب in, by, with, etc. This, when joined with the affixed pronouns *هُمَا*, *هُم*, *دُ*, changes their *dhammah* into *—*, see

ت by (a particle of swearing).

و by (ditto).

ل to (with pronouns this is pointed with *fethah*).

like.

The separable prepositions are :

إِلَى to.

حَتَّى until.

عَلَى upon, against.

مِنْ from.

فِي in.

مَعَ, كَدَى with, by.

مِنْ from.

مُذَّ or مُنْذُ since.

There are many others which are commonly regarded as prepositions, but which are really nouns, as عِنْدَ “with,”

فَوْقَ "above," وَسَطًا "in the midst," etc. These are not properly reckoned as particles.

All prepositions take the following nouns in the dependent case.

CONJUNCTIONS.

(87). The conjunctions are also either inseparable or separable.

The inseparable conjunctions are .

وَ and.

فَ and so (as a consequence of what has gone before).

The principal separable conjunctions are :

إِذَا when.	إِلَّا except (if not).
إِذَا when.	أَوْ or.
أَمَّا as for. The thing predicated of the noun preceded by this particle takes فَ ; as أَمَّا زَيْدٌ فَانْطَلَقَ "As for Zeid he went away."	ثُمَّ then.
	لِكَيْ in order that.
	كَيْلَا in order not.
	لَكِنْ } but.
أَنْ that (<i>ut</i>).	كَمَا when.
أَنْ that (<i>quod</i>).	لَوْ if.
إِنْ if.	مَا so long as.

ADVERBS.

(88). The Adverbs are also either inseparable, namely :

أَ interrogative.

سَوْفَ or سَ expresses future time.

لَ certainly.

Or separable, of which the most common are :

نَعَمْ or بَلَى, إِي, أَجَلْ yes.

إِذَا, إِذَنْ then, in that case.

إِلَّا }
أَمْ } won't ?
إِلَّا }

إِنَّ verily.

إِنَّمَا only.

أَمْ whether, or (alternative of إَمْ)

أَيْ how ?

أَيْنَ where ?

بَلْ nay, rather.

قَطُّ ever, never.

فَقَطُّ only (and that is all).

قَدْ already.

كَأَنَّ certainly not.

لَا no, not.

لَمْ not. لَمَّا not yet.

لَنْ never, not at all.

مَا not.

مَتَى when ?

هَلْ whether (interrogative).

هُنَا here.

هُنَاكَ, هُنَاكَ there.

Such adverbs as بَعْدُ “afterwards,” قَبْلُ “before,” which are merely nouns in an adverbial case ; and indefinite nouns in the adverbial accusative, as أَبَدًا “ever,” are not included in this list, since they are not, strictly speaking, particles.

INTERJECTIONS.

(89). The principal interjections are :

أَيْه ! أَيْه ! أَيْه ! أَيْه ! أَيْه ! أَيْه !

أَيْه ! أَيْه ! أَيْه ! أَيْه ! أَيْه ! أَيْه !

A great many other words are used as interjections, but are in reality verbs or nouns, and are therefore not included amongst the particles.

All particles are indeclinable, and as such need not be

discussed in the Accidence, which treats of the inflexion of words. They are all fully described, with their influence on other words, in the Syntax.

IMITATIVE SOUNDS.

Note.—Imitative sounds are indeclinable, and they neither govern a following word, nor are governed by any preceding one; such are

جِي جِيءَ	<i>Ji jî.</i>	Used in calling camels to drink.
حَا حَا	<i>Há há.</i>	„ sheep „
عَا عَا	<i>‘A’ ‘á.</i>	„ goats „
غَاكِي	<i>Gháki.</i>	Imitating the cawing of a crow.
طَاكِي	<i>Táki.</i>	„ sound of a blow.
طَاكِي	<i>Ták.</i>	„ „ stone falling.

PART II.—SYNTAX.

SECTION I.—THE VERB AND THE NOUN.

THE TENSES OF VERBS.

There are three tenses in Arabic—the Preterite, the Aorist, and the Imperative.

I. THE PRETERITE.

(90). The Preterite denotes a completed act, but the time at which it took place is left indeterminate, unless defined by the context or by some particle.

Thus the act may be completed only at the moment when the speaker is describing it, as

فَلِلَّهِ يَوْمَ أَنْتَ فِيهِ مُسَلِّمٌ وَهَبْتَ لَهُ جَرَمَ الزَّمَانِ الَّذِي خَلَا

“God bless the day on which thou art saved. I *pardon* for its sake all the crimes of time gone by.”

Or the effect may still remain, as

إِنَّمَا يَعْمُرُ مَسَاجِدَ اللَّهِ مَنْ آمَنَ بِاللَّهِ

“He only shall repair the Mosques of God who *believes* in God.”—Kor. ix. 18.

So an Arab author, in citing a verse of poetry, employs the expression, كَمَا قَالَ الشَّاعِرُ, “as the poet *says*.”

Or it may express a foregone conclusion, such as na-

turally occurs in hypothetical or conditional sentences, as
 اِنْ قُمْتُ قُمْتُ "if you rise, I will rise."

Here the idea expressed seems to be: "if this supposition be granted, namely, *you have risen*, then you may consider this, too, as granted, namely, that *I have risen*."

A similar idea seems to influence the English colloquial idiom, "if you do that, you are lost," or "are a dead man;" where "you are lost," "are a dead man," are apparent preterites.

From this use of the preterite results another very common use in Arabic, namely, in precative sentences, as
 اَدَامَ اللهُ بَقَاءَكُمْ "may God perpetuate your existence!"

And with لا "not," in averting anything undesirable, or in cursing, as لَا بَارَكَ اللهُ فِيْكَ "may God not bless you!"¹

(91). The preterite of the verb كَانَ with the preterite of another verb is equivalent to the pluperfect, as كَانَ زَيْدٌ قَامَ "Zeid had stood up."

But the pluperfect is more usually expressed by the preterite preceded by the particle قَدْ, with or without the conjunction وَ.

The particle قَدْ restricts the preterite to a time actually past, as قَدْ جَاءَكُمْ رُسُلٌ مِنْ قَبْلِي "Prophets have come to you before me."

We use the pluperfect, designating the action that had taken place before the occurrence of the event which we

¹ There is a well-known Arabic jest about a Bedawí, who, on being asked by one of the Caliphs whether a sheep which he was carrying was for sale, replied curtly لا "no." The Caliph reproved him for his want of politeness, and told him that he should always add بَارَكَ اللهُ فِيْكَ "God bless you!"—whereupon the Arab replied as above, لَا بَارَكَ اللهُ فِيْكَ.

are describing; the Arabs, on the contrary, prefer to mention the circumstance or condition resulting from such previous action.

II. THE AORIST.

(92). The Aorist denotes an act not yet completed. Like the preterite, it is somewhat indeterminate in respect of time, until defined by the context or by particles.

THE MOODS OF VERBS.

The aorist is susceptible of certain inflexions¹ to express the various moods.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

In the direct or indicative mood, the aorist ends in ـ ; it is used in all direct narration.

CHANGE OF THE VOWEL IN THE AORIST.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

(93). The aorist of a verb changes its final vowel ـ into ـِ , to express the subjunctive mood.

This change takes place when the verb is preceded by any one of the following particles:

1. أَنَّ "that" (Latin *ut*), $\text{أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَزُورَكَ}$ "I wish that I may visit you."

2. لَنْ = لَا يَكُونُ أَنْ = لَا أَنْ "it will not happen that") = "certainly not," as $\text{لَنْ يَجُودَ الْبَخِيلُ}$ "the miser will certainly not be liberal."

3. إِنْ أَنْ (= إِنْ أَنْ) "then," in that case, in answer to the

¹ Two of these inflexions, the ـِ and ـُ , are identical with the subjective and objective cases of nouns, and the Arab grammarians give the same name to both. The remaining case, the dependent, has the apocopated form of the aorist for its parallel in the verbs.

question “what if?” ^{إِذَنْ تَدْخُلُ الْجَنَّةَ} “then thou shalt enter Paradise,” in answer to the question ^{إِنْ آمَنْتُ بِاللَّهِ} “what if I believe in God?”

From this it will be seen that the particle ^{أَنَّ}, expressed or understood, is the real instrument in forming the subjunctive mood, and changing the ^ع of the aorist into ^{عَ}.

The ellipse of ^{أَنَّ}, especially, takes place after the particles ^{لِ} “to, that,” ^{كَيْ} “in order,” ^{لِكَيْ} “in order to,” ^{حَتَّى} “until;” and after the conjunctions ^{وَ} and ^{فَ}, as

^{لِيَغْفِرَ لَكَ اللَّهُ} “That God may pardon thee.”

^{جِئْتُ كَيْ أَزُورَكَ} } “I came in order that I may visit
^{جِئْتُ لِكَيْ أَزُورَكَ} } you” (for ^{أَنْ كَيْ} or ^{أَنْ لِكَيْ}).

^{أَضْرِبِ اللِّصَّ حَتَّى يَتُوبَ} “Beat the thief till he repent”
(for ^{حَتَّى أَنْ}).

^{أَرْضَى بِالْفِرَارِ وَأَسْلَمَ} “I am content to flee and save myself.”

^{هَلْ تَأْكُلُ السَّمَكَ وَتَشْرَبُ اللَّبَنَ} “Do you eat fish and drink milk
(at the same time)?”

^{لَا تُؤَاخِذْنِي فَاهْلِكْ} “Do not punish me so that I
perish.”

^{هَلْ زَيْدٌ فِي الدَّارِ فَاهْضِ إِلَيْهِ} “Is Zeid at home, so that I may
go to him?”

^{أَنَّ} is also understood with the ellipse of some other word after ^{أَوْ}, as ^{لَا أَسْتَسْهِلُ الصَّعْبَ أَوْ أَدْرِكُ الْمُنَى} “I will brave hardships, or meet my fate,” where ^{أَوْ أَدْرِكُ الْمُنَى} is equivalent to ^{إِلَى أَنْ أَدْرِكُ الْمُنَى} “till that I meet my death;”

كَسَرْتُ كَعُوبَهَا أَوْ تَسْتَقِيمًا “I will break its joints (a cane spear) or it shall come straight,” i.e. ^{تَسْتَقِيمُ} إِلَّا أَنْ “unless that it come straight.”

After the affirmative particle لَ in such expressions, as مَا كَانَ اللَّهُ لِيُعَذِّبَ الصَّالِحِينَ “God will not torment the righteous.”

The suppression of أَنْ with the aorist in *fethah*, except in the instances given above, is rare, although it does sometimes occur, as

مَرَدٌ يَحْفَرُهُ “Tell him (to) dig it.”
خُذِ اللَّصَّ قَبْلَ أَنْ يَأْخُذَكَ “Catch the thief before he catch you.”

The conjunction أَنْ with the subjunctive mood must occasionally be translated as a negative, “in order not.”

لَا يَسْتَأْذِنُكَ الَّذِينَ يُؤْمِنُونَ بِاللَّهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْآخِرِ أَنْ يَجَاهِدُوا بِأَمْوَالِهِمْ وَأَنْفُسِهِمْ

“Those who believe in God and the last day will not ask permission of thee *that they should not* engage in the holy war with their property and persons.”

N.B.—The change of the final vowel of the aorist to *fethah* always implies a subjunctive or subordinate condition.

THE APOCOPATION OF THE FINAL VOWEL OF THE AORIST.

(94). The aorist of the verb is the only part of speech which can lose its final vowel altogether.

The apocopation may take place in either one or two verbs.

The cases in which one verb loses its final syllable are the following:

1. After *لَمْ* “not,” and *لَمْ* “not yet,” which always give a *past* negative sense to the aorist, as

لَمْ يَقُمْ “He did not stand.”

جَاءَ وَلَمْ يَطْلُعِ الصُّبُّ “He came, and the dawn had not yet appeared.”

2. After the particle *لِ* used in an imperative sense, as *لِيَضْرِبَ زَيْدٌ* “let Zeid strike.”

[*Note*.—This is the regular form of imperative for all except the second person. When preceded by *فَ*, *لِ* loses its vowel, as *فَلْيَضْرِبْ* “so let him strike.”]

3. After *لَا* prohibitive, as *لَا تَضْرِبْ* “do not strike.”

PARTICLES WHICH APOCOPATE THE AORIST OF TWO VERBS.

(95). There are thirteen particles which apocopate the aorist of *two* verbs:

إِنْ “If.”

إِنْ تَكُنْ كَسَلًا “If you are lazy, you will come to want.”

إِذَا “Whenever that.”

وَإِنَّكَ إِذَا تَأْتَيْتَ مَا أَمَرْتُ بِهِ تَلْقَى مِنْهُ إِيَادًا تَأْمُرُ بِهَا

“And thou, whenever thou shalt come to what thou commandest Thou wilt find him whom thou commandest coming (to thee).”

مَنْ “Whosoever.”

مَنْ يَعْمَلْ سُوءًا يُجْزَ بِهِ “Whosoever does evil, shall be recompensed therewith.”

¹ The *hemzet el-wasl*, with which the article commences, requires a vowel to precede it, in order that it may be pronounced; the *sukun* of the apocopated aorist *يُطْلَعُ* is therefore changed into *kesrah* — (see p. 13).

مَا and مَهْمَا "Whatsoever."

مَا تَفْعَلُوا بِالْخَيْرِ يَعْلَمُهُ اللَّهُ "Whatsoever good ye do, God knoweth it."

مَهْمَا تَطْلُبُ تَجِدُ "Whatsoever thou seekest, thou shalt find."

أَيَّ "Whichever."

أَيَّ مَا تَدْعُوا لَهُ الْأَسْمَاءُ الْحُسْنَى "By whichever ye call on Him, for to Him belong the most excellent names."

مَتَى and إِذَا "Whenever."

مَتَى أَضَعُ الْعِمَامَةَ تَعْرِفُونِي "When I put off my turban, ye will know me."

فَإِنَّمَا مَا تَعْدِلُ بِهِ الرِّيحُ يَنْزِلُ "Whenever the wind sways it, it descends."

إِذَا "Whenever" (poetical).

وَإِذَا يُصِيبُكَ خِصَاصَةٌ فَتَجَمَّلْ "Whenever poverty assails you, have patience."

[In both the above examples تَجَمَّلْ and يَنْزِلُ are for تَجَمَّلُ and يَنْزِلُ for the sake of the rhyme.]

أَيْنَ and حَيْثُمَا "Wherever."

أَيْنَمَا تَكُونُوا يَدْرِكُكُمُ الْمَوْتُ "Wherever ye are, death will reach you."

أَيْنَ تَجْلِسُ أَجْلِسُ "Where you sit, I will sit."

حَيْثُمَا تَذْهَبُ يَقْدِرُ لَكَ اللَّهُ نَجَاحًا "Where you go, God will grant you success."

كَيْفَمَا "However."

كَيْفَمَا تَتَوَجَّهْ تَصَادِفُ خَيْرًا "However you turn, you encounter good luck."

إِذَا and إِنَّ are true particles, the remaining eleven are really nouns implying a condition or hypothesis; they are all undeclined, except أَتَى, which makes أَتَى, أَيَا, أَيَّ.

حَيْثُ and إِذْ do not apocopate the aorist unless joined with مَا = "soever."

مَا and مِمَّا are never joined with مَا; the rest may be either joined with مَا or not.

Note.—مَا after an indefinite noun is equivalent to the English "a certain," or "any whatever," as

رَجُلٌ مَّا خَرَجَ يَوْمًا مِّنَ الْيَوْمِ "A certain man went out one day."
مَا رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا مَّا "I did not see any man whatever."

The *n* of the *tenwīn* in this case always coalesces with the *m* of مَا, which is then doubled; thus رَجُلٌ مَّا pronounced *rajulu mmā*.

In a conditional sentence, when the aorist of the second clause is not introduced by one of the conjunctions وَ or فَ, its last syllable is apocopated, as

زُرْنِي أَكْرَمَكَ "Visit me—I will honour you."

THE ENERGETIC AND JUSSIVE MOOD.

(96). The syllables نَ and نِ added to the aorist or imperative give greater force to the expression, and the second is stronger than the first. They are used in affirmation, interrogation, command, or prohibition. The affirmative ج is also generally prefixed in forming these moods, especially in the jussive, to give still greater emphasis: as

قَدْ نَرَى تَقَلُّبَ وَجْهِكَ فِي السَّمَاءِ فَلَنُوَلِّيَنَّكَ قِبْلَةً تَرْضَاهَا

“We see the turning about of thy face in the heavens; but we will surely cause thee to turn to a point of adoration which shall please thee.”—Kor. ii. 139.

يَا بَنِي إِدْنِ اللَّهُ اصْطَفَى لَكُمْ الدِّينَ فَلَا تَمُوتُنَّ إِلَّا وَأَنْتُمْ مُسْلِمُونَ

“O my children, God has chosen the religion for you, so do not, pray, die except ye are Muslims.”—Kor. ii. 126.

إِذْ بَطَلُوا مِنْهَا جَمِيعًا فَأَمَّا يَا تَيْنَكُم مِّنِّي هُدًى

“Go down from it both together; and if there shall come to you guidance from me,” etc.—Kor. ii. 36.

لَتَرُونَ أَجْجِيمَ ثُمَّ لَتَنْتَرُونَهَا عَيْنَ الْيَقِينِ ثُمَّ لَتَسْأَلُنَّ يَوْمَئِذٍ عَنِ النَّعِيمِ

“Ye shall surely see hell; yes, ye surely shall see it with the eye of certainty; then shall ye surely be asked concerning your luxurious life.”

III.—THE IMPERATIVE.

(97). The Imperative is used in precisely the same manner as in other languages. We have already seen (p. 30) that it exists only in the second person, and that for the other persons the apocopated form of the aorist with the affirmative *لَ* prefixed is employed.

The prohibitive is obtained in the same manner, by apocopating the aorist for all persons and prefixing *لَا*.

THE CASES OF NOUNS.

(98). In Arabic short vowels are used as terminations to express the different cases.

— is nominative, direct or subjective.

— is genitive, oblique or dependent.

— is accusative, conditional, or objective.

In nouns these are doubled to express further the *indefinite* nature of the thing (see p. 7).

When so doubled, they are pronounced with an *n* sound called تَنْوِين (see (4) p. 6).

[In verbs only ُ and ِ are used, and the *aorist* is the only *tense* capable of being modified by them.]

THE SUBJECTIVE CASE.

(99). The following require the subjective or nominative case :

The agent or subject of a verb : ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ "Zeid struck."

The nominative or subject of a passive verb ; as ضُرِبَ زَيْدٌ "Zeid was struck."

Both the subject and predicate of a simple sentence in which the simple copula "is" is either omitted, or expressed by هُوَ ; as

زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ	"Zeid is standing."
الْعِلْمُ نَافِعٌ	"Knowledge is useful."
اللَّهُ هُوَ الْحَيُّ	"God is the living one."

THE AGENT AND THE VERB.

(100). The agent is put in the subjective case.

The agent follows the verb, and the object of the action follows the agent ; as ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا "Zeid struck 'Amr." This order must be invariably observed in the following cases :

1. When, from the noun being unable to exhibit the case-endings (see p. 100), an ambiguity would otherwise arise ; as ضَرَبَ الْغَنَى يَحْيَى "the youth struck John."

2. When the agent is a pronoun inseparable from the verb; as ضَرَبْتَ زَيْدًا “thou didst strike Zeid.”

3. When the object of the action is separated from the agent and verb by the word إِلَّا “except,” as مَا ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ إِلَّا عَمْرًا “Zeid struck no one but ‘Amr” (*lit.* “Zeid struck not—save ‘Amr”).

The agent is either (1) expressed separately, as قَامَ زَيْدٌ “Zeid stood;” or (2) inseparable from the verb, as ضَرَبْتَ “thou didst strike,” where the pronominal affix ت is regarded as the agent; or (3) expressed, but separated altogether from the verb, as مَا ضَرَبَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ “none struck but thee.” The agent cannot be suppressed, though the verb may; *e.g.* in answer to the question مَنِ قَامَ “who stood?” you may reply, زَيْدٌ “Zeid.”

But the agent immediately follows the object and verb when the object is an affixed pronoun and the agent an expressed noun or separate pronoun, as

ضَرَبَنِي زَيْدٌ “Zeid struck me.”

مَا ضَرَبَ زَيْدًا إِلَّا أَنَا “No one struck Zeid but I.”

Similarly, when the agent has an affixed pronoun referring to the subject, as ضَرَبَ زَيْدًا عُلَامَهُ “Zeid’s slave struck him” (*lit.* “his slave struck Zeid” = ضَرَبَهُ عُلَامُهُ), in such a case we must not say ضَرَبَ عُلَامَهُ زَيْدًا, because it is not admissible to make the pronoun refer to a noun not yet expressed: in other words, the relative cannot precede its antecedent.

When the agent is separated from the verb by the word إِلَّا, the object immediately follows the verb, as in the above example, مَا ضَرَبَ زَيْدًا إِلَّا أَنَا.

If none of the above-mentioned rules apply, you

may either put the agent last or not, as ضَرَبَ عَمْرًا زَيْدٌ or ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا “Zeid struck ‘Amr.”

When the action is restricted by the particles إِنَّمَا or إِلَّا to the object, the usual order is preserved, as

إِنَّمَا ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا “It is only ‘Amr whom Zeid has struck.”

مَا ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ إِلَّا عَمْرًا “Zeid has not struck any one but ‘Amr.”

But if the action of the verb is restricted to the subject or agent, the object precedes, as

إِنَّمَا ضَرَبَ عَمْرًا زَيْدٌ “It is only Zeid who has struck ‘Amr.”

مَا ضَرَبَ عَمْرًا إِلَّا زَيْدٌ “No one has struck ‘Amr but Zeid.”

[As there would not be any ambiguity in the case of إِلَّا, this rule is not always strictly observed; but in the case of إِنَّمَا it must never be deviated from.]

CONCORD OF THE VERB AND THE AGENT.

(101). The agent is always in the subjective case, and is properly placed after the verb.

When the agent is, grammatically speaking, masculine, of no matter what number, the verb is put in the masculine singular, as

قَامَ زَيْدٌ “Zeid stood.”

قَامَ الزَّيْدَانِ “The two Zeids stood.”

قَامَ الزَّيْدُونَ “The Zeids stood.”

يَقُومُ زَيْدٌ “Zeid stands.”

يَقُومُ الزَّيْدَانِ “The two Zeids stand.”

يَقُومُ الزَّيْدُونَ “The Zeids stand.”

With a feminine agent the verb is put in the feminine singular in the following cases :

1. If the agent be really feminine, no matter of what number, and follow the verb, as

قَامَتِ هِنْدُ "Hind stood."
 قَامَتِ الْهِنْدَانِ "The two Hinds stood."
 قَامَتِ الْهِنْدَاتِ "The Hinds stood."

2. If the agent precede the verb, as طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ "the sun (it) rose."

The verb may either be put in the feminine or masculine singular in the following cases :

1. If the agent be not really feminine, but only feminine from a grammatical point of view, as

طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ }
 طَلَعَ الشَّمْسُ } "The sun rose."

2. If the agent be a broken plural, as

قَامَ الْهِنْدُو }
 قَامَتِ الْهِنْدُو } "The Hindús stood."

3. If the agent be a collective noun or the name of a species, as

أَوْرَقَ الشَّجَرُ }
 أَوْرَقَتِ الشَّجَرُ } "The trees put forth leaves."

4. Even when the agent is really feminine, provided a word intervenes between it and the verb, as

قَامَ الْيَوْمَ هِنْدُ }
 قَامَتِ الْيَوْمَ هِنْدُ } "Hind stood to-day."

When the intervening word is ^{إِلَّا} ^{بِ} ^{الْهِنْدِ}, the verb is more elegantly put in the masculine, as ^{مَا قَامَ إِلَّا هِنْدٌ} “there rose not save Hind.”

The names of Arab tribes, when expressed and immediately following the verb, generally put it in the feminine; they are in fact employed like broken plurals.

As is also the case in the broken plural, when a second verb occurs referring to the same agent, such verb agrees with it logically in gender, number, and person, as ^{اجْتَمَعَتِ الرِّجَالُ فَقَالُوا} “the men assembled and (they) said,” the broken plural requiring the grammatical construction with the feminine singular; but in the second verb ^{قَالُوا}, which refers to the same agent, the logical agreement is preserved.

A regular feminine plural, or a broken plural, may sometimes, though rarely, take a feminine singular of the verb which follows it, even in the second person, as in the following verse:

^{رِسَالَةً صَبَّ لَا يَنْفِيقُ مِنَ السُّكْرِ}	^{إِلَا يَا حَمَامَاتِ الْأَرَاكِ تَحْمَلِي}
^{بَعِيدٍ مِنَ الْأَوْطَانِ فِي بَلَدٍ وَعِزٍّ}	^{وَقُولِي ضَرَارَ فِي الْقَيْدِ مُكْبَلٍ}
^{فَقُولِي كَذَاكَ الدَّهْرُ عَسْرٌ عَلَى يَسْرِ}	^{حَمَائِمَ نَجْدٍ إِنْ رَأَيْتِ خِيَامَنَا}

“Oh! doves of the Arak tree, carry the message of a lover who recovers not from his intoxication.

Say, Dharár is in chains, fettered; far from his country in a rugged land.

Oh! doves of Nejd, if ye see our tents, then say: Such is fortune—difficulty succeeding ease.”

The reason for using the verb, either in the feminine or masculine singular, with a feminine agent, seems to be that when we are conscious that we are speaking of a female, we say decidedly, “*she* rose,” namely, Hind; but

when we are speaking of anything which is not necessarily present to our mind as feminine, we begin by a vague affirmation of the action having taken place, "he, she, or it rose," and having done so, we proceed to define it further by naming the agent. It is clear that in speaking of a woman we more often have the feminine idea in our mind, but that in the case of a merely grammatical feminine, the gender may come as an after-thought; hence we say,

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{طَلَعَ الشَّمْسُ} \\ \text{طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ} \end{array} \right\} \text{ "The sun rose."}$$

Another reason for this arrangement of the agent after the verbs, and for the apparently arbitrary manner in which the verb is made either to agree with it or not, is that the verb is regarded as complete in itself, the pronominal affix or suffix, if any, being considered as the real nominative to it, while the verb itself remains unchangeable, as *قَامَ زَيْدٌ* "he rose (I mean) Zeid;" see p. 154 (78). Here the pronoun understood in *قَامَ* is the real agent or nominative, while the word "Zeid" is only a further definition of the same; so too *قَامَتِ حَيْدٌ* "she rose (I mean) Hind," where the pronoun *تِ* is the real agent, and "Hind" the further definition of it. If, on the contrary, as in the sentence *الْشَّمْسُ طَلَعَتِ*, we *begin* by mentioning the noun, its gender is present to our mind when we come to the verb, by which we predicate something concerning it.

A collective noun, such as *قَوْمٌ* "a tribe," or a noun expressing an entire species, as *شَعْبٌ* "sheep," *طَيْرٌ* "birds," frequently takes the verb in the feminine singular, and occasionally even in the feminine plural, as

قَالَتِ بَنُو إِسْرَآئِيلَ "The children of Israel said."

إِنِّي أَرَانِي أَحْمِلُ فَوْقَ رَأْسِي خُبْزًا تَأْكُلُ الطَّيْرُ مِنْهُ

“I see myself carrying bread upon my head, from which the birds are eating.”

وَلَا لَيْلٌ أَجَنُّ وَلَا نَهَارٌ وَلَا خَيْلٌ حَمَلُنْ وَلَا رِكَابٌ

“Nor can night o’ershadow them nor day (protect them);—nor can their horses or riding camels bear them away!”

The names of Arab tribes are ordinarily feminine; but as they are collective nouns, they take any following verb in the masculine plural, as

وَتَمْلِكُ أَنْفُسَ الثَّقَلَيْنِ طَرًّا فَكَيْفَ تَحُوزُ أَنْفُسَهَا كِلَابٌ
وَمَا تَرَكُوكَ مَعْصِيَةً وَلَكِنْ يَعَافُ الْوَدَّ وَالْمَوْتَ الشَّرَابُ

“Thou art master of both men and genii; how, then, can the tribe of Kiláb hope to remain mistress of itself? They have not revolted from thee criminally, but as a well is neglected when it affords the drink of death.”

THE SUBJECT OF A PASSIVE VERB.

(102). The same rules which apply to the agent of an active verb apply to the subject of a passive verb.

It is always in the nominative.

It is either an expressed noun, as ضُرِبَ زَيْدٌ “Zeid was struck,” or an affixed pronoun, as ضُرِبْتَ “thou wast struck,” or a pronoun separated from the verb by some intervening word, as مَا ضُرِبَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ “none was struck but thyself.”

The passive state or condition may be expressed by a noun, especially a verbal noun, in which case the subject will be in the dependent case, according to the rules for the construct state of nouns, as سَجَبْتُ مِنْ أَكْلِ التَّمْرِ “I wonder at the dates being eaten.” If the noun be, however, a past passive participle, the subject will be in the sub-

jective case, as with a verb, as زَيْدٌ مَضْرُوبٌ غُلَامُهُ "Zeid's slave (Zeid, his slave) (is) beaten."

If the transitive verb have more than one object, as أَعْطَى زَيْدًا دِرْهَمًا "he gave Zeid a dirhem," the first of such objects becomes the subject of the passive verb, and the other remains in the objective case, as أُعْطِيَ زَيْدٌ دِرْهَمًا "Zeid was given a dirhem."

In the Kōrān the expression الَّذِينَ أُوتُوا الْكِتَابَ "who have received the scripture," is of frequent occurrence, and is explained by the rule above given. آتَى being the 4th conj. of أَتَى "he came," is used transitively with two accusatives, thus: آتَاهُمُ الْكِتَابَ "he brought them the scripture," and in the passive the first object, هُمْ, becomes the subject, the second still retaining its objective function.

The following may serve as the subject of a passive verb :

1. A noun governed by a preposition (when the verb governs by means of that preposition), as مَرَّ بِزَيْدٍ "Zeid was passed by," where "by Zeid" is regarded as the subject of مَرَّ.

2. (a) An undefined noun if used as a proper name ;
(β) a noun used adverbially, provided it is restricted in meaning by some following adjective ; in either case the noun must be declinable, as

(a) صَامَ رَمَضَانَ "He fasted Ramadhán."

صِيَمَ رَمَضَانَ "The fast of Ramadhán was kept"

(β) سَارَ سَيْرًا "He marched a march."

Here we may say in the passive, سِيرَ سَيْرٌ حَسَنٌ "a good march was marched," but we cannot say simply سِيرَ سَيْرٌ

“a march was marched,” without the qualifying adjective. So too we say, جَلَسَ لَدَى زَيْدٍ “he sat by Zeid,” and سَبَّحَ سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ “he recited the formula ‘glory to God.’” But we cannot say جُلِسَ لَدَى زَيْدٍ “Zeid was sat by,” or صَلَّيَ سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ, because neither لَدَى nor سُبْحَانَ are declinable.

The following examples will illustrate the foregoing remarks :

ACTIVE.

آتَى اللَّهُ بَنِي إِسْرَآئِيلَ كِتَابًا

“God gave a Scripture to the Children of Israel.”

أَعْطَى زَيْدًا دِرْهَمًا

“He gave Zeid a drachma.”

أَمَرْتُ زَيْدًا بِقَتْلِ عَمْرٍو

“I ordered Zeid to kill ‘Amr.”

سَارَ بِزَيْدٍ مِّنْ بَغْدَادَ إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ

“He escorted Zeid from Bagdad to el-Medina.”

لَمْ يَقْدِرِ السُّلْطَانُ عَلَى اخْذِهِ

“The Sultan could not take him.”

جَاءَ عَمْرُ النَّبِيِّ بِبَنَاسٍ مِّنَ الْعَرَبِ

“Omar brought the Prophet some Arabs.”

PASSIVE.

أُوتُوا بَنُو إِسْرَآئِيلَ كِتَابًا

“The Children of Israel were given a Scripture.”

أُعْطِيَ زَيْدٌ دِرْهَمًا

“Zeid was given a drachma.”

أُمِرَ زَيْدٌ بِقَتْلِ عَمْرٍو

“Zeid was ordered to kill ‘Amr.”

سِيرَ زَيْدٌ مِّنْ بَغْدَادَ إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ

“Zeid was escorted from Bagdad to el-Medina.”

لَمْ يَقْدَرْ عَلَى اخْذِهِ

“He could not be taken (his taking was impossible).”

جِيءَ النَّبِيُّ بِبَنَاسٍ مِّنَ الْعَرَبِ

“The Prophet was brought some Arabs.”

When a verb which governs with a preposition is put in the passive voice, as بَحَثَ عَنْهُ “he disputed about it,” the preposition with its case is still retained, as بَحَثَ عَنْهُ “it was disputed about.” The verb is then strictly im-

personal, and therefore, in forming the passive participle, the masculine form only is used, the *pronoun alone* being altered to express the gender, thus:

المباحوث عنه "The thing (masculine) disputed about."

المباحوث عنها "The thing (feminine) disputed about."

فَارِسْ شِيدِيَّاعَ, although used by no less a person than Fâris es Shidiâc, is incorrect and vulgar.]

This idiom is almost parallel to the English vulgarism by which I have translated it: "The thing *disputed about*." This will explain all such idiomatic expressions as that contained in the passage of the Kōrān, chap. i. 10:

إِدْنَا الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ صِرَاطَ الَّذِينَ أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ غَيْرِ الْمَغْضُوبِ عَلَيْهِمْ

“Guide us in the right way, the way of those to whom Thou hast been gracious, not of *those against whom Thou art angered* (of those Thou art angry with).”

Note.—Nothing but practice can teach which verbs govern by a preposition, and which take the complement in the objective case: for example, أَتَى “he came” governs the objective without the intervention of a preposition. Generally, however, the purely transitive verbs govern the objective.

Before اِنَّ, introducing a proposition, the preposition may sometimes be omitted, as

لم يَقْدِرْ أَنْ يَفْعَلَ ذَلِكَ
 for
 لم يَقْدِرْ عَلَى أَنْ يَفْعَلَ ذَلِكَ

“He could not do that.”

Sometimes even before a noun the preposition is omitted, the noun being put in the objective case ; as

أَوْسَعَ الْمَرْوِيلِ وَالْأَرْوِيلِ } "He supplied means to the
 for
 أَوْسَعَ عَلَى الْمَرْوِيلِ وَالْأَرْوِيلِ } destitute and needy."
 شَكَرْتُ لَهُ for شَكَرْتَهُ "I thanked him."
 أَمَرْتُكَ بِالْخَيْرِ for أَمَرْتُكَ الْخَيْرِ "I ordered you to do good."

THE OBJECTIVE CASE.

(103). The following require the objective case :

1. The object of the action of a verb.
2. Words defining or specifying the action.
3. Nouns used adverbially.
4. The cause or effect of the action.
5. Words expressing the state or condition.
6. Words following particles of exception, vocatives (not addressing a person present), and a few other instances of which details are given in the following paragraphs.

1. THE OBJECT OF A VERB.

(104). The object of the verb is that upon which the action falls, as ضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا "I struck Zeid."

A verb may have two objects, as أَعْطَيْتُ زَيْدًا دِرْهَمًا "I gave Zeid a dirhem;" or two objects and a word defining the nature or period of the action, or the state of the object, as أَعْلَمْتُ زَيْدًا عَمْرًا مُنْطَلِقًا "I showed to Zeid 'Amr in the act of going away."

The verb itself is frequently omitted in ejaculatory sentences, but the object remains in the objective case, as

الْأَسَدُ الْأَسَدُ "The lion, the lion!"
 i.e. احْذَرِ الْأَسَدَ "Mind the lion."

أَخَاكَ أَخَاكَ "Your brother, your brother!"

i.e. اِلْزَمْ أَخَاكَ "Attend to your brother."

The objective case is used in parenthetically introducing a definition, as نَحْنُ الْعَرَبُ اَسْخَى مِنْ بَذْلٍ "we (the Arabs) are the most liberal of those who bestow gifts," i.e. نَحْنُ اَعْنَى الْعَرَبِ "we (*I mean the Arabs*)."

2. WORDS DEFINING OR SPECIFYING THE ACTION.

(105). These will be best understood from the following examples :

ضَرَبْتُ ضَرْبًا "I struck a blow."

ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبَةً or ضَرَبْتُمُنِي or ضَرَبَاتٍ "I struck him *one* blow—*two* blows—blows."

ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبَ الظَّالِمِ "Thou didst strike him (with) the blow of an unjust man."

نَظَرْتُ نَظْرَةَ الْغَضَبِ "I looked at him with the look of one in anger."

جَلَدْتُهُ ثَلَاثَ جَلْدَاتٍ "I flogged him three strokes of a hide whip."

ضَرَبْتُهُ سَوْطًا "I struck him a whip" (for "with a whip," or "the blow of a whip.")

جَلَسْتُ اَحْسَنَ جُلُوسٍ "I sat the best of *sitting*."

قَعَدْتُ الْقُرْفَصَاءَ "I sat in the posture called قُرْفَصَاءَ," i.e. squatting.

مَشَرْتُ كُلَّ الْمَشِيرِ "I marched all the march."

عَرَفْتُ بَعْضَ الْمَعْرِفَةِ "I knew some science."

ضَرَبْتُهُ ذَلِكَ الضَّرْبِ "I struck him that blow."

In some instances the governing verb may be understood, but the noun defining or specifying the action

remains in the objective case, as ^{خَيْرٌ قُدُومٍ} “Welcome!” *i.e.* ^{قَدِمْتَ خَيْرٌ قُدُومٍ} (*lit.*) “you have arrived a good arrival.” So in answer to the question ^{مَنْ ضَرَبْتَ} “whom have you struck?” you may answer ^{زَيْدًا} “Zeid,” without repeating the verb.

The governing verb is always understood in such sentences as the following :

^{مَهْلًا وَسَقِيًّا لِّزَيْدٍ} “Gently”—“wishing well to Zeid,” *i.e.* “act gently”—“wish well (*lit.* [pray God to give] drink) to Zeid.”

^{سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ} “Glory to God!” (*i.e.* ^{أَسْبَحَ سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ}).

^{سَمِعًا وَطَاعَةً} “To hear is to obey”
(*i.e.* ^{اسْمَعْ سَمِعًا وَاطِيعٌ طَاعَةً}).

^{أَنْتَ ابْنِي حَقًّا} “Thou art my son really.”

^{لِزَيْدٍ صَوْتُ صَوْتِ الْحِمَارِ} “Zeid has a voice—an ass’s voice.”

^{أَتَيْتُ أَهْلًا وَوُطِئْتُ مَهْلًا} “Welcome!” (*i.e.* ^{أَتَيْتُ أَهْلًا وَوُطِئْتُ مَهْلًا}),
lit. “Thou hast come (as it were) to thy family, and trodden on smooth ground.”)

3. NOUNS USED ADVERBIALY.

(106.) In the last few examples the objective case may be considered as simply adverbial or objective. The objective case used in this defining or specifying sense, like the second object of a doubly transitive verb, is not affected by a change of voice, as ^{ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ ضَرْبًا شَدِيدًا} “Zeid was struck a severe blow.”

Amongst the defining or specifying words above referred to are to be included adverbs of time or distance, as

^{صَلَّيْتُ زَمَنًا} “I prayed some time.”

صَمْتُ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ "I fasted Friday."

سَرْتُ مِيلًا "I marched a mile."

and adverbs of place, when they are immediately derived from the verb, as جَلَسْتُ مَجْلِسَ زَيْدٍ "I sat in Zeid's assembly;" or when the place is indeterminate, as جَلَسْتُ مَكَانًا "I sat in a place." But if the place be definite and determined, as a house, etc., a preposition must be used, as جَلَسْتُ فِي الْبَيْتِ "I sat in the house."

Other instances of nouns of time and place used adverbially are—

جَلَسْتُ قَرِيبَ الْأَمِيرِ "I sat near the Emír."

جَلَسْتُ طَوِيلًا فِي الْمَكَانِ "I sat a long time in an easterly place."

مَشَيْتُ عِشْرِينَ يَوْمًا

سَرْتُ عِشْرِينَ يَوْمًا "I walked twenty days."

مَشَيْتُ كُلَّ الْيَوْمِ "I walked all day."

سَرْتُ بَعْضَ الْبَرِيدِ "I marched part of the post or day's march."

4. THE CAUSE OR EFFECT OF THE ACTION.

(107). The cause or effect of the action is put adverbially in the objective case if it be indefinite and of the nature of an infinitive or verbal noun, as—

هَرَبْتُ خَوْفًا "I fled fearing."

ضَرَبْتُ ابْنِي تَأْدِيبًا لَهُ "I beat my son to correct him."

But if it be defined by the article, and of the nature of a noun substantive, it is better to use a preposition, as

جِئْتُ لِلْبُسْمَنِ "I came for the butter."

هَرَبْتُ لِلْخَوْفِ "I fled for fear."

If it be of the nature of a verbal noun, but in a state of construction with some other noun, it may be either used adverbially, or with a preposition, as

هَرَبْتُ خَوْفَ الْقَتْلِ "I fled fearing slaughter."

هَرَبْتُ لِحُوفِ الْقَتْلِ "I fled for fear of slaughter."

و "and," in the sense of مَعَ "with," takes the objective, as سَارَ زَيْدٌ وَالطَّرِيقُ "Zeid marched with the road."

It is obvious that in such a case the noun governed by و cannot be in apposition with the subject of the verb, for the translation would then be, "Zeid marched and the road (*scil.* marched)," which is an absurdity.

Such idiomatic expressions as

مَا شَأْنُكَ وَزَيْدًا "What is your state and (*i.e.* how do you get on with) Zeid?"

كَيْفَ أَنْتَ وَقِصْعَةً مِنْ ثَرِيدٍ "How are you off for a dish of porridge?"

are explained by an ellipse of the verb كَانَ.

5. STATE OR CONDITION.

(108). State or condition is expressed by the objective case, as

جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا "Zeid came *riding*."

رَكِبْتُ الْفَرَسَ مُسَرَّجًا "I rode the horse *saddled*."

أَتَجَمَّنِي قِيَامُ زَيْدٍ مُسْرِعًا "Zeid's standing up *so quickly* pleased me."

The word thus used in the objective case must be a derivative and indefinite noun, and must moreover refer to a preceding definite noun, as in the above examples.

In the case of such an expression as جَاءَ الْأَمِيرُ وَحَدَّ "the

Emir came *alone*,” وَحَدَّ، although rendered grammatically definite by the affixed pronoun, is properly regarded as indefinite in meaning.

Similarly, a primitive noun may be used adverbially to express condition, if it is explanatory of what has gone before, as طَلَعَ الْقَمَرُ بَدْرًا “the moon rose *full*” (بَدْرٌ being a primitive noun signifying “the full moon”).

The preceding noun to which the noun expressing condition refers, may be indefinite, provided it be qualified by some epithet or description, or be in a state of construction with a following noun, as

جَاءَنِي رَجُلٌ فَاضِلٌ رَاكِبًا “An accomplished man came to me riding.”

رَأَيْتُ غُلَامٌ رَجُلٍ ضَاكِحًا “I saw a man’s slave laughing.”

A verb or a nominal sentence may stand in the relation of an adverb expressing condition; in this case it is generally introduced by the conjunction وَ, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَ الشَّمْسُ طَالِعَةٌ “Zeid came and the sun was rising (*scil.* at the same time).”

If the nouns forming the sentence have pronouns affixed to them, the وَ may either be used or omitted, as

جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَيَدُهُ عَلَى رَأْسِهِ “Zeid came to me (with) his hand on his head.”

كَلَّمْتُهُ فَمَوْءٌ إِلَى فِي “I spoke to him mouth to mouth.”

A verb in the aorist thus used does not require وَ, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَرْكُضُ “Zeid came running;” but if it be negative, it requires the وَ, as جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ وَ مَا يَرْكُضُ “Zeid came to me not running.”

The preterite requires وَ and also the particle قَدْ, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَقَدْ رَكِبَ “Zeid came riding.”

In such an expression as دَلَّ تَأْكُلُ السَّمَكُ وَ تَشْرَبُ اللَّبَنَ

“do you eat fish and drink milk (at the same time),” the conjunction *وَ* requires the following verb to be in the subjunctive (see p. 172). There is in all these cases an ellipse of some such expression as “your state is that—” *e.g.* “do you eat fish and your state is (= whilst) that you drink milk.”

The adverbial accusative is used in such sentences as the following :

طَابَ زَيْدٌ نَفْسًا	“Zeid was happy in mind.”
رَفَعْتُ الشَّيْخَ قَدْرًا	“I raised the Sheikh in power.”
زَيْدٌ أَكْثَرُ مِنْكَ مَالًا	“Zeid is greater than you in wealth.”
مَا أَحْسَنَ زَيْدًا رَجُلًا	“How good is Zeid <i>quâ</i> a man.”
أَكْرَمَ أَبَايَ زَيْدٌ أَبًا	“How noble is Zeid’s father <i>quâ</i> a father.”
لِلَّهِ دَرْدُ فَارِسًا ¹	“God bless him for a horseman.”

It is also used occasionally with words of weight or measure, as

عِنْدِي مِثْقَالُ ذَهَبًا	“I have a <i>mithkâl</i> in gold.”
إِشْتَرَيْتُ كَيْلَيْنِ حِنْطَةً	“I bought two measures of corn.”

And also with the numerals from 1 to 99.

The syntax of the objective case may be summed up by saying that it is used objectively and adverbially. The following sentence contains an example of each of the various uses of the objective case:

ضَرَبْتُ أَنَا وَعَمْرًا زَيْدًا أَمَامَ الْإِمِيرِ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ ضَرْبًا شَدِيدًا تَأْدِيبًا لَهُ	
“I struck, conjointly with ‘Amr, Zeid, before the Emîr, on Friday, a severe blow by way of correcting him.”	

¹ لِلَّهِ دَرْدٌ *lit.* “to God his milk-flow,” an idiomatic expression of admiration.

THE GENITIVE OR DEPENDENT CASE.

(109). The genitive case is peculiar to nouns, and is employed in two instances.

1. After a preposition, as *خَرَجْتُ مِنَ الْمَدِينَةِ* “I went out *from* the city.”

2. When following another noun, the sense of which it defines or determines, and with which it is said to be in a state of construction, as *جَاءَنِي غَلَامٌ زَيْدٍ* “Zeid’s slave came to me.”

PREPOSITIONS.

(110). The prepositions which govern the oblique case are:

بِ, signifying—1. Companionship, as *بِعَشِيرَتِهِ* “with his tribe.” This gives a transitive sense to a neuter verb, as *ذَكَبَ* “he went,” *ذَكَبَ بِهِ* “he carried it away.”

2. Instrumentality, as *بِالْقَلَمِ* “with a pen.”

3. Correspondence, as *بِعْتُ الثَّوبَ بِدِرْهَمٍ* “I sold the garment for a dirhem.”

4. *بِ* is employed pleonastically with the agent of certain verbs, as *كَفَى بِاللَّهِ شَهِيدًا* “God is a sufficient witness.”

5. In the predicate of *لَيْسَ* *بِظَالِمٍ*, as *لَيْسَ اللَّهُ بِظَالِمٍ* “God is not unjust.”

6. As a particle of swearing, as *بِاللَّهِ* “by God.”

مِنْ, signifying—1. “Of,” or “from,” in all the senses of those prepositions in English, as

خَرَجْتُ مِنَ الْمَدِينَةِ “I went out *from* the city.”

اجْتَنِبُوا الرِّجْسَ مِنَ الْأَوْثَانِ "Avoid pollution *from* idols."

خَاتَمٌ مِنْ حَدِيدٍ "A ring *of* iron."

2. In comparison, "than," as أَكْبَرُ مِنْ زَيْدٍ "greater than Zeid."

3. "Rather than," as أَرْضَيْتُمْ بِالْحَيَاةِ الدُّنْيَا مِنَ الْآخِرَةِ "are you satisfied with this life *rather* than the next?"

4. "Some of" (like the French *de*), or "any," as

شَرِبْتُ مِنَ الْمَاءِ "I drank *some of* the water."

هَلْ عِنْدَكَ مِنْ خَبَرٍ "Have you *any* news?"

And by analogy with the preceding, as مَا جَاءَنِي مِنْ أَحَدٍ "there came not to me *any one*."

إِلَى "to," "until," as

ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ "I went *to* the city."

صُمْتُ إِلَى الْمَغْرِبِ "I fasted *until* sunset."

When followed by a pronoun, the ي in إِلَى and in لَدَى "near" (see p. 165) becomes quiescent, as إِلَيْهِ "to him."

عَنْ "from," "off," "away from," as

رَمَيْتُ السَّهْمَ عَنِ الْقَوْسِ "I shot the arrow *from* the bow."

شُغِبْتُ بِحُبِّ اللَّهِ عَنْ كُلِّ مَا سِوَاهُ "I am occupied with the love of God (and turned thereby) away from all else."

عَنْ is sometimes governed by another preposition, as اجْلِسْ مِنْ عَن يَمِينِي "sit *on* my right," *lit.* "from off," where مِنْ implies the "distance from," عَنْ the "motion from."

عَلَى, signifying—1. "Upon," as صَعَدْتُ عَلَى الْجَبَلِ "I climbed upon the mountain." عَلَى also may be governed

by ^{مِنْ} *as* ^{نَزَلْتُ} *مِنْ عَلَى السَّطْحِ* “I came down from off the roof,” literally “from upon.”

2. “Against,” as ^{خَرَجَ} *عَلَى السُّلْطَانِ* “he went out (rebelled) *against* the king.” ^{عَلَى} also becomes ^{عَلَيْهِ} with pronouns, as *عَلَيْهِ* “on him.”

^{لِ}, signifying—1. “To,” “belonging to,” as ^{الْمَالُ} *لِزَيْدٍ* “the property is (belongs) to Zeid.”

2. “For,” as ^{ضَرَبْتُهُ} *لِلتَّأْدِيبِ* “I struck him *for* correction.”

3. “At” (pleonastically), as ^{لِزَيْدٍ} *ضَرَبْتُ* “at Zeid I struck.”

^{كَ} “like,” as ^{زَيْدٌ} *كَالْأَسَدِ* “Zeid (is) like the lion.”

^{حَتَّى} “until” (limiting a continuous relation), as ^{نِمْتُ} *الْبَارِحَةَ حَتَّى الصَّبَاحِ* “I slept yesterday until the morning.”

^{وَ} and ^{تَ} are particles of swearing, as ^{وَاللَّهِ} *تَاللهِ* “by God.”¹

OTHER WORDS USED AS PREPOSITIONS.

(111). ^{رُبَّ} “many a,” or, conversely, “but few.” ^{رُبَّ} must begin the sentence, and the noun which it governs must be indefinite and qualified by a subsequent adjective, as ^{رُبَّ} *رَجُلٍ كَرِيمٍ لَقِيتُهُ* “many a generous man have I met.” Sometimes a pronoun is affixed to it, in which case the following word must be indefinite and in the accusative case, as ^{رَبِّهِ} *رَجُلًا* “many a man.”

If the particle ^{مَا} be affixed to ^{رُبَّ}, it signifies “perhaps,” “probably,” and serves to introduce a sentence, as ^{رُبَّمَا} *زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ* “perhaps Zeid is standing.”

¹ It is worth remarking that the long *alif* in the name of God is pronounced with the *imālah*—see p. 9 (7)—if preceded by a *kesrah* َ ; but if preceded by any other vowel, it is pronounced very full and broad: thus, *w'allāhi*, *t'allāhi*, as above, but ^{بِاللَّهِ} *bilīhi*.

رُبَّ is often omitted after و, but the noun still continues in the genitive case, as وَلَيْلٌ كَمَوْجِ الْبَحْرِ ارْخَى سُدُولَهُ "and (many a) night like the waves of the sea has let down its curtain of darkness."

مَنْذُ, مَنْذُ, signifying—1. "Since," as

مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مَنْذُ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ "I have not seen him since Friday."

2. Absolutely, "since," in the sense of "at all," as

مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مَنْذُ "I have not seen him *since*."

مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مَنْذُ (مَنْذُ) يَوْمِنَا هَذَا "I have not seen him 'at all' lately."

But مَنْذُ and مَنْذُ also take the nominative, as

مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مَنْذُ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ "I have not seen him since Friday."

حَاشَا, عَدَا, and خَلَا, all meaning "except," sometimes govern the genitive.

بَعْدُ and قَبْلُ, meaning respectively "before" and "after," are used as prepositions; the length of time by which they are defined is introduced by بِ, as

قَبْلُ وَفَاةِ زَيْدٍ بِيَوْمَيْنِ "Two days before the death of Zeid."

بَعْدُ طُلُوعِ الشَّمْسِ بِسَاعَتَيْنِ "Two hours after sunrise."

Many other nouns are used as prepositions, such as غَيْرُ "except," فَوْقُ "over," etc. They have the accusative form without *tenwin*.

A SENTENCE AS THE COMPLEMENT OF A PREPOSITION.

(112). An entire proposition, verbal or nominative, is often the complement of a preposition, in which case it does not change its terminations, as

وَاللّٰهُ مَا هِيَ بِنِعَمِ الْوَلَدِ نَصَرَهَا بِكَاءٍ وَبِزَهِ سَرَقَةٍ

“By God! she is not a ‘How good is the child,’ her help is weeping, and her armour silken attire” (said by an Arab who was told of the birth of a daughter).

تَنَادَوْا بِالرَّحِيلِ غَدًا “Proclaim, ‘The departure is to-morrow.’”

THE VOCATIVE.

(113). The vocative particles are يَا, أَيَّ, آ, هَيَّا, أَيَّا, of which the first, يَا, is the more common. They usually govern the noun in the subjective case. They may be either expressed or understood, as يُوسُفُ أَعْرَضَ عَنْ هَذَا “Joseph avoid this,” *i.e.* يَا يُوسُفُ “O Joseph,” etc.

The vocative is put in the objective case—

1. When the noun is in construction, as يَا عَبْدَ اللَّهِ “Oh ‘Abdallah!” Or when it governs another noun in the accusative, as يَا طَالِعًا جَبَلًا “O thou who art ascending a mountain!”

2. When it is undefined, or not directly addressed, *e.g.*, as when a blind man says, يَا رَجُلًا خُذْ بِيَدِي “Here somebody! take my hand.” But if the noun is not in construction, but is indefinite, and not qualified by a subsequent adjective, being nevertheless directly addressed, it is put in the nominative case without *tenw‘a*, as يَا زَيْدٌ “Oh Zeid!” يَا رَجُلٌ “Oh man!” If, however, it be so qualified, it is more often put in the objective case, as يَا رَجُلًا كَرِيمًا “O generous man!”

Indeclinable and imperfectly declined nouns do not of course take the ة, as يَا مُوسَى “Oh Moses!” يَا قَانِي “Oh Cadhi!” يَا سِبْمَوَيْه “Oh Sībawaih!”

In crying for help, or expressing wonder, *يَا* is prefixed to the noun, which is then put in the oblique case, as

يَا زَيْدٌ "Oh for Zeid (to help me)!"
يَا لِلْعَجَبِ "Oh for the (what a) wonder!"

When the noun has the article prefixed, the vocative is expressed by putting it in the nominative case and prefixing the word أَيُّهَا "masculine," and أَيُّهَا "feminine," for all numbers, as

أَيُّهَا الْغَائِلُ "Oh (thou) the accomplished!"
أَيُّهَا الْمَرْأَةُ "Oh you woman there!"

The name of God *الله* is seldom put in the vocative, but when it is, the *hemzet el-wasl* may be either retained or elided, as *يَا اللهُ* *ya-allah*, or *يَا اللهُ* *ya 'llah*. But the word more generally used in addressing the Deity is *اللَّهُمَّ*, without a vocative particle.

APOCOPATION OF THE LAST SYLLABLE OF THE VOCATIVE.

(114). In the following cases the last syllable of the vocative may be apocopated:

1. In all substantives having a feminine termination, no matter of what gender, as *فَاتِمَة*, vocative *فَاتِم* "Oh! Fatima," *شَاة*, vocative *شَا* "Oh! sheep."

2. In proper names of four or more letters; provided they are not compound, consisting of two nouns, in a state of grammatical construction, or of a whole sentence, and provided they do not resemble any part of a verb in form as *جَعْفَر* vocative *جَعَف* "Oh! Ja'fer."

In proper names like مَعْدَى كَرِبَ "Oh! Ma'dí Karib," compounded of two words not in a state of construction, the last half may be apocopated, as يَا مَعْدَى.

The vocative صَاح for صَاحِبِي "Oh! my companion," is a rare exception.

NOUNS DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE.

(115). Nouns are either definite or indefinite.

An indefinite noun is rendered definite by prefixing the article *ال*; or by placing it in construction with another and following noun.

The loss of the *tenwín* is, as we have already seen, the distinctive mark of the definite noun.

NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION.

OF THE FIRST OF TWO NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION.

(116). Of two nouns in construction, the first invariably loses its *tenwín*.

The use and application of the construct arrangement of nouns will be best understood from a study of the following examples:

غُلَامُ الرَّجُلِ "The slave of the man."

غُلَامُ رَجُلٍ "The slave of a man."

Here the loss of the *tenwín* makes the word غُلَامُ definite in both instances (see p. 7); it is not necessary therefore further to define it by prefixing the article. From this results the rule that *the first of two nouns in a state of construction does not require the article*.

Sometimes, however, when the two nouns in con-

struction have come to be regarded almost as a single expression, the article may be prefixed, as

الْحَيَوةُ الدُّنْيَا The "life of this world."

الْحَيَوةُ الْحَيَوَانِ The book called "The life of animals" (name of a work on natural history).

A noun may have several complements in construction with it, as عَالِمُ الْغَيْبِ وَالشَّهَادَةِ "He who knows what is hidden, and what is present."

If it be necessary to leave the first of two nouns indefinite, and yet to express the same relation between them as that implied by the state of construction, the preposition لِ "to," or "belonging to," must be used with the second noun, as ابْنٌ لِلْمَلِكِ "a son of the king."

Sometimes an indefinite noun may be followed by two nouns in a state of construction, serving as a complement to it, especially if the first of two such nouns be an agent or a noun expressing an inherent quality, as

هَدَىٰ بِالْبَيْتِ الْكَعْبَةِ "A victim arriving at the Kaaba."

مُحَمَّدٌ الْحَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ "Mohammed, the handsome of face."

OF THE SECOND OF TWO NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION.

(117). A sentence or quotation may occupy the place of the second of two nouns in a state of construction, as

سَقَتْهُ يَدُ الْمَنِيَةِ كَأْسٌ وَسَقُوا مَاءً حَمِيمًا فَتَقَطَّعَ أَمْعَاءُهُمْ

"The hand of fate gave him to drink the cup of, 'and they were given to drink boiling water which tore their entrails.'"

—Kor. xlvii. 17.

If the first of two nouns be a participial form, and be used in the sense of a present or future tense, as

ضَارِبُ الرَّجُلِ “the striker of the man,” and especially if it govern two nouns already in construction, as ضَارِبُ رَأْسِ الرَّجُلِ “the striker of the head of the man,” it may take the article, as الضَّارِبُ الرَّجُلِ, الضَّارِبُ رَأْسَ الرَّجُلِ.

The relation of the second of two nouns in a state of construction to the first—*i.e.* the relation of the determining or defining noun to that which it determines or defines—will be best understood from the following examples:

حِكْمَةُ اللَّهِ “The wisdom of God.”

بَيْضَةُ فِضَّةٍ “An egg of silver.”

فِضَّةُ الدِّرَاهِمِ “The silver of dirhems.”

خَالِقُ الْأَرْضِ “The Creator of the earth.”

حَرُّ الشَّمْسِ “The heat of the sun.”

رَأْسُ الْحِكْمَةِ “The fountain-head of wisdom.”

كُلُّ الْمَخْلُوقَاتِ “All created things.”

خَزِينَةُ السُّلْطَانِ “The king’s treasury.”

سُلْطَانُ الْبَرِّ وَالْبَحْرِ “The king of the land and the sea.”

خَلْقُ السَّمَاءِ “The creation of the heavens.”

مَلَأُو رَبِّهِمْ “Those who meet their Lord.”

ظَالِمُو أَنْفُسِهِمْ “Those who are unjust to their own souls.”

كَاتِبُ الرِّسَالَةِ “The writer of the treatise.”

أَوَّلُ كَافِرٍ “The first to disbelieve.”

شَيْرٌ مَخْلُوقٍ “Increate (other than created).”

- أَحَبُّ شَيْءٍ "A thing most pleasing."
 خَيْرُ الْبَرِيَّةِ "The best of creation."
 سَقَقَ عِمَامَةً "A worn-out turban."
 أَعْلَمُ الْفَلَسِيفَةِ "The most learned of philosophers."
 سَرِيعُ الْحِسَابِ "Quick of (in) reckoning."

We have seen that when two nouns are in a state of construction, the first becomes definite; if it be required to express such relationship between the two, and yet to preserve the indefinite character of the first, a preposition must be interposed, as

- رَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ "God's mercy." رَحْمَةٌ مِّنَ اللَّهِ "A mercy from God."
 رَحْمَتُهُ "His mercy." رَحْمَةٌ مِنْهُ "A mercy of His."

Sometimes this construction is used merely to give importance to the noun, as in the verse of Imru 'al Kāis:

وَقَرَّتْهُ أَقْوَامٌ جَعَلْتُ عِصَامَهَا عَلَى كَاهِلٍ مِنِّي ذُلُولٍ مُّرَحَلٍ

"And (many a) waterskin belonging to the tribe have I placed the strap thereof on a shoulder of mine accustomed to fatigue and used to travel."

OTHER MODES OF EXPRESSING THE RELATION BETWEEN NOUNS.

(118). The idea of possession, companionship, etc., is also expressed in Arabic by the use of the following words:

صَاحِبٌ "companion," ذُو masc. ذَاتُ fem. "possessor,"
 أَبٌ "father," أُمٌّ "mother," ابْنٌ "son," ابْنَةٌ or بِنْتُ "daughter,"
 أَخٌ "brother," أُخْتُ "sister."

ذُو and صَاحِبٌ imply simple possession or endowment, as
 ذُو الْعِلْمِ "learned," صَاحِبُ مَالٍ "wealthy."

أَب and أُم imply that the thing expressed by the following noun proceeds from, or has an intimate connexion with, the person or thing so qualified. They are used in forming nick-names, and in the names of localities, as

أَبُو هُرَيْرَةَ "Abu Huraireh" ("father of the kitten," the name of one of the companions of Mohammed).

أَبُو الْيَقْظَانِ "Father of watching" (the cock).

أَبُو رِيحٍ "Abu Riah" ("father of perfume," Latakia tobacco).

أَبُو شِيْحٍ "Abu Shiah" ("father of Shiah," i.e. a sweet-scented desert herb; name of a mountain in Sinai).

أُمُ الْخُبَائِثِ "Mother of Vices" (wine).

أُمُ طَرْفَاءٍ "Umm Tarfá" (mother of tamarisks; name of a valley in Sinai).

ابْن and بِنْت are the converse of أَب and أُم, as

ابْن السَّبِيلِ "Son of the road (a traveller)."

ابْنُ آوَى "Son of howling (a jackal)."

بِنْتُ الْجَبَلِ "The daughter of the mountain (the echo)."

أَخ and أُخْت also imply being endowed with a quality, as

أَخُو الصِّدْقِ "Sincere (the brother of sincerity)."

أَخُو الْغِنَى "Rich (the brother of riches)."

أَخُو ثِقَّةٍ "Trusty (the brother of confidence)."

أَخ is also used for "fellow," as هَذَا الثَّوبُ أَخُو هَذَا "this garment is the fellow to this one."

Note.—The complement of تُو may be a verb in the aorist, although such construction is rare, as

لَا يَذِي تَسْلَمُ مَا كَانَ كَذَا

"No! by him (through whom) you are preserved, it was not so."

The same construction occurs in the following verse of Ibn el Fáridh :

قَدْ كَانَ قَبْلَ يَعْدُ مِنْ قَتَلَى رَشًا ۞ أَسَدًا لِأَسَادِ الشَّرَى بَذَاذَا

“Before *he* was numbered amongst those slain of (by) a fawn,
He was a lion rending the lions of Shera.”

Some words, as كُلُّ “all,” require to be placed in a state of construction with another noun in order to complete the sense, as كُلُّ الْقَوْمِ “all the tribe.” In such a sentence as كُلُّ يَمُوتُ “all will die,” which is an apparent exception, the same rule holds, for it is equivalent to كُلُّ أَحَدٍ يَمُوتُ “every one will die.”

ELLIPSE OF THE FIRST OF TWO NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION.

(119). The first or second of two nouns in a state of construction may be understood in such an instance as

قَطَعَ اللَّهُ يَدَ وَرَجْلَ مَنْ قَالَهَا “May God cut off the hand and
foot of him who said it;” for

قَطَعَ اللَّهُ يَدَ مَنْ قَالَهَا وَرَجْلَهُ “May God cut off the hand of him
and the foot of him who said it.”

أَكَلُ امْرِئٍ تَحْسِينِ امْرَأً وَنَارٍ تَوْقَدُ فِي اللَّيْلِ نَارًا

“Do you think every man a *man*, and (every) fire kindled by night a
fire (of hospitality)?”

رَأَيْتُ التَّيْمِيَّ تَيْمَ عَدِيٍّ

“I saw the Teimite, of Teim, of the descendants of ‘Adí.”

لَمَّا كَانَتِ الْإَيَّامُ النَّاصِرِيَّةُ مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ فَلَانٍ

“When it was the reign of Násir (literally, ‘the Nasirian days’), viz.
of Mohammed, son of Keláon.”

THE GENDER OF AN ADJECTIVE QUALIFYING TWO NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION.

(120). The last of the two nouns gives the gender to the qualifying adjective, or whatever other word serves as the predicate, as *قُطِعَتْ بَعْضُ أَصَابِعِهِ* "some of his fingers were cut off."

The two nouns in construction may occasionally be separated, as in the following examples:

هَلْ أَنْتُمْ تَارِكُوا إِلَيَّ صَاحِبِي "Are you leaving to me my companion?"

إِنَّ الشَّاةَ تَسْمَعُ صَوْتَ وَاللَّهِ رَبِّهَا "Verily the sheep hears the voice (by God!) of its master."

كَمَا خُطَّ الْكِتَابُ بِكَفِّ يَوْمَ يَهُودِيٍّ "As the book was written by the hand, one day, of a Jew."

SEPARATION OF TWO NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION.

(121). The objective complement is frequently interposed between two nouns in a state of construction, when the first is a noun of action, as

زَيْنَ لَكْثِيرٍ مِنَ الْمُشْرِكِينَ قَتَلَ أَوْلَادَهُمْ شُرَكَائِهِمْ

"It has seemed good to many of the polytheists that their associates should kill their children."

يَفْشُرُ حَبَّ السَّنْبِيلِ الْكُنَافِجِ بِالتَّاعِ فَرَكَ الْقُطْنِ الْمَحَالِجِ

"They (the locusts) scatter the grains of the rich cars of corn which grows on the plain as the flails scatter the cotton grains."

مَا is sometimes inserted expletively between the two nouns, as

يَا شَاةَ مَا قَتَصَ لِمَنْ حَلَّتْ لَهُ حُرْمَتٌ عَلَى وَلَيْتَهَا لَمْ تَحْرِمِ

"Oh sheep that should be as a prey for him to whom its possession is lawful.—It is forbidden me! Oh would that it were not forbidden!"

But these are perhaps nothing but poetical licence.

CONCORDANCE OF NOUNS AND EPITHETS.

(122). If the noun be definite, the qualifying epithet must also be definite, as

كِتَابُ الْعَظِيمِ "The mighty Book."

إِبْرَاهِيمَ الْآمِنِ "The faithful Abraham."

If the noun be in a state of construction with another noun, or have an affixed pronoun, the qualifying epithet is placed after such compound expression, and is also rendered definite by prefixing the article, as

كِتَابُ مُوسَى الْعَظِيمِ "The mighty Book of Moses."

كِتَابُهُ الْمَكْرَمِ "His honoured Book."

But if the noun be indefinite, the epithet will also be indefinite, as كِتَابٌ عَتِيقٌ "an old book." The rules for the concordance of the noun and epithet in gender and number are the same as for the agent and verb.

Occasionally, however, a broken plural may take the epithet in the feminine plural, as

أَسُودَ صَارِيَاتٍ "Devouring lions."

جِبَالٌ رَاسِيَاتٍ "Firm mountains."

سُيُوفٌ مُرْهَقَاتٍ "Slender sharp swords."

أَيَّامٌ مَعْدُودَاتٍ "Numbered days."

A collective noun may be qualified by an epithet in the masculine plural, as أَنْصُرْنَا عَلَى الْقَوْمِ الْكَافِرِينَ "aid us against the infidel folk."

THE NOUN OF ACTION AS A QUALIFYING EPITHET.

(123). Sometimes a noun of action, instead of an adjectival or participial form, is used as a qualifying

epithet, as عَدْلٌ “justice,” instead of حَادِلٌ “just;” it then agrees with the noun in case, and in being definite or indefinite, but it remains always in the singular number, and preserves its own gender, as

رَجُلٌ عَدْلٌ “A just man.”

رَجُلَانِ عَدْلٌ “Two just men.”

رَجَالٌ عَدْلٌ “Just men.”

An example of this occurs in the Koran :

عَسَىٰ رَبُّهُ إِنْ طَلَّقَكُنِ أَنْ يُبَدِّلَهُ أَزْوَاجًا خَيْرًا مِنْكَ مَسْلَمَاتٍ قَانِتَاتٍ وَابَكَارَاتٍ

“Perchance his Lord if he divorce you will give him wives better than you true-believers, obedient and virgins.”—Kor. lxi. 5.

Ibn Málik in his Alfíyeh gives the rule as follows :

وَنَعْتُوا بِمَصْدَرٍ كَثِيرًا وَالتَّزَمُوا الْإِفْرَادَ وَالتَّذْكِيرَ

“They frequently use the noun of action as an attribute,
But keep to the singular number and the masculine gender.”

THE NUMERALS.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE NUMERAL AND THE THING NUMBERED.

(124). وَاحِدَةٌ (fem.), وَاحِدٌ (masc.) *one*, is used as an adjective, as رَجُلٌ وَاحِدٌ “one man,” اِمْرَأَةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ “one woman.”

أَحَدٌ, fem. إِحْدَى, is always a substantive, and is therefore employed in a state of construction, as أَحَدُ النَّاسِ “one of the men,” إِحْدَى النِّسَاءِ “one of the women.”

Sometimes فَرْدٌ “an unit,” is used, as فَرْدٌ شَكْلٍ “of one and the same shape.”

For the simple numeral *one* in the abstract وَاحِدٌ is used.

Two is expressed by the dual number of the noun; sometimes, for greater emphasis, the numeral اِثْنَانِ *إِثْنَانِ* may be used as well, as مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلَيْنِ أَتَيْنَيْنِ “I passed by two men.” The use of the numeral *two* with a singular genitive, as in the expression اِثْنَتَا حَضَظَلٍ “two colocynth gourds,” is rare (see p. 105).

From 3 to 10 the numerals are (1) either used as nouns substantive, governing the genitive of the broken plural, and if possible the plural of paucity, and agreeing with the noun in gender, as ثَلَاثَةُ رِجَالٍ “three men,” ثَلَاثُ بَنَاتٍ “three girls;” or (2) they may be regarded as adjectival, and placed after and in apposition with the noun, as كَانَ لَهُ بَنُونَ ثَلَاثَةٌ وَبَنَاتٌ خَمْسٌ “he had three sons and five daughters.” Very rarely they are construed with the accusative, as خَمْسَةُ أَثَوَابٍ “five dresses” (see p. 194).

From one to ten the numerals are declinable and follow the ordinary laws of construction and dependence upon verbs and particles.

When the thing numbered is a collective noun, the preposition مِنْ should be introduced, as أَرْبَعَةٌ مِنَ الطَّيْرِ “four birds” (*i.e.* four individuals of the class *bird*), تِسْعَةٌ مِنَ الرِّهْطِ “nine of the family.”

From 11 to 19 the numerals are, as we have seen, indeclinable, and are therefore subject to no laws of construction; the units must, however, agree in gender with the thing numbered.

From 11 to 99 the numerals govern an accusative of the thing numbered.

Where there is a distinction of gender, the numerals always agree with the thing numbered. The thing

numbered being put in the singular, an adjective may agree with it either grammatically or logically, as

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{عَشْرُونَ دِينَارًا نَاصِرِيًّا} \\ \text{عَشْرُونَ دِينَارًا نَاصِرِيَّةً} \end{array} \right\} \text{“Twenty dinars of Násir’s coinage.”}$$

In the first place نَاصِرِيًّا agrees grammatically with the singular masculine دِينَارًا; in the second logically with the feminine broken plural دَنَانِيرَ, which is implied.

We may use all the numerals as ordinary nouns, and place them in a state of construction, as عَشْرُو زَيْدٍ “Zeid’s twenty (horses, etc.);” the ن being dropped by the rule given in p. 108.

[In this case some grammarians decline the indeclinable numerals: *e.g.*

هَذِهِ خَمْسَةُ عَشْرِكَ “These are your fifteen (camels).”

خُذْ خَمْسَةَ عَشْرِكَ “Take your fifteen (camels).”

أَعْطِ مِنْ خَمْسَةِ عَشْرِكَ “Give some of your fifteen (camels).”

Some few decline the last part only, thus :

Subjective	خَمْسَةُ عَشْرٍ
Dependent	خَمْسَةَ عَشِيرٍ
Objective	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ].

مِائَةٌ, “100,” is a feminine noun. After the units it is put in the genitive *singular*, thus forming an exception to the rule on p. 158. The unit and the word مِائَةٌ, may, moreover, coalesce.

أَلْفٌ, “1000,” is a masculine noun, and with the units follows the ordinary rule (p. 158) for the case of the thing numbered.

أَلْفٌ and مِائَةٌ, being nouns substantive, govern the

genitive singular, according to the rule for the construction of nouns.

Numbers compounded with those already described require the application of the various rules given as each case occurs: *e.g.*

بَيْنَ الْبَحْرِ وَبَيْنَ الطُّوفَانِ ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ وَتِسْعِمِائَةٍ وَأَرْبَعٍ وَسَبْعُونَ سَنَةً

“Between the Hijrah and the Deluge there are 3974 years.”

Here مِائَةٌ is the genitive broken plural after ثَلَاثَةُ; مِائَةٌ is in the genitive singular after تِسْعٌ, forming one word with it; سَنَةٌ is in the accusative case after أَرْبَعٍ وَسَبْعُونَ, each set of numerals being connected by the conjunction وَ. From this it will be seen that the last numeral mentioned governs the case of the thing numbered.

In very large amounts the word أَلْفٌ, “1000,” must be repeated after each numeral, and frequently the thing numbered is also so repeated, as

الْعَرَبِيَّةُ عِبْرَتُهَا أَلْفَا أَلْفِ دِينَارٍ وَمِائَةُ أَلْفِ دِينَارٍ وَأَرْبَعَةُ وَأَرْبَعُونَ أَلْفَ دِينَارٍ وَثَمَانُونَ دِينَارًا جَبِشِيَّةً

“As for the province of Gharbíyeh, the amount of its revenue is two millions one hundred and forty-four thousand and eighty military dínárs.”

The higher numerals may also be employed as adjectives, following and being put in apposition with the noun, as

وَجَذَبَ الشَّبَكَةَ إِلَى الْأَرْضِ إِذْ هِيَ مَمْتَلِئَةٌ حَيْثَانًا كِبَارًا وَمِائَةً وَثَلَاثَةً وَخَمْسِينَ

“He drew the net to land, and behold it was full of large fishes—a hundred and fifty-three.”

AGREEMENT IN GENDER OF THE NUMERAL AND THING NUMBERED.

(125). I have already said that the numeral agrees with the thing numbered in gender. This is also the case when the thing itself is understood, as ^{وَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ يَمْشِي عَلَى أَرْبَعٍ} "and there are some of them which walk on four"—*sc.* feet (feminine).

The logical agreement is to be preferred even when it is opposed to the grammatical gender, as

^{فَكَانَ مَجْنِي دُونَ مَنْ كُنْتُ اتَّقِي} ^{ثَلَاثَ شُخُوصٍ كَاعِبَانِ وَمَعْصِرٍ}

"So my shield against those I feared

Was three persons—two budding maidens and a young woman."

Here, although ^{شُخُوصٍ} (poetical for ^{أَشْخَصٍ}) is the plural of a masculine noun, yet because the persons referred to are feminine, the numeral is put in that gender (^{ثَلَاثَ أَشْخَصٍ}, not ^{ثَلَاثَةٌ أَشْخَصٍ}, as we might have expected).

With collective nouns, such as those mentioned in p. 111 (60), and when construed with ^{مِنْ}, the numeral must agree with the grammatical gender of the word, as

^{أَرْبَعَةٌ مِنَ الْغَنَمِ} "Four sheep."

^{ثَلَاثٌ مِنَ الْبَطِّ} "Three ducks."

And this holds even when the individuals are expressly feminine, as

^{أَرْبَعَةٌ مِنَ الْغَنَمِ إِمَائَاتٍ} "Four sheep—females."

^{ثَلَاثٌ مِنَ الْبَطِّ ذُكُورٍ} "Three ducks—males."

If the words ^{ذُكُورٍ} and ^{إِمَائَاتٍ}, or any similar epithet, immediately follow the numeral, this rule does not hold, as they are then the things numbered, and require the

numeral to agree with them in gender. But in proper names the sex alone is regarded, and the logical agreement therefore holds good, whatever the grammatical gender may be, as

ثَلَاثَةُ تَلْحَاسٍ "The three Talhas."

أَرْبَعُ الزَيْنَابَاتِ "The four Zeinabs."

For the numerals in the abstract the masculine form is always used, as ثَلَاثَةٌ نِصْفُ السِّتَةِ "three is half six."

N.B. The article is here used to express the abstract or general nature of the noun, *e.g.* "the (number) three;" an indefinite noun is necessarily concrete; see p. 157 (81).

When things of different genders are included under one numeral the following rules hold: From 3 to 5 the number of each species must be separately expressed: From 6 to 10 the numeral agrees in gender with the noun immediately following it, as

لِي ثَمَانِيَةِ أَعْبِدٍ وَإِمَاءَ "I have eight servants and handmaids."

لِي ثَمَانِيِ إِمَاءَ وَأَعْبِدٍ "I have eight handmaids and servants."

From 11—19 the numeral is always masculine for nouns denoting rational beings, no matter in what order they come, as

عِنْدِي خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ عَبْدًا وَجَارِيَةً "I have fifteen male and female slaves."

عِنْدِي خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ جَارِيَةً وَعَبْدًا "I have fifteen female and male slaves."

For nouns denoting irrational beings the numeral agrees in gender with that which immediately follows it:

عِنْدِي خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ جَمَلًا وَنَاقَةً "I have fifteen male and female camels."

عِنْدِي خَمْسُ عَشْرَةَ نَاقَةً وَجَمَلًا "I have fifteen female and male camels."

And when the noun does not immediately follow the numeral, the latter is always in the feminine, as

عِنْدِي خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ مَا بَيْنَ جَمَلٍ وَنَاقَةٍ “I have fifteen camels, male and female.”

عِنْدِي خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ مَا بَيْنَ نَاقَةٍ وَجَمَلٍ “I have fifteen camels, female and male.”

THE USE OF THE ARTICLE WITH NUMERALS.

(126). With regard to the use of the article, the numerals may be treated like ordinary nouns, as

فَرَجَعَ السَّبْعُونَ بِفَرَحٍ “And the seventy returned with joy.”

الْأَشَدُّ هَوْنًا بَيْنَ الْوُقُوفِ بَيْنَ الثَّلَاثِينَ وَالْأَرْبَعِينَ

“The prime of life is the age when man is stationary, between thirty and forty.”

In the last example the article is used to generalize the noun, see p. 157 (81).

The rules for using the article with the thing numbered are really the same as those which apply in the case of ordinary nouns in a state of construction; *e.g.* ثَلَاثَةُ رِجَالٍ “three men,” is equivalent in construction to أَصَوَاتُ رِجَالٍ “men’s voices;” adding the article therefore by the ordinary rule to the last only, we get in both cases, ثَلَاثَةُ الرِّجَالِ “the three men,” أَصَوَاتُ الرِّجَالِ “the men’s voices;” see p. 201 (116).

As, in some cases, the same two nouns in a state of construction are so frequently used together that they are regarded at last as one word, and may take the article, so, too, may the numeral, although in construction with a noun, *e.g.* سَبْعَ دَعَائِمَ “seven fundamental precepts;” with

the article, السبع دَعَائِمَ النَّامُوسِيَّةِ “the seven fundamental precepts of the law;” *cf.* الْحَيَاةُ الدُّنْيَا “the life of this world,” *scilicet*, which is so frequently mentioned (see p. 102).

This will of course apply only to the numerals from 3 to 10, and to the hundreds and thousands, *i.e.* those which are considered as nouns, and as such govern the thing numbered in the dependent case.

Those which are not placed in construction with the following noun of course take the article, without reference to such noun. The only thing remarkable about them is that in the compound numerals the article may be added to both portions or to the first only, as

<p> الْخَمْسَةُ عَشْرَ دِرْهَمًا الْخَمْسَةُ الْعَشْرَ دِرْهَمًا </p>	<p> } “The fifteen dirhems.” </p>
<p> الْخَمْسُ عَشْرَةَ نَاقَةً الْخَمْسُ الْعَشْرَةَ نَاقَةً </p>	<p> } “The fifteen she-camels.” </p>

Wherever the numeral, and not the thing numbered, takes the article, and a qualifying adjective follows, this must take the article, as in the example given above:

السبع دَعَائِمَ النَّامُوسِيَّةِ “The seven fundamental precepts of the law.”

THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

(127). The ordinal numbers are regarded as agents or qualifying nouns, and are subject to the same laws.

The ordinals for the units (except the first) are of the form فَاعِلٌ, and are therefore susceptible of the feminine terminations, singular and plural. Those for the tens, hundreds and thousands are the same for both genders.

For our expressions “one of two,” “one of four,” etc., the Arabs say, “the second of two,” “the fourth of four,” etc., as

ثَانِيْ اِثْنَيْنِ “One of two.”

رَابِعْ اَرْبَعَةٍ “One of four.”

Similarly, for “he makes a fifth,” they say, “he is the fifth of four.”

Here the true *agent* sense is given to the ordinal, which may therefore either govern like a noun or a verb (see p. 225), as

هُوَ خَامِسُ اَرْبَعَةٍ } “He makes a fifth.”
هُوَ خَامِسٌ اَرْبَعَةٍ }

DATES.

(128). In dates the cardinal numbers are used following the word *سَنَةٌ* in the dependent case; the order preserved is units, tens, hundreds, thousands, and they are connected together with the conjunction *وَ*, as

فِي سَنَةِ بَيِّتٍ وَتِسْعِينَ وَثَلَاثُمِائَةٍ وَالْفِ “In the year 1396.”

In employing the ordinal numbers for dates, the word *day* is frequently understood as with us; *e.g.*

ثَامِنُ عَشْرِ شَهْرِ رَجَبٍ “28th of the month Rejeb.”

But if the article be used with the ordinal, the construct form cannot of course be employed; *e.g.*

الثَّامِنُ وَالْعِشْرُونَ مِنَ شَهْرِ رَجَبٍ “The 28th of the month Rejeb.”

The day of the month is expressed either in the same manner as with us, counting from the first day, or according to the following system :

- 1st Rejeb { لَوَّلَ لَيْلَةٍ مِنْ رَجَبٍ "On the first night of Rejeb being passed."
 لِمَسْتَهْلٍ or لَغَرَّةٍ رَجَبٍ "On the new moon or the blaze of Rejeb" (غَرَّةٌ meaning the "blaze" or white mark on a horse's forehead).
 مَسْتَهْلٍ or غَرَّةٍ رَجَبٍ
- 2nd ,, لِّلْيَلَتَيْنِ خَلَّتَا مِنْ رَجَبٍ
- 3rd ,, لِثَلَاثٍ خَلُّونَ مِنْ رَجَبٍ
- 10th ,, لِعَشْرِ خَلُّونَ مِنْ رَجَبٍ
 to
 خَلُّونَ being understood before لَيَّالٍ.
- 11th ,, لِأَحَدَى عَشَرَ خَلَّتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ "On eleven nights of Rejeb being passed.
- 12th ,, لِاثْنَتَيْ عَشَرَ خَلَّتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ
- 13th ,, لِثَلَاثَ عَشَرَ خَلَّتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ
- 14th ,, لِأَرْبَعِ عَشَرَ خَلَّتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ
- 15th ,, { فِي النِّصْفِ مِنْ رَجَبٍ "In the middle of Rejeb."
 فِي مِنتَصَفِ رَجَبٍ
- 16th ,, لِأَرْبَعِ عَشَرَ بَقِيَتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ "On fourteen nights remaining of Rejeb."
 to
- 19th ,, لِتِسْعِ عَشَرَ بَقِيَتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ
- 20th ,, لِعَشْرِ بَقِيْنَ مِنْ رَجَبٍ
- 27th ,, لِثَلَاثِ بَقِيْنَ مِنْ رَجَبٍ
 to
 بَقِيْنَ being understood before لَيَّالٍ.

28th Rejeb	لَيْلَتَيْنِ بَقِيَّتَا مِنْ رَجَبٍ	
29th „	لَيْلَةً بَقِيَّتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ	
30th	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{لَا خَيْرَ لَيْلَةٍ مِنْ رَجَبٍ} \\ \text{سِرَرٍ or سِرَرٍ or سِرَرٍ or سِرَرٍ} \\ \text{or لَيْسَ رَجَبٍ or لَيْسَ رَجَبٍ} \end{array} \right.$	“On the last night of Rejeb.”

PROPER NAMES.

(129). Proper names are either Simple, as زَيْدٌ “Zeid;” or Compound, as عَبْدُ اللَّهِ “‘Abd’allah.”

SIMPLE PROPER NAMES.

(130). A mere proper name, not having an intelligible signification in Arabic, is only inflected with ُ and َ ; and being definite, it is not susceptible of *tenwīn*, and cannot take the article, as

جَاءَ يُوسُفُ “Joseph came.”

رَأَيْتُ يُوسُفَ “I saw Joseph.”

مَرَرْتُ بِيُوسُفَ “I passed by Joseph.”

[But Arabic nouns employed as proper names, and having an intelligible meaning, as مُحَمَّدٌ “laudable,” are regularly declined.]

COMPOUND PROPER NAMES.

(131). Compound proper names are of three kinds.

1. Composed of a sentence, as تَابَتْ شَرًّا “He took an armful of wickedness,” the name of a celebrated Arab poet and brigand.

To this class are also referred such names as يَزِيدُ

“Yezíd,” or ^{شَمَّر} “Shammar,” which have verbal forms. Such names remain uninflected and uninfluenced by verbs, particles, etc., as

^{جَاءَ} ^{تَابَطَ} ^{شَرًّا} “Taabbata-Sharran came.”

^{رَأَيْتُ} ^{تَابَطَ} ^{شَرًّا} “I saw Taabbata-Sharran.”

^{مَرَرْتُ} ^{بِتَابَطَ} ^{شَرًّا} “I passed by Taabbata-Sharran.”

2. Compounded of two words of which the second has become a mere termination, as ^{حَضَرَمَوْتُ} “Ḥaḍhramaut,” ^{بَعْلَبَكِّ} “Baalbekk.”

Of these the first portion is invariably pointed with ـَ *fethah*, and the second follows the rule of a simple proper name taking only ـَ in the nominative, and ـِ in the objective and oblique, as

^{هَذِهِ} ^{بَعْلَبَكِّ} “This is Baalbekk.”

^{رَأَيْتُ} ^{بَعْلَبَكِّ} “I saw Baalbekk.”

^{مَرَرْتُ} ^{بِبَعْلَبَكِّ} “I passed by Baalbekk.”

But if the first portion of the word end in *ي*, it remains quiescent, as ^{مَعْدِي} ^{كَرْبُ} “Mādī-Karib.”

3. Composed of two nouns in a state of construction, as ^{عَبْدُ} ^{اللَّهِ} “‘Abdallah” (servant of God); in this case the first portion is subject to the ordinary rules, being inflected according to the governing word; the second part, being itself governed by the first, is always in the oblique case, thus

^{جَاءَ} ^{عَبْدُ} ^{اللَّهِ} “‘Abdallah came.”

^{رَأَيْتُ} ^{عَبْدَ} ^{اللَّهِ} “I saw ‘Abdallah.”

^{مَرَرْتُ} ^{بِعَبْدِ} ^{اللَّهِ} “I passed by ‘Abdallah.”

In forming the dual and plural of proper names composed of the words ^{إِبْنُ} or ^{بِنْتُ} and another noun, and which are employed generally, as in the generic name of animals, etc., only the first portion is capable of receiving the inflexion, as

	MASC.		FEM.
Singular	^{إِبْنُ} ^{أَوِيَّ} "a jackal."	Plural	^{بَنَاتُ} ^{أَوِيَّ} .

But such compounds as ^{عَبْدُ} ^{اللَّهِ} being proper names of men, especially if they are well-known individuals, may make their plurals in the ordinary measure for quinqueliterals, viz. ^{الْعِبَادَةُ} ^{الثَّلَاثَةُ}; ^{فَعَالِلَةُ} "the three 'Abdallahs," *i.e.* 'Abdallah ibn 'Omar, 'Abdallah ibn 'Abbas, and 'Abdallah ibn Masūd, three celebrated authorities for the traditional sayings of Moḥammed.

CONSTITUENT PORTIONS OF PROPER NAMES.

(132). Proper names of men consist of three portions:

1. The ^{إِسْمُ} Name, as ^{زَيْدٌ} "Zeid;" 2. the ^{لَقَبٌ} or Title, as ^{زَيْنُ} ^{الْعَابِدِينَ} "Zein el-'Abidín (ornament of the worshippers); and 3. the ^{كُنْيَةُ} or Familiar Name, which is always composed of the word ^{أَبٌ} "father," or ^{أُمٌّ} "mother," as ^{أَبُو} ^{بَكْرٍ} "father of Bekr" (first born).

When the Name and Title come together, the name must always precede, as ^{زَيْدٌ} ^{أَنْفُ} ^{الْأَنْاقَةِ} "Zeid 'camels nose';" but when the Name and Familiar Name come together, the order is immaterial, as ^{عُمَرُ} ^{أَبُو} ^{بَكْرٍ} "Omar Abúbekr," or ^{أَبُو} ^{بَكْرٍ} ^{عُمَرُ} "Abúbekr 'Omar;" and when all three come together, they may be arranged in any order whatever. When the name and title are both single words, they may either be placed in apposition, or

they may be placed in construction, as جَاءَ سَعِيدٌ كُرْزٌ "Saïd Kurz came."

جَاءَ سَعِيدٌ كُرْزٌ	}	"Saïd Kurz came."
جَاءَ سَعِيدٌ كُرْزٌ		
رَأَيْتُ سَعِيدًا كُرْزًا	}	"I saw Saïd Kurz."
رَأَيْتُ سَعِيدَ كُرْزٍ		
مَرَرْتُ بِسَعِيدِ كُرْزٍ	}	"I passed by Saïd Kurz."
مَرَرْتُ بِسَعِيدِ كُرْزٍ		

But if they are either both compound, or one is compound and one simple, they are always put in apposition, as

جَاءَ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ زَيْنُ الْعَابِدِينَ	"Abdallah Zein el-'Abidîn came."
رَأَيْتُ عَبْدَ اللَّهِ زَيْنَ الْعَابِدِينَ	"I saw 'Abdallah Zein el-'Abidîn."
جَاءَ سَعِيدُ زَيْنِ الْعَابِدِينَ	"Saïd Zein el-'Abidîn came."
مَرَرْتُ بِسَعِيدِ زَيْنِ الْعَابِدِينَ	"I passed by Saïd Zein el-'Abidîn."

NOUNS WHICH GOVERN LIKE VERBS.

THE USE OF THE INFINITIVE OR NOUN OF ACTION AS A VERB.

(133). As in English, the infinitive or verbal noun may govern another noun in the objective case, as تَعَجَّبْتُ مِنْ شَرَبِ زَيْدٍ الْخَمْرَ "I wonder at Zeid's drinking the wine."

When governing the genitive, it has a passive sense, as تَعَجَّبْتُ مِنْ شَرَبِ الْخَمْرِ "I wondered at the drinking of the wine," i.e. at its being drunk.

When the noun of action is separated from its com-

plement, the latter is put in the objective case instead of the genitive, thus

إِطْعَامُ يَتِيمٍ "Feeding an orphan."

إِطْعَامُ فِي يَوْمٍ مَسْغِيَةٍ يَتِيمًا "Feeding an orphan in time of famine."

Similarly, when the noun of action is defined by the article, as لَمْ أَكُلْ عَنِ الضَّرْبِ مِسْمًا "I did not desist from the striking Misma."

Nouns which are not properly nouns of action may take the same construction, provided they are equivalent in meaning to the noun of action proper, as

بَعْدَ عَطَاءِكَ الْمِائَةِ الرِّثَاعَا "After your giving the hundred she-camels grazing at large."

بَعْدَ رَدِّ الْمَوْتِ عَنِّي "After his driving away death from me."

بِعِشْرَتِكَ الْكَرَامَ تَعَدُّ مِنْهُمْ "By thy associating with the generous, you will be numbered amongst them."

ذِكْرُ رَحْمَةِ رَبِّي عَبْدَهُ "The remembrance of my lord's mercy to his servant."

كَانَ قَتْلُ الْخَلِيفَةِ جَعْفَرًا فِي هَذِهِ السَّنَةِ

"The Caliph's slaying Jaáfer took place in this year."

And *vice versa*, the objective complement may be put in the genitive, as

وَمَنْعَ النَّاسِ كَافَّةً مِنْ مُحَاطَتِهِ أَحَدًا وَمَكَاتِبَتِهِ بِسَيِّدِنَا وَمَوْلَانَا

"He forbade people generally from any one addressing him or writing to him as 'my lord and master!'"

حَجُّ الْبَيْتِ مِنْ اسْتَطَاعَ إِلَيْهِ سَبِيلًا "His pilgrimage to The House (Mecca) who can find means thereto."

حُبِّيهِ عَلَّمَنِي التَّنَسُّكَ "My love for him taught me piety."

The same constructions are found with the nouns of action from doubly transitive verbs, as

إِنَّ النَّاسَ كَرِهُوا إِطْعَامَ مُحَمَّدٍ عَمْرًا خَبْرًا مَسْمُومًا

“Verily the people were shocked at Mohammed’s giving Amr poisoned bread to eat.”

If the verb governs its complement by means of a preposition, the noun of action may be used with a similar construction, as اِسْتَعْفَرُ اِبْرَاهِيمَ لِأَبِيهِ “Abraham’s asking pardon for his father.” This is especially the case in neuter verbs, as خُرُوجُهُ عَلَى السُّلْطَانِ “his rebellion against the Sultan.”

And if the noun of action is itself in a state of construction with a noun expressing time or place, the subject of the action will then be in the subjective, and the object in the objective case, as

اِنْتِظَارُ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ مُحَمَّدَ عَمْرًا “Mohammed’s waiting for Amr on Friday.”

Note.—It will be seen from the foregoing examples that, when the noun of action fulfils the function of the verb, either the subject or the object may be expressed by placing it in construction with such noun of action.

When the noun of action is undefined, especially in the adverbial accusative, or when it is in construction with its subject, it frequently takes its objective complement with ل, as

اِكْرَامًا لِحَاظِي “To please me,” instead of اِكْرَامًا خَاتِبِي.
تَسْحِينُ الشَّمْسِ لِلْأَرْضِ “The sun’s warming the earth.”

Vice versâ, the noun of action is frequently repre-

sented by the aorist of the verb, preceded by the particle ^{أَنَّ} or by the preterite with ^{مَا}, as

^{أَنَّ تَصُومُوا خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ} "That you should fast is better for you."

^{وَدُّوا مَا عَنِتُّمْ} "They would have liked that you should have perished."

THE USE OF THE AGENT, INTENSIVE AGENT, AND PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

AS A VERB.

(134). The agent may govern a noun in the objective case if it refers to a present or future time, as ^{هَذَا ضَارِبٌ زَيْدًا} "this is (a man who) is striking, or is going to strike, Zeid." Or if it be negative or interrogative, as

^{مَا ضَارِبٌ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا} "Zeid is not striking 'Amr."

^{أَضَارِبُ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا} "Is Zeid striking 'Amr?"

If it refer to a past action, it must be put in the usual construct form with the oblique case, as ^{هَذَا ضَارِبُ زَيْدٍ} "this (is the man who) struck Zeid."

The pronoun ^{نِي} of the first person, although properly used only with verbs, is sometimes joined to the agent when thus used, as ^{هَلْ أَنْتُمْ صَادِقُونَ نِي} "do you believe me?" and with the noun of superiority, as

^{غَيْرِ الدِّجَالِ أَخَوْفَنِي عَلَيْكُمْ مِنْهُ}

"(There is) another than the Anti-christ (who) inspires me with more fear for you than he does."

(135). So too the intensive agent, as

^{ضَرَابُ عَمْرٍا} "He who thrashes 'Amr."

^{ظُلُومُ قَوْمِهِ} "A great tyrant to his tribe."

(136). The passive participle may govern the nominative like its verb ; thus, just as you say ^{ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ غُلَامَهُ} “Zeid, his slave is beaten,” so also you say, ^{زَيْدٌ مَضْرُوبٌ غُلَامَهُ} “Zeid whose slave is beaten ;” construed with the genitive, as ^{زَيْدٌ مَضْرُوبٌ غُلَامِهِ} it would mean “Zeid with a beaten slave.”

When the noun or agent governs its complement in the objective case, it does not lose its *tenwīn*, but in the dual and plural the ن may be dropped.

THE NOUN OF SUPERIORITY.

(137). If the noun of superiority have the article prefixed, it is considered as a superlative, and agrees in gender, number and case with the noun qualified by it, as

^{زَيْدٌ الْاَوْفَلُ} “Zeid is the most accomplished.”

^{هَيْدٌ الْفَضْلِي} “Hind is the most accomplished.”

^{الزَّيْدَانِ الْاَفْضَالِ} “The two Zeids are the most accomplished.”

^{الْهَيْدَاتِ الْفَضْلِيَّاتِ} “The Hinds are the most accomplished.”

If it is to be used as a comparative, it takes ^{مِنْ}, and in this case remains always in the masculine singular, as

^{زَيْدٌ اَفْضَلُ مِنْ اَمْرِ} “Zeid is more accomplished than ‘Amr.”

^{هَيْدٌ اَفْضَلُ مِنْ دَادٍ} “Hind is more accomplished than Dād.”

^{الرِّجَالُ اَفْضَلُ مِنَ الْمَرَاتِمِ} “The two men are more accomplished than the two women.”

^{الرِّجَالُ اَفْضَلُ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ} “Men are more accomplished than women.”

It may be followed by an undefined noun in a state

of construction with it, in which case also it remains masculine singular, as

زيد اكرم رجلا "Zeid is a most generous man."
 هند اجمل امرأة "Hind is a most beautiful woman."

But if it be followed by a definite noun in a state of of construction with it, it may either agree or not with its noun, as

الزيدان افضل القوم
 or
 الزيدان افضل القوم } "The two Zeids are the most accomplished of the tribe."
 الهنديات افضل النساء
 or
 الهنديات فضليات النساء } "The Hinds are the most beautiful of (the) women."

The first construction is the most approved.

Comparatives formed from transitive verbs take the object in the dependent case with *ل*, as هو اطلب ليعلم منكم "he seeks more after knowledge than you."

Those formed from verbs of loving, hating, etc., also take the *object* with *ل* as المؤمن احب لله من نفسه "the believer loves God more than himself," and they take the *subject* with *الى*, as المؤمن احب الى الله من غير "the believer is more beloved of God than any other."

Those formed from verbs of knowing, etc., take the object with *ب*, as انا اعرف بالحق منكم "I know the truth more than you."

Those formed from intransitive verbs require the same preposition after them as the verb from which they are derived, as

هو اَزهد في الدنيا واسرع إلى الخير وابعَد من الاثم واحرص إلى الحمد

"He is more abstinent in worldly things, prompter to good, farther from sin, and more eager for praising God."

Frequently this use of comparative adjectives gives rise to an elliptical form of expression, as *دَوَّاحُوجٌ إِلَى مِنِّي إِلَيْهِ* "he needs me more than I him;" where *مِنِّي* is for *مِنْ أَحْتِيَاجِي*.

A similar ellipse occurs in the sentence

مَا رَأَيْتَ رَجُلًا أَحْسَنَ فِي عَيْنِهِ الْكَلَّحُ مِنْهُ فِي عَيْنِ زَيْدٍ

which will be explained further on.

Followed by *مَا*, the noun of superiority expresses the greatest possible degree of superiority, as

فَارَقْنَا أَحْوَجَ مَا نَحْنُ إِلَيْهِ فِي مَخَالِيبِ أَعْدَائِنَا

"He left us, when we had most need of him, in the claws of our enemies."

NOUNS EXPRESSING INHERENT QUALITIES.

(138). Nouns expressing inherent qualities may govern like verbs; they will be susceptible of three different constructions, according to the point of view from which they are regarded. Thus we may express in Arabic the idea of "the man handsome of face," in any of the following manners :

1.

<i>الوجه</i> <i>الوجه</i>	}	<i>الرجل الحسن</i>
------------------------------	---	--------------------

[In this example the article and noun of quality are considered as equivalent to the conjunctive and the verb, i.e. *الوجه الحسن* = *الذي حسن*, and if pointed with *هـ*, *الوجه* is

either considered as the agent or nominative of such verb = "who the face is handsome," or if pointed with ـ , الوجه , as the adverbial accusative = "who is handsome as to the face."] Similarly,

2. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{وجهه} \text{ or } \text{وجه أبيه} \\ \text{وجهها} \text{ or } \text{وجهه} \text{ or } \text{وجه أبيه} \end{array} \right\} \text{الرجل الحسن}$

"The man handsome of face, whose face is handsome, or whose father's face is handsome."

3. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{الوجه} - \text{وجهه} - \text{وجه أبيه} \\ \text{وجهها} - \text{الوجه} - \text{وجهه} - \text{وجه أبيه} \end{array} \right\} \text{رجل حسن}$

"A man handsome of face," etc.

In (1) we may also say الرجل الحسن الوجه , which is merely the ordinary construction, حسن الوجه "handsome of face," the article being prefixed to the compound expression formed by the two nouns in a state of construction (see p. 202).

The genitive is obviously inadmissible in the other examples, as it would violate the rule for the construction of nouns, see p. 201 (112).

In declining these forms of expression, the last word, which is considered as the subject of the verb, implied in الحسن , remains unchanged, thus

..... $\text{جاءني رجل حسن وجهه - الوجه}$ "A man handsome of face came to me."

..... $\text{مررت برجل حسن وجهه - الوجه}$ "I passed by a man handsome of face."

..... $\text{رايت رجلا حسنا وجهه - الوجه}$ "I saw a man handsome of face."

جَاءَنِي الرَّجُلُ الْحَسَنُ وَجْهَهُ "The man handsome of face came to me."

مَرَرْتُ بِالرَّجُلِ الْحَسَنِ وَجْهَهُ "I passed by the man handsome of face."

رَأَيْتُ الرَّجُلَ الْحَسَنَ وَجْهَهُ "I saw the man handsome of face."

When "fair of face" is expressed by the ordinary state of construction, the epithet "fair" is of course adjectival, and agrees with the noun of which it is an attribute, as

مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ حَسَنٍ الْوَجْهَ "I passed by a man fair of face."

رَأَيْتُ امْرَأَةً حَسَنَةَ الْوَجْهِ "I saw a woman fair of face."

جَاءَنِي رَجُلَانِ حَسَنَا الْوَجْهِ "There came to me two men fair of face."

And similarly where the adverbial accusative وَجْهًا is used, as

مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ حَسَنٍ وَجْهًا "I passed by a man fair in face."

رَأَيْتُ امْرَأَةً حَسَنَةً وَجْهًا "I saw a woman fair in face."

جَاءَنِي رَجُلَانِ حَسَنَانِ وَجْهًا "There came to me two men fair in face."

But in the other cases the words وَجْهٌ, وَجْهَةٌ, etc., being considered as the subject of the verb, implied in حَسَنَ, the latter word must therefore agree with them in gender and number, though not in case, as

مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ حَسَنٍ وَجْهَهُ "I passed by a man fair of face."

مَرَرْتُ بِامْرَأَةٍ حَسَنٍ وَجْهَيْهَا "I passed by a woman fair of face."

مَرَرْتُ بِرِجَالٍ حَسَنَةٍ وَجُوهِهِمْ "I passed by men fair of face."

مَرَرْتُ بِنِسْوَةٍ حَسَنٍ مَنَظَرُهَا "I passed by women fair of appearance."

رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا مَرِيضًا غِلْمَانَهُ "I saw a man whose slave was sick."

رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا مَرَضَى غِلْمَانَهُ "I saw a man whose slaves were sick."

In the comparative of the adjective in such an expression as مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ حَسَنٍ أَبُودُ "I passed by a man whose father was handsome," it will be necessary to change the form somewhat, and say مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ أَبُودُ أَحْسَنَ مِنْهُ "I passed by a man whose father was handsomer than he." If, however, the proposition be affirmative, but preceded by a negative statement, and the subject is distinct from the noun qualified, the adjective may assume the comparative form, as

مَا رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا أَحْسَنَ فِي عَيْنِهِ الْكُحْلَ مِنْهُ فِي عَيْنِ زَيْدٍ

"I have never seen a man with kohl¹ in his eye handsomer than it is in Zeid's eye."

But there must be two distinct ideas in such an expression, and we cannot say مَا رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا أَحْسَنَ مِنْهُ أَبُودُ "I have never seen a man whose father is handsomer than he," because the sentence contains only one idea, and the noun with which comparison is made is the same which is qualified by the adjective. In such a case the form of the sentence will be مَا رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا أَبُودُ أَحْسَنَ مِنْهُ.

OTHER WORDS WHICH ARE COGNATE TO VERBS.

(139). 1. Words which contain in themselves the meaning of verbs may govern an objective case like verbs. Such words convey either

A past sense, as

اِفْتَرَقَ "There is a difference between" شَتَانِ

¹ Powdered antimony with which the Orientals blacken the edge of the eyelids.

A precative or deprecative sense, as

دَمِيهَاتُ	"Away with"	=	بَعْدُ	"Be it remote."
آمِينَ	"Amen!"	=	إِسْأَجِبْ	"Answer our prayer."

An aorist sense, as

أَوْدُ or أَدُ	"Alas!"	=	أَتَوَجَّعُ	"I am in pain."
وَيْ	"Oh!"	=	أَسْتَعْجِبُ	"I wonder."

An imperative sense, as

صَمٌ or صَمِّ	"Silence!"	=	أَسْكُتْ	"Hold your tongue."
حَمِيْلٌ	"Look sharp!"	=	إِسْرَعْ	"Hasten."
رَوِيْدٌ	"Gently with...."	=	أَمَلْ	"Delay (it)."

Sometimes, as in the last example, they may be considered as nouns of action, in which case they may either take a complement in the genitive, as رَوِيْدَ عَمْرٍو "gently with Amr;" or they may be used adverbially without a complement, as رَوِيْدٌ "gently" = مَهْلًا.

رَوِيْدٌ, when it is considered as an imperative, may also take the affixed pronoun of the second person, in which case it is still followed by the accusative, as رَوِيْدَكَ عَمْرًا "gently with 'Amr."

2. Certain adverbs govern like verbs, as

دُونَكَ زَيْدًا	"Here's Zeid for you!"	=	خُذْ زَيْدًا	"Take Zeid."
أَمَامَكَ	"Go on!" (<i>lit.</i> before you)	=	تَقَدَّمْ	
إِيَّاكَ وَالْأَسَدَ	"Beware of the lion!"			

3. Also some prepositions with their cases, as

عَلَيْكَ زَيْدًا	"Take care of Zeid"	=	الْزَمْ زَيْدًا	
إِيَّاكَ عَنِّي	"Begone!"	=	تَخَّ	

All the above are irregular in their terminations; there is, however, one form which may be derived regularly from any verb, and used as an interjection, namely *فَعَالٍ*, as

انْزِلْ "Come down!" = *نَزَالٍ*.

اُكْتُبْ "Write away!" = *كُتَابٍ*.

Words of this kind conform exactly to the verb in their functions; that is, they govern, but are not governed, nor are they put in construction with a *preceding* noun, nor may they be preceded by the noun which they govern.

When they are followed by a verb in the aorist tense in such a connexion, as *صَهْ فَاحْدِثْكَ* "hold your tongue, and I will talk to you," the verb which follows has the final vowel apocopated as in the example (see p. 176).

Note.—Some of these words are susceptible of *tenwīn*, and are then indefinite; while those which have not *tenwīn* are definite: thus, *صَهْ* means "preserve silence in this particular instance," *أَسْكُتِ السُّكُوتَ*; but *صَهْ* means "be silent" generally, *أَسْكُتِ سَكُوتًا*.

Adverbs and prepositions with their cases, when they follow a negative or interrogative particle, take a nominative, as though some verb implying "abiding" were understood, as

مَا عِنْدَكَ مَالٌ "You have no property—*lit.* property (remains) not with you."

هَلْ فِي الدَّارِ زَيْدٌ "Is Zeid (abiding) in the house."

But this may also be explained by the rule for subject and predicate (see p. 236).

SECTION II.—THE SENTENCE.

PARTS OF A SENTENCE.

(140). A proposition consists of a subject and an attribute or predicate, and enunciates the existence of the former in relation to the latter. The word expressing this relation is called the verb. If simple existence be predicated, the substantive verb “*is*” is used.

(141). A sentence or clause beginning with a noun is called a *nominal sentence*, as ^{قَامَ} زَيْدٌ “Zeid stood up.” When beginning with a verb, it is called a *verbal sentence*, as ^{قَامَ} زَيْدٌ “Zeid stood up.” The proposition is either *major*, consisting of a subject and predicate, the latter consisting of a complete clause, as ^{قَامَ} زَيْدٌ أَبُوهُ *Zeid his father is standing*; or *minor*, and forming the predicate of another proposition, as ^{قَامَ} أَبُوهُ, in the above example. It may be both major and minor at once, as ^{يَذْهَبُ} زَيْدٌ ابْنُ غُلَامٍ *“Zeid, his father’s slave is going away.”*

(142). A clause (in which is included a verb, as ^{يَرْكُضُ} “he runs,” where the pronominal agent is implied, see p. 154) may serve as the predicate to another clause, in which case it may be placed in apposition with it, without the intervention of a conjunction, provided it occur after an undefined simple noun, as ^{يُصَلِّي} “he prays,” in the following sentence, ^{مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ يُصَلِّي} “I passed a man praying,” where ^{يُصَلِّي} is considered as the qualifying epithet of ^{رَجُلٍ}.

If it occur after a definite simple noun, as ^{جَاءَ} زَيْدٌ يَرْكُضُ

“Zeid came running,” it is considered as adverbial, expressing the state or condition of the noun.

The aorist indicative, following a preterite without the intervention of a particle, often implies an act consequent on the past time implied in the preterite, as أَتَى إِلَى عَيْنٍ مَاءٍ يَشْرَبُ “he came to a fountain of water to drink.” If the minor clause, consisting of or containing a verb, occur after anything but a substantive noun, it may be considered either as an epithet or an adverb, as

هَذَا ذِكْرٌ مُبَارَكٌ أَنْزَلْنَاهُ “This is a blessed notice which we have revealed.”

كَمَثَلِ الْهَمَارِ يَحْمِلُ أَثْقَارًا “Like the ass (*lit.* like the similitude of the) carrying books.”

In the first of the above examples أَنْزَلْنَاهُ is regarded either as an epithet of ذِكْرٌ, and in apposition with مُبَارَكٌ, or as adverbial of condition; and in the second يَحْمِلُ أَثْقَارًا stands in a similar relation to الْهَمَارِ. This الْهَمَارِ is not a really definite noun, but merely has the ألّ which marks species, see p. 157 (81), and is considered to be general and in a manner indefinite.

The Arabic grammarians give a great many other examples of clauses, which, by standing in the position of an inflected noun, may dispense with the conjunction; but the examples given above will enable the student to understand the principle of all similar constructions.

THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

(143). The principle which I have already suggested for the concordance of the Agent and Verb (see pp. 182, 183), will apply equally to the Subject and Predicate of

a sentence, and it will be seen that the following rules naturally result from it.

1. The predicate is always in the nominative or subjective case.

2. If both subject and predicate are definite, it is usual, for the sake of perspicuity, to insert the pronoun *هُوَ* masc. sing., *هُمْ* masc. pl., etc., which serves for the simple substantive verb “is,” as

اللَّهُ هُوَ الْحَيُّ الْقَيُّومُ “God is the living—the self-subsistent.”

أُولَئِكَ هُمُ الْمُفْلِحُونَ “They are the prosperous.”

Where the subject is a personal pronoun of the first or second person, the pronoun of the *third person* is used to form the copula, as أَنَا هُوَ الرَّبُّ إِلَهُكَ “I am the Lord thy God.”

The subject in Arabic is equivalent to what is sometimes called in Latin grammar a *pendent nominative*, and the predicate is any thing which is afterwards affirmed concerning it, as

PREDICATE. SUBJECT.

الشَّمْسُ طَلَعَتْ “The sun it rose.”

This must not be confounded with طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ “the sun rose,” as such an expression, consisting of a verb with its agent, may of itself form the subject to a subsequent predicate.

The subject may indeed be either a noun, as زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ “Zeid (is) standing;” or a detached pronoun, as هُوَ قَائِمٌ “he (is) standing;” or more than one noun, as زَيْدٌ غُلَامُهُ مُنْطَلِقٌ “Zeid, his servant (is) going away.”

The predicate may be either a single noun, as زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ “Zeid (is) standing;” or a sentence grammatically con-

nected with the subject, as زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ أَبُوهُ “Zeid, his father (is) standing;” or a pseudo-sentence, as زَيْدٌ عِنْدَكَ أَوْ فِي الدَّارِ “Zeid (is) he with you or at home?” or it may consist of several nouns or epithets, as زَيْدٌ فَتِيَّةٌ شَاعِرٌ “Zeid (is) a lawyer, a poet.”

When the predicate is anything other than a verb, the substantive verb “is” is omitted, as زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ “Zeid (is) standing.”

When the predicate is a verb, as in the sentence طَلَعَ الشَّمْسُ طَلَعَتْ, no ellipse occurs, since the pronominal termination تْ is considered as the agent to the verb طَلَعَ, and the sense is regarded as complete; see p. 154 (78).

The subject, if a noun, should be definite; but in the following cases it may be indefinite:

1. If the predicate be an adverb or a noun with a preposition (in which case the sense is complete), as

عِنْدِي كِتَابٌ “I have (with me is) a book.”

فِي الدَّارِ رَجُلٌ “In the house (is) a man.”

2. If it follows an interrogative or negative particle, as

هَلْ فَتَى فِي الدَّارِ “Is there a youth in the house?”

مَا خِلٌّ لَنَا “We have no friend” (*lit.* no friend is to us).

3. If it has an adjective qualifying it, as

رَجُلٌ مُؤْمِنٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ كَافِرٍ “A believing man is better than an infidel.”

4. If it govern another word by means of a preposition, as رَغْبَةٌ فِي الْخَيْرِ خَيْرٌ “a longing for goodness is good.”

5. If it is in construction with another indefinite noun, as عَدْلُ سَاعَةٍ خَيْرٌ مِنْ عِبَادَةِ أَلْفِ شَهْرٍ “An hour’s justice (is) better than a thousand months’ worship.”

6. If it occur in a prayer, as *سَلَامٌ عَلَيْكُمْ* "peace (be) upon you."

[It will be seen that indefinite nouns under these circumstances become really defined; they are therefore not really exceptions, although the grammarians give them as such.]

The predicate should be indefinite, but it may be definite if the subject is so also, as *هَذَا عَبْدُ اللَّهِ* "this (is) 'Abdallah."

OMISSION OF THE PREDICATE.

(144). Sometimes the predicate is omitted, as

خَرَجْتُ فَإِذَا السَّبُعُ "I went out, and behold! the wild beast
(*scilicet*, was before me)."

It is always omitted in the following cases :

1. After *لَوْ لَا* "were not," as *لَوْ لَا زَيْدٌ لَهْلَكَ عَمْرُو* "were it not for Zeid, 'Amr would have perished" (*i.e.* had not Zeid come to the rescue, etc.).

2. When it precedes a noun in the objective case, which could not serve as the predicate, as *سَفَرِي مَا سَهِيًا* "my journey (was performed) walking."

لَوْ لَا "were it not for," though exercising no grammatical influence on what follows, may take the affixed pronouns, as *لَوْ لَادَ، لَوْ لَاهُمْ، لَوْ لَأَتْ*, etc. These represent the genitive, not the accusative; for one says *لَوْ لَأَيَّ*, not *لَوْ لَأَنِي*, see p. 151 (75).

3. After *وَ* "and," in the sense of *مَعَ* "with," as *كُلُّ رَجُلٍ وَضِيعَتُهُ* "every man and his own trade," *i.e.* "every man and his own trade should be found together" (*ne sutor ultra crepidam*).

4. When it is any form of swearing, as *لَعَمْرُكَ لَا فَعَلَنَّ*

“by your life I will certainly do so and so,” *i.e.* “by your life (I swear).”

5. When it is an infinitive or verbal noun serving instead of a verb, as صَبْرٌ جَمِيلٌ “good patience,” *i.e.* “good patience (be mine)=I must be patient.”

(145). The subject may consist of an adjective with its substantive following a particle of negation or interrogation, in which case the predicate is not required, as مَا قَائِمَ الزَّيْدَانِ “the two Zeids are not standing.” Here the word قَائِمٌ stands instead of the proper predicate.

كُلُّ مَضْرُوبٍ بَنُوكَ “are your sons beaten?” In this case مَضْرُوبٌ serves for the predicate.

In these instances, as in the case of verbs and their agent, it is not necessary to put the word expressing action in the plural number, to agree with the noun in the plural, because it is mentioned first in the sentence (see pp. 182, 183).

CONCORD OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

(146). The rules for the concordance of the subject and its predicate or attribute are almost the same as those for the concordance of the agent and the verb; p. 235 (143).

If the predicate be a participial or true adjectival form and follow the subject, it agrees with the subject in gender and number, unless it be an irregular plural, in which case it is put in the singular feminine, as

كَانَ آبَاؤُهُ مُؤْمِنِينَ “Both his parents were true believers.”
تَعْمَى الْقُلُوبُ وَالْعَيُونُ نَاطِرَةٌ “The hearts are blind, though the eyes may see.”

But if it precede the subject, as in negative or interrogative sentences, it is put in the singular, as

أَدَاخِلَ الرَّجُلَانِ “Are the two men coming in?”
 مَا خَارِجَ الرَّجَالِ “The men are not going out.”

If the subject is a collective noun, the attribute may be plural, as كُلُّ لَهُ قَانِتُونَ “all are obedient to Him.”

If the subject is a demonstrative pronoun, it agrees in gender with the predicate, as it were, by anticipation, as تِلْكَ آيَاتُ اللَّهِ “these are God’s signs.”

INVERSION OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

(147). The predicate should follow the subject as a rule, but it necessarily precedes in certain cases.

1. When it naturally begins the discourse, as, for instance, an interrogative particle,

مَنْ فِي الدَّارِ “Who (is) in the house?”
 كَيْفَ أَنْتَ “How (are) you?”

2. When it consists of an adverb or of a preposition with its noun; and when the subject is undefined, as

عِنْدِي مَالٌ “I have wealth.”
 فِي الدَّارِ امْرَأَةٌ “In the house (is) a woman.”

3. When it has an affixed pronoun referring to the subject, as فِي الدَّارِ صَاحِبُهَا “in the house is its owner” (the master is at home).

4. When the subject is restricted in meaning by the particles إِنَّمَا or إِلَّا, as

إِنَّمَا فِي الدَّارِ زَيْدٌ “Zaid only is in the house.”
 مَا عَلَى الرَّسُولِ إِلَّا الْبَلَاغُ “The apostle has only to deliver his message.”

5. If the initiative and emphatic particle *لَ* precede the subject, as *لَزَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ* “Zeid is standing” (the one standing is Zeid).

6. If both the subject and predicate are definite; or if, being both indefinite, they act together as the subject to some other predicate not yet expressed, as

زَيْدٌ أَخُوكَ “Zeid, thy brother—.”

أَفْضَلُ مِنْ زَيْدٍ “More excellent than Zeid.”

OMISSION OF THE SUBJECT.

(148). The subject may be omitted when the context indicates plainly what it is, as

البَابُ الْأَوَّلُ “The first chapter.”

i.e. *هَذَا الْبَابُ الْأَوَّلُ* “This is the first chapter.”

Or conversationally, as in answer to the question *كَيْفَ أَنْتَ* “how are you?” the answer may be *عَلِيلٌ* “ill.”

WORDS AFFECTING THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

(149). Certain verbs and particles affect the subject and predicate both in form and meaning; they are the following :

1. The abstract verbs.
2. Approximate verbs.
3. Verbs denoting a mental process
4. Verbs of praise and blame.
5. Particles which resemble verbs.
6. Negative particles.

1. ABSTRACT VERBS.

(150). The abstract verbs are—

كَانَ He was.	بَانَ He was or did something in the night.
صَارَ He became.	مَا زَالَ He ceased not.
أَصْبَحَ He was or did something in the morning.	مَا بَرِحَ He left not off.
أَسْفَرَ He was or did something at dawn.	مَا أَتَفَكَ He desisted not from.
أَضْحَى He was or did something at noontide.	مَا فَتَى He relinquished not.
ظَلَّ He was or did something in the shady part of the day.	مَا دَامَ Whilst he remained.
أَمَسَى He was or did something in the evening.	لَيْسَ He is not.

These verbs are called أَخَوَادِ كَانَ “sisters of the verb كَانَ.” They put the subject in the nominative, and the predicate in the objective case, as كَانَ زَيْدٌ كَرِيمًا “Zeid was generous,” and لَيْسَ الْجَاهِلُ مَحْبُوبًا “an ignorant person is not liked.”

[*Note.*—These verbs each express a particular condition or phase of existence, and imply that the subject is in that particular condition. Now, the objective case in Arabic is always used to express *state or condition*, see p. 192 (108), and is therefore evidently required in this case. In the simple sentence زَيْدٌ كَرِيمٌ you merely mention the subject, and then affirm of him that he is, generally speaking, “a generous man”; but in the sentence صَارَ زَيْدٌ كَرِيمًا “Zeid became generous,” you affirm something more, namely, that he has entered upon the state or condition of being generous.]

Of these verbs مَا دَامَ and لَيْسَ are used in the preterite tense only, as أَكْرِمْ زَيْدًا مَا دُمْتَ قَادِرًا “be generous to Zeid while you remain able.”

[The abstract verbs can never be preceded by their predicate; as, for instance, we must not say مَا قَادِرًا دُمْتُ or مَا قَائِمًا زَالَ. But the predicate may come before the noun which is its subject, as مَا زَالَ قَائِمًا زَيْدٌ.]

The others, as كَانَ and the like, may be used in the other tenses, as كُنْ حَكِيمًا “be wise,” and لَا تَزَلْ أَمِينًا “do not cease to be trustworthy.”

لَيْسَ generally takes the preposition بِ with its predicate, as لَيْسَ زَيْدٌ بِجَاهِلٍ “Zeid is not a fool.”

In the case of the abstract verbs the same rules hold with regard to the order of the noun and predicate as those for the ordinary verb and its agent, or for the subject and predicate of an ordinary sentence, see p. 178 (99) and p. 240 (147).

The abstract verbs may be employed like ordinary verbs, putting the agent in the nominative, and dispensing with any further predicate, as

كَانَ الْأَمْرُ “The affair was (i.e. took place).”

أَصْبَحَ عَمْرُو “Amr passed the morning.”

قَدْ كَانَ مَا كَانَ مِنَّا وَاللَّهُ خَيْرٌ وَأَبْقَى

“What took place from our act and deed took place: and God is good and most enduring.”

In some cases كَانَ need not be expressed, as قَدْ قِيلَ مَا قِيلَ إِنَّ صِدْقًا وَإِنْ كَذِبًا “What is said is said,—whether it be truth or falsehood,” where إِنَّ صِدْقًا وَإِنْ كَذِبًا are for إِنَّ كَانَ صِدْقًا أَوْ كَذِبًا.

The noun of action of the verb كَانَ is frequently em-

¹ إِلَى is an abbreviation for إِلَى آخِرِهِ “to the end of it,” and is equivalent to our “&c.”

ployed like the verb itself, with regard to the government of the object, but the subject is put in the genitive in a state of construction with it, as

لِكُونِكَ قَوِيًّا وَكَوْنِ غَيْرِكَ ضَعِيفًا "From thy being strong and others weak."

The agent of the same verb may be similarly used, as

مُحَمَّدُ الْكَائِنُ نَبِيًّا وَآدَمُ بَيْنَ الْمَاءِ وَالْطِّينِ

"Mohammed, who was a prophet when Adam was yet water and earth."

2. APPROXIMATE VERBS.

(151). The approximate verbs are of three kinds.

1. Expressing the fact of the action of the verb being near or on the point of taking place, as كَرَبَ, كَانَ, أَوْشَكَ "he almost"

2. Expressing hope, or expectation, or probability of its taking place, as إِخْلَوْتُ, عَسَى, حَرَى "probably he . . ."

3. Expressing its commencement, as جَعَلَ, طَفِقَ, أُنْشَأَ "he began."

These all take the aorist, as

كَادَ الْفَارِسُ يَسْقُطُ "The horseman almost fell"

عَسَى زَيْدٌ أَنْ يَقُومَ "Probably Zeid will stand."

جَعَلَ زَيْدٌ يَتَكَلَّمُ "Zeid began to speak."

These verbs are only used in the preterite tense, except كَادَ and أَوْشَكَ, which have an aorist, as يَكَادُ and يَوْشِكُ; the latter has also an active participle, مُوشِكٌ. They must precede the noun, and the noun must precede the predicate.

أَوْشَكَتْ and عَسَى, expressing contingency, generally take the particle أَنْ governing the conditional mood. With كَادَ it is generally omitted: but it is always used with حَرَى and إِخْلَوْلَقَ; never with the verbs expressing commencement.

1. أَوْشَكَتْ and إِخْلَوْلَقَ may be used impersonally, as

عَسَى أَنْ تَكْرَهُوا شَيْئًا "You may perhaps hate something."

أَوْشَكَتْ أَنْ يَأْتِي "He may perhaps come."

2. عَسَى may be preceded by its noun, and may either agree with it in number and person or not, as

زَيْدٌ عَسَى أَنْ يَقُومَ "Perhaps Zeid may stand up."

الزَّيْدَانِ عَسَى أَنْ يَقُومَا
or
الزَّيْدَانِ عَسَى أَنْ يَقُومَا } "Perhaps the two Zeids may stand."

الزَّيْدُونَ عَسَى أَنْ يَقُومُوا
or
الزَّيْدُونَ عَسَى أَنْ يَقُومُوا } "Perhaps the Zeids may stand up."

3. In the other persons of the preterite of عَسَى the ي may be pointed with *kesrah*, as عَسَيْتَ "perhaps thou;" but *fethah* is the more usual.

4. عَسَى may be followed by an accusative pronoun, as عَسَاءُ "perhaps he," or حَسَاكَ "perhaps thou."

عَسَى is also sometimes used with the negative مَا, as

لَا حَوْلَ لِي وَمَا عَسَى تَغْنِي الْجَمِيلُ قَدْ جَاءَ مَا أَنْسَى الْغَزَالَ وَالْغَزَلَ

"I have no power left in me, and devices are not likely to do any good.

That has come upon me which makes me forget the gazelle and the *ghazal* (a form of poetry)."

3. VERBS DENOTING A MENTAL PROCESS.

(152). Verbs which express certain knowledge, suspicion, or calculation, are called **أَعْمَالُ التَّلَوُّبِ** “verbs denoting a mental process.” They are:

رَأَى to see.	خَالَ to fancy.
عَلِمَ to know.	حَسِبَ to reckon.
وَجَدَ to find.	زَعَمَ to suppose.
دَرَى to perceive.	عَدَّ to count.
ظَنَّ to think.	جَعَلَ to set down as.

To these are added:

اِتَّخَذَ to adopt	جَعَلَ in the sense of “to make into.”
صَيَّرَ to cause to turn into or become.	

These verbs govern two nouns in the objective case, one as the ordinary objective and the other adverbially, as

رَأَيْتُ زَيْدًا فَايِسًا “I saw Zeid (to be) an accomplished man.”

ظَنَنْتُ عَمْرًا صَادِقًا “I thought Amr truthful.”

اِتَّخَذْتُ بَكْرًا صَدِيقًا “I took Bekr as a friend.”

رَأَى and عَلِمَ may be used in the 4th conjugation with the double accusative, as

أَرَيْتُ زَيْدًا عَمْرًا مُنْطَلِقًا “I showed to Zeid Amr in the act of going away.”

أَعْلَمْتُ عَمْرًا بَكْرًا صَادِقًا “I made Amr know Bekr as truthful.”

When these words are used parenthetically, as an after-thought, or before a particle of affirmation, inter-

rogation, or negation, they naturally cease to govern the noun, as

زَيْدٌ ظَنَنْتُ جَاهِلٌ "Zeid is (I think) a fool."

زَيْدٌ صَادِقٌ ظَنَنْتُ "Zeid is truthful (at least I think so)."

عَلِمْتُ لَزَيْدٍ قَائِمٌ "I knew (it)—certainly Zeid is standing."

ظَنَنْتُ مَا زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ "I thought Zeid was not standing."

مَا عَلِمْتُ أَرَزَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ أَمْ عَمْرُو "I did not know whether Zeid was standing or 'Amr."

4. VERBS OF PRAISE AND BLAME.

(153). The verbs of praise and blame are four in number, namely :

نِعَمٌ	} For praise.	بُئْسَ	} For blame.
حَبْدٌ		سَاءَ	

نِعَمٌ and بُئْسَ require a definite agent or nominative, in conjunction with which they serve as a predicate to a noun, the latter, however, being placed after them in the sentence; thus—نِعَمَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ "He is a good man, is Zeid."

Predicate. Noun or subject.
literally, Good is the man (namely) Zeid.

You may also say نِعَمَ رَجُلًا زَيْدٌ with the same meaning; but in this case the grammatical explanation is—

Predicate. Adverbial. Noun or subject.
Good is (he) quā a man (namely) Zeid.

نِعَمٌ, بُئْسَ, and سَاءَ agree with the agent in gender and number. سَاءَ may be used as an ordinary transitive verb.

حَبْدًا is compounded of the two words حَبَّ "it is agreeable," and ذَا "that," the demonstrative pronoun being considered as the agent of the verb. The subject

of the praise implied by حَبْدًا is therefore merely a nominative in apposition with ذَا, as

حَبْدًا زَيْدٌ - حَبْدًا - الرِّجَالُ - المَرَاتَانِ - الرِّجَالُ - النِّسَاءُ - الحَبْدُ

“Bravo, Zeid!—Hind—the two men—the two women—the men—the women,” etc. etc.

We may also add مَا to all these verbs, except حَبْدًا, and say سَاءَ مَا, بِمَسَمَا, نِعَمًا.

5. PARTICLES WHICH RESEMBLE VERBS.

(154). Certain particles resemble verbs in their action upon other words. They are—

لَعَلَّ “probably.”

لَيْتَ “would that.”

لَكِنَّ “but.”

كَأَنَّ “as though.”

أَنَّ “that” (emphatic).¹

إِنَّ “verily.”

These are exactly the reverse of كَانَ in their mode of governing, for they put the noun or subject in the objective or accusative, and the predicate in the nominative case; thus—

كَانَ زَيْدٌ قَائِمًا “Zeid was standing.”

إِنَّ زَيْدًا قَائِمٌ “Verily Zeid is standing.”

Examples :

بَلَّغَنِي أَنَّ عَمْرًا قَادِمٌ “I have heard that ‘Amr (is) coming.”

كَانَ زَيْدًا أَسَدٌ “As if Zeid were a lion.”

لَكِنَّ زَيْدًا بَخِيلٌ “But Zeid is a miser.”

لَيْتَ الشَّبَابَ يَعُودَ “Would that youth could return.”

¹ This is only a stronger form of the particle أَنَّ “that,” the اُنْ أَتَوَكَّدُ being added as in verbs (see p. 28).

لَعَلَّ اللَّهَ غَافِرٌ “There is little doubt but that God is forgiving.”
لَعَلَّ الْعَدُوَّ مُقْبِلٌ “Most likely the enemy are approaching.”

If the subject of **إِنَّ** be an affixed personal pronoun, it must be repeated in its detached form with the predicate, as **إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ الْوَهَّابُ** “verily Thou art the Liberal One.”

The predicate of these particles follows the subject or noun, unless it consist of an adverb or a preposition with its noun, in which cases it may precede it, as

إِنَّ عِنْدَكَ زَيْدًا “Verily with you is Zeid.”
إِنَّ فِي الدَّارِ زَيْدًا “Verily in the house is Zeid.”

In such an expression as **إِنَّ فِي الدَّارِ صَاحِبَهَا** “verily in the house is its owner,” it necessarily precedes, because a relative pronoun cannot precede the thing to which it refers.

If the pleonastic **مَا** is added to any of these particles, they cease to govern the noun, as **إِنَّمَا زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ** “verily Zeid is standing.”

لَيْتَ is sometimes exempt from this rule, as **لَيْتَمَا زَيْدًا قَائِمًا**.

[The reason for the difference appears to be that **مَا** is not really pleonastic, but means something like “the fact (is),” and therefore becomes the real subject, but, being indeclinable, it does not exhibit this effect.]

The particle **لَ**, signifying commencement, is sometimes used with **إِنَّ**. If it be joined to the predicate, the regular order must be preserved, as **إِنَّ زَيْدًا لَقَائِمٌ** “verily Zeid is standing;” but if it be joined to the noun, the order is reversed, as **إِنَّ فِي الدَّارِ لَزَيْدًا** “verily in the house is Zeid;” but **إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ الْوَهَّابُ** “verily Thou art the Bounteous One.”

POSITION OF **إِنْ** IN THE SENTENCE.

إِنْ is used in commencing a sentence, or wherever it is necessary to break the grammatical order and begin a fresh clause, as

إِنْ زَيْدًا فَاتِمٌ "Verily Zeid is standing."

جَاءَنِي الَّذِي إِنَّهُ فَاتِمٌ "He came to me who—verily he is standing."

مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ إِنَّهُ فَاعِلٌ "I passed by a man—he is certainly accomplished."

Or simply to add a fresh clause, as **زُرْتُهُ وَإِنِّي ذُو أَمَلٍ** "I visited him, and certainly I was full of hope."

Or at the beginning of a clause connected with such particles as **إِذَا** "then," **إِذَا** "behold," and **حَيْثُ** "where," as **اجْلِسْ حَيْثُ إِنَّ زَيْدًا جَالِسٌ** "sit where there is Zeid sitting."

After such expressions as **فُلْتُ** "I said," **أَلَا** "is not?" etc., as

فُلْتُ إِنَّ زَيْدًا فَاتِمٌ "I said verily Zeid is standing."

أَلَا إِنَّ زَيْدًا فَاتِمٌ "Is not Zeid standing?"

Or before the particle **لَ** in such an expression as **عِلِمْتُ إِنَّ زَيْدًا لَفَاتِمٌ** "I knew it—there is Zeid standing."

Or after a particle of swearing, where the thing sworn to is introduced by the particle **لَ**, as **وَاللَّهِ إِنَّ زَيْدًا لَفَاتِمٌ** "by God! there is Zeid standing."

USE OF **أَنَّ**.

أَنَّ is used where something is immediately introduced by the verb, as

بَلَّغَنِي أَنَّ زَيْدًا فَاتِمٌ "I have heard that Zeid is standing."

عِلِمْتُ أَنَّكَ فَاتِمٌ "I knew that thou wert standing."

عِنْدِي أَنْتَ فَانْصِلْ "It is my opinion that thou art accomplished."

إِعْتِقَادِي أَنْتَ صَادِقٌ "My belief (is) that thou art truthful."

إِنَّهُ الْحَقُّ مِثْلَمَا أَنْتُمْ تَنْطِقُونَ "It is the truth like as you utter."

أَذْكُرُوا نِعْمَتِي الَّتِي أَنْعَمْتُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَأَنِّي فَضَّلْتُكُمْ عَلَى الْعَالَمِينَ

'Remember my bounties wherewith I have been gracious to you, and that I have made you superior to the whole universe.'—Kor. ii. 44.

وَإِذَا يَعِدُكُمُ اللَّهُ إِحْدَى الطَّائِفَتَيْنِ أَنَّهَا لَكُمْ

"And when God promises you one of the two parties that it shall be yours."—Kor viii. 7.

Even where the verb governs its complement with a preposition, أَنَّ introduces that complement, as

تَحِبُّبٌ مِنْ أَنْتَ كَاتِبٌ "I wonder that you are writing."

CASES IN WHICH EITHER إِنَّ OR أَنَّ MAY BE USED.

(155). In the following cases إِنَّ and أَنَّ may be used indifferently :

1. After the conjunction فِ, where it implies consequence, as مَنْ يَأْتِنِي فَأِنَّهُ مُكْرَمٌ "he who comes to me (he) is honoured."

2. After a particle of swearing, when the subject of the oath is not preceded by لَ, as وَاللَّهِ إِنَّ زَيْدَ قَائِمٌ "by God!—Zeid is standing."

3. After أَمَا "is not?" and لَا جَرَمَ "undoubtedly," as

أَمَّا إِنْ زَيْدًا فَأَيْمٌ "Is not Zeid standing?"

لَا جَرَمَ إِنْ اللَّهَ خَفُورٌ "Undoubtedly God is forgiving."

After such an expression as "I said," when it introduces the actual words of the speaker, as أَوَّلُ قَوْلِي إِنِّي أَحْمَدُ اللَّهَ "the first thing I say is, 'I praise God.'"

LOSS OF THE FINAL ن IN THE ABOVE-MENTIONED PARTICLES.

Of the particles treated of in the foregoing paragraphs, those ending in ن, namely, إِنَّ, أَنَّ, كَانَ and لَكِنَّ, may be shortened into إِن, اِنَّ, كَانَ and لَكِنْ; they then govern under the following circumstances—

إِن ceases to govern its noun, and generally takes ل before its predicate, as *إِن زَيْدٌ لِّقَائِمٌ* “verily Zeid is standing.”

(إِن appears to be used in this case to distinguish it from the negative اِنْ.)

اِنَّ has for its noun an indefinite pronoun understood, and its predicate can only be a complete sentence or clause, as

عَلِمْتُ اَنْ زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ “I knew that Zeid was standing.”
for

عَلِمْتُ اَنْهَ زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ “I knew that it (the fact) was thus—Zeid was standing.”

If the commencement of such a sentence be a declinable verb, it must be separated from the particle اِنَّ by one of the particles قَدْ, سَوْفَ or سَ, or else by a negative particle, as

نَعْلَمُ اَنْ قَدْ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ “We know that Zeid has come.”

يَعْلَمُ اَنْ سَوْفَ تَقُومُ “He knows that you will stand.”

اَيَحْسَبُ الْاِنْسَانُ اَنْ لَّنْ نَجْمَعَ عِظَامَهُ “Does man think that we shall not collect his bones?”—Kor. lxxv. 3.

كَانَ has also an indefinite pronoun understood for its noun, and the predicate must consist of a sentence, as *كَانَ زَيْدٌ اَسَدٌ* “as if—Zeid were a lion.”

If the sentence begin with a verb, the latter must take the particle قَدْ or لَمْ, as

كَانَ قَدْ قَامَ زَيْدٌ “As though Zeid had stood up.”

كَانَ لَمْ يَأْتِ زَيْدٌ “As though Zeid had not come.”

لَكِنَّ never governs a following word, because on the removal of its final ن it ceases to have any direct connexion with nouns, and becomes a mere conjunction, as لَكِنَّ كَانُوا مِنَ الظَّالِمِينَ “but they were of the unjust.”

6. NEGATIVE PARTICLES.

(156). The particles of negation, مَا, لَا, لَأَنْتَ and إِنَّ, govern words in the same manner as the verb لَيْسَ, see p. 88 (41), and p. 195 (110) 5.

The following are the rules to be applied :

مَا governs a word in the objective, if the negation be complete and continuous, and the order of words correct, as مَا زَيْدٌ قَائِمًا “Zeid is not standing.” But if the negation be afterwards qualified, or if the usual order of words be disturbed, it does not exercise this influence, as

مَا زَيْدٌ إِلَّا شَاعِرٌ “Zeid is nothing but a poet.”

مَا قَائِمٌ زَيْدٌ “Not standing is Zeid.”

لَا governs like a verb—1. If both its noun and predicate are indefinite.

2. If the predicate do not come before the noun.

3. If the negative be not afterwards qualified, as لَا رَجُلٌ حَاضِرًا “there is no man present.”

لَأَنْتَ can only govern a noun of time, when the noun and predicate are not both mentioned together, as نَدِمَ الْبَغَاذُ وَلَأَنْتَ سَاعَةٌ مَسْدَمٌ “rebels repent when it is not the hour for repentance,” for وَلَأَنْتَ السَّاعَةُ سَاعَةٌ مَسْدَمٌ.

إِنَّ, according to some grammarians, can never govern

a noun; others say that it may govern it if the proper order of words is preserved, as

إِنْ دُوْ مُسْتَوِلِيًّا عَلَى أَحَدٍ إِلَّا عَلَى أَعْزَفِ الْمَجَانِينِ

“He has no temporal authority except over the feeblest of madmen.”

مَا is frequently used with the particle إِنْ to corroborate the negation; in this case it exercises no grammatical influence on any following words, as مَا إِنْ زَيْدٌ جَاهِلٌ “Zeid is not a fool.”

THE ABSOLUTE NEGATIVE لَا نَافِيَةٌ لِلْجِنْسِ

(157). When the negative particle لَا denies the existence of a thing absolutely, it governs in the same manner as إِنْ, i.e. it puts the noun in the objective case, and the predicate in the subjective case; provided only that both noun and predicate are undefined, and that لَا introduces the noun, as لَا رَجُلٌ قَادِمٌ “there is no man coming.”

If the noun be grammatically unconnected with any other word, the *tenwin* is dropped, as in the example; the reason for this is that the whole *species* is the subject of the negative, and species is always in a manner definite, e.g. الْعِلْمُ “knowledge in the abstract” (*la scienza*), see p. 157 (81).

If it be a regular feminine plural, as مُؤْمِنَاتٌ, the *fetḥah* may still be used to represent the objective case, although the feminine plural makes both its dependent and objective in َ (see pp. 106 and 140), as لَا مُؤْمِنَاتٍ (or مُؤْمِنَاتَ) فِي الْبَلَدِ “there are no believers (fem.) in the town.”

Duals and regular masculine plurals are used in the regular objective case, as

لَا قَمَرَيْنِ فِي السَّمَاءِ “There are not two moons in the sky.”

لَا مُؤْمِنِينَ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ “There are no believers (masc.) in the city.”

If the subject of the negation be immediately connected with any other word, the *tenwin* is retained, as

لَا مَالِعًا جَبَلًا عِنْدَنَا “There is no one with us going-up-a-mountain.”

لَا مَرًّا زَيْدٍ حَاضِرٌ “There is no passer-by-Zeid present.”

لَا خُلَامَ سَفَرٍ حَاضِرٌ “There is no travelling servant present ”

[In the last example the *tenwin* is dropped, not on account of لَا, but because the noun is in a state of construction with the following one.]

But if the noun be definite, or separated by any intervening word or words from the negative لَا, it is not governed by the latter, as

لَا زَيْدٌ فِي الدَّارِ وَلَا عَمْرُوهُ لَا فِي الدَّارِ رَجُلٌ وَلَا عِنْدَنَا امْرَأَةٌ

“Zeid is not in the house, nor ‘Amr; and there is not in the house a man, and there is not with us a woman.”

In such cases as the above لَا should be repeated with each separate negation.

When there are several nouns to be denied, and لَا is repeated (such nouns being undefined, unconnected with any other word, and introduced by the لا), either or both of the above constructions may be used; thus

لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ
لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ
لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ
لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ
لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ

“There is no strength and no power but in God.”

The prefixing of an interrogative particle to لَا does not alter its government, as أَلَا رَجُلٌ فِي الدَّارِ “is there no man in the house?”

If the predicate would be otherwise ambiguous, it must be expressed, as *لَا رَجُلٌ أَعْلَمَ مِنْ زَيْدٍ* “there is no man more learned than Zeid.” But if it be obvious, it may be understood, as *لَا بَأْسَ* “there is no harm, *scilicet* عَلَيْكَ to thee.”

RELATIVE SENTENCES.

(158). The relative sentence in Arabic consists of four parts—(1) The antecedent. (2) The relative or conjunctive noun, pronoun, or particle. (3) The qualificative clause. (4) The pronoun referring to the antecedent, thus

^{رَأَى} ^{صَدَقَ} ^{رَأَى} ^{صَدَقَ}
 الرَّجُلَ الَّذِي رَأَيْتَهُ
 (1) (2) (3) (4)
literally, The man who I saw him.

RELATIVES OR CONJUNCTIVES.

(159). *الَّذِي* is for *definite* antecedents only; for *indefinite* *مَنْ* “who?” and *مَا* “what?” are used. In interrogation we may add the demonstrative pronoun and say, *مَنْ ذَا* “who is that?” *مَا ذَا* “what is that?”

The article *الْ* is regarded as a relative: (1) when joined to the agent or passive participle, as *الضَّارِبُ وَالْمَضْرُوبُ* “the striker and the struck;” (2) in such expressions as *الَّذِي حَسَنَ وَجْهَهُ* (= *الْحَسَنُ الْوَجْهَ*), “the beautiful of face” (see p. 228 (138)); (3) when (as it sometimes though rarely is) it is joined to a verb in the aorist, as in the following verse:

وَيَسْتَخْرِجُ الْيَرْبُوعَ مِنْ نَافِثَاتِهِ وَمِنْ جُحْرِهِ بِالشِّهَابِ الْيَتَقَعُ

“And he entices the Jerboa with *shihah*¹ out of the hole at the end of its lair, and out of the hole by which it enters,” *الْيَتَقَعُ* = *الَّذِي يَتَقَعُ فِيهِ* “into which it pops.”

¹ “*Shihah*,” a kind of sweet-smelling plant growing in the desert, especially in the mountain districts.

[*Note*.—A verb is sometimes put in apposition with the agent and the article, when the latter is thus used as a conjunctive; as

وَالْعَادِيَاتِ ضَبْحًا فَالْمُورِيَاتِ قَدْحًا فَالْمُغِيرَاتِ صُبْحًا فَأَثَرْنَ بِهِ نَقْعًا

“By the horses rushing about breathing hard, and striking fire with their hoofs against the stones, and making incursions upon the enemy in the morning, and raising up dust therein.”—*Kor. c. 1—4.*]

اَيِّ “which” (of two or more), “the one who,” etc., may be used in four ways, as

يَعْجِبُنِي اَيُّهُمْ هُوَ قَائِمٌ	} “He of them who is standing pleases me.”
يَعْجِبُنِي اَيُّ قَائِمٍ	
يَعْجِبُنِي اَيُّ هُوَ قَائِمٌ	
يَعْجِبُنِي اَيُّهُمْ قَائِمٌ	

اَيُّهَا are occasionally used to express something particular, and distinguished from anything else of the same nature; the noun so specified being put in the accusative, as

اللَّيْمُ اغْفِرْ لَنَا اَيُّهَا الْعِصَابَةُ “O God! pardon us—we who are a special band.”

نَحْنُ نَفْعَلُ كَذَا اَيُّهَا الْقَوْمُ “We will do so and so—we the tribe in question.”

اَنَا اَفْعَلُ كَذَا اَيُّهَا الرَّجُلُ “I will do so and so—I individually.”

Or اَيُّهَا and اَيُّهَا may be omitted, provided the noun thus specified have the article, as

نَحْنُ الْعَرَبُ اَقْرَى النَّاسِ لِلضَّيْفِ “We Arabs are the most hospitable of men to guests.”

نَحْنُ مُعَاشِرُ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ لَا نَوْرَثُ “We, the bands of prophets, never have heirs.”

أَيَّ followed by the genitive is also used to express admiration; if it come after an indefinite noun, it agrees with it, as جِئْتَنِي بِرَجُلٍ أَيَّ رَجُلٍ “thou hast brought me a man—and what a man!”

If it follow a definite noun, it is put in the accusative, as جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ أَيَّ رَجُلٍ “Zeid came to me—what a man (he is)!”

مَنْ and مَا. Although these are indeclinable, the pronoun referring to them must agree in gender and number with the thing for which they stand, as

رَأَيْتُ مِنَ الرِّجَالِ مَنْ لَا يُعْجِبُنِي “I saw a man who (masc.) did not please me.”

رَأَيْتُ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ مَنْ لَا تُعْجِبُنِي “I saw a woman who (fem.) did not please me.”

مَنْ and مَا are always masculine singular, unless specially defined to the contrary, or to avoid ambiguity, as رَأَيْتُ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ مَنْ لَا تُعْجِبُنِي “I saw a woman who (*lit.* of women (her) who) did not please me” (where مَنْ is feminine), and زَرْتُ مِنَ الْأَقْوَامِ مَنْ يَكْرَهُونِي “I visited people who honour me” (where it is plural).

OTHER CONJUNCTIVES.

(160). Amongst the conjunctives or relatives are reckoned the particles كَيْ, مَا, كَيْ, أَنْ, وَأَنَّ.

أَنَّ “that,” with preterite or aorist of verbs, as

تَعْجَبْتُ مِنْ أَنْ قُمْتَ “I wonder at *that* you stood.”

تَعْجَبْتُ مِنْ أَنْ تَقُومَ “I wonder at *that* you should stand.”

أَنَّ “that,” with a noun and its attribute, the substan-

tive verb “is” being understood, as *بَلَّغْنِي أَنَّ زَيْدًا قَائِمٌ* “I have heard *that* Zeid is standing.”

جِئْتُ لِيَكُنْ أَزُورَكَ or *لِيَكُنْ* “that” with the aorist, as “I have come *that* I may visit you.”

مَا “what,” “that,” as in the following examples :

تَحَبَّبْتُ مِمَّا ضَرَبْتَ زَيْدًا “I wonder *what* you struck Zeid *for*.”

تَحَبَّبْتُ مِمَّا زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ “I wonder what Zeid is standing for”
(but this last construction is rare).

لَوْ “if,” “that,” is used with either the preterite or the aorist, as

وَدِدْتُ لَوْ قَامَ زَيْدٌ “I would that Zeid had stood.”

أَوْدُ لَوْ يَقُومُ زَيْدٌ “I would that Zeid would stand.”

وَدَّ is generally used in this sense with such verbs as “to like” or “to be glad of,” seldom with any other.

NATURE OF THE RELATIVE.

(161). The relative must be one of three things :

1. A sentence consisting of a subject and predicate, as

جَاءَنِي الَّذِي قَامَ “He came to me *who* rose.”

رَأَيْتُ الَّذِي أَبُوهُ قَائِمٌ “I saw him whose father is standing.”

2. An adverb of time or place, or a preposition with its noun, as

يُعْجِبُنِي الَّذِي مَعَكَ “I like him who is with you.”

لِلَّهِ مَا فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ “To God (belongs) what is in the heaven and in the earth.”

But the meaning must be complete; you cannot say,

for instance, جَاءَ الَّذِي بِكَ “he came who by you,” nor جَاءَ الَّذِي آلِيَوْمَ “he came who to-day”

3. An agent, a passive participle, or a noun expressive of an inherent quality, as

الضَّارِبُ	المضروبُ	الحسنُ الوجهُ
“The beater.”	“The beaten.”	“The fair of face.”

These, however, can only act as relatives to the article *أل* when it is considered as a conjunctive (see above).

THE PRONOUN WHICH REFERS TO THE ANTECEDENT.

(162). The pronoun which refers to the antecedent agrees with it in gender, number, and person, as

جَاءَ الَّذِي ضَرَبْتَهُ “He came whom I struck.
جَاءَ الذَّانِ ضَرَبْتَهُمَا “They two came, both of whom I struck.”

Sometimes, though rarely, this correlative pronoun is idiomatically omitted, as in the proverbial expression *إِفْضِ مَا أَنْتَ قَاضٍ* “decide what you are the decider” (for *قَاضِيهِ* “its decider”).

The use of any but the third person as the pronoun referring to the antecedent is rare, although we do meet with such sentences, as *أَنَا الَّذِي أَعْطَيْتُكَ الْكِتَابَ* “I am *he* who gave you the book,” literally “I am who I gave you the book.”

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

(163). In conditional or hypothetical sentences the apodosis is generally introduced by one of the particles *فَ* and *وَ*.

The aorist subjunctive, pointed with *fethah*, and intro-

duced by **وَ** or **فَ**, is used in the apodosis of a conditional proposition; of this there are eight cases.

1. Imperative, as **زُرْنِي فَاعْرِمْكَ** او **وَاعْرِمْكَ** “visit me and I will honour you.” If the command be a noun, and not a real imperative (see p. 233), the aorist is pointed with **ُ** *dhammah*, as **صَهْ فَاحْسِنُ إِلَيْكَ** “hold your tongue, and I will treat you well.”

2. Prohibitive, as **لَا تَضْرِبْ زَيْدًا** **فَيَغْضَبَ** او **وَيَغْضَبَ** عَلَيْكَ “do not strike Zeid, or he will be angry with you.” Similarly, in negation, **لَا أَعْرِفُ دَارَكَ** **فَارْزُوكَ** او **وَارْزُوكَ** “I do not know your house or I would visit you.”

3. Precative, as **رَبِّ وَفَّقْنِي** **فَاعْمَلْ** او **وَأَعْمَلْ** صَالِحًا “Lord aid me, and I will do right!”

4. Interrogative, as **هَلْ لِّزَيْدٍ صَدِيقٌ** **فَيَرْكُنُ** او **وَيَرْكُنُ** إِلَيْهِ “has Zeid a friend he can lean upon?”

5. Polite invitation, as **أَلَا تَنْزِلُ** **عِنْدَنَا** **فَتَصِيبُ** او **وَتَصِيبُ** خَيْرًا “will you not alight with us, and you will meet with good treatment.”

6. Urgent request, as **هَلَّا تَأْتِي** **إِلَيْنَا** **فَنُكْرِمُكَ** او **وَنُكْرِمُكَ** “won’t you come to us? we will honour you.”

7. Desire, as **لَيْتَ لِي** **مَالًا** **فَاتَصَدَّقَ** او **وَاتَصَدَّقَ** بِهِ “would that I had wealth to give away in alms!”

8. Hope, as **لَعَلَّ** **الْحَمِيبَ** **قَادِمٌ** **فَنُكْرِمُهُ** او **وَنُكْرِمُهُ** “perhaps our friend will come, and we will honour him.”

Note. The aorist subjunctive always refers to future time; if the present be intended, it must be in the indicative mood, as

مَرِضٌ زَيْدٌ حَتَّى لَا يَرْجُونَ سَلَامَتَهُ

“Zeid is so ill that they have no hopes of his recovery;” or when, in the course of conversation, you use such a sentence as **إِذَا أَظْهَكَ** **صَادِقًا**

“then—in that case—I think you are speaking the truth,” in reply to some previous question expressed or implied.

PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

(164). The protasis and apodosis of conditional sentences like those given above should be aorists of verbs.

If, however, the protasis be an aorist, and the apodosis a preterite, the former must be apocopated, as *إِنْ تَصَبَّرْتَ تَفُزَّ* “if you have patience, you will win” (*lit.* “have won,” *i.e.* as we should say, “as good as won”), see p. 170.

If the protasis be a preterite, and the apodosis an aorist, the latter may be either apocopated or not, as *إِنْ صَبَرْتَ تَفُزَّ* “if you have patience, you will win.”

If both be preterite, there can, of course, be no apocopation, as *إِنْ قُمْتَ قُمْتُ* “if thou standest, I stand.”

The introduction of *فَ* prevents the apocopation of the aorist, as

إِنْ قُمْتَ فَيَقُومُ أَوْ يَتِمُّ أَوْ يَتِمُّ أَخُوكَ “If you rise, your brother will rise too.”

إِنْ ذَهَبْتَ فَلَا يَذْهَبُ أَوْ لَا يَذْهَبُ صَاحِبُكَ “If you do not go, your companion will not go.”

The apodosis may be even omitted, as

أَنْتَ ظَالِمٌ إِنْ فَعَلْتَ “You are unjust if you have done it.”

أَنْتَ ظَالِمٌ إِنْ فَعَلْتَ فَأَنْتَ ظَالِمٌ “You are unjust—*i.e.* if you have done it you are unjust.”

In the protasis of conditional propositions the verb must not be preterite, at least in meaning; neither must it imply a request; or be a neuter verb; or be governed by any of the particles *قَدْ*, *سَوْفَ*, or *سَ*; and it must not be preceded by any negative particle except *لَمْ* or *لَا*.

In the apodosis, should the verb be affected by any of the reasons which would have disqualified it from occurring in the protasis, it must be introduced by **ف**, as **إِنْ صَبَرْتَ فَسَتَنْفِرُ** "if you have patience, then you shall succeed." If it be an aorist, whether affirmative or rendered negative by the particle **لَا**, it may either be apocopated or not ; but if apocopated, it must be introduced by **فَ**.

The particle *إِذَا*, in the protasis always refers to present or future time, although the verb is mostly put in the preterite. Even if the aorist be used, the apodosis must have the preterite, but the sense will be still present or future, as *فَإِذَا جَاءَ وَعَدَ الْآخِرَةِ جَمَعْنَا بِكُمْ لَيْثِنَا* “when the promised term of the future life comes, we will gather you together.”—Kor. xvii. 106.

INVERSION OF THE VERB AND NOUN.

(165). We have already said that the proper arrangement of a proposition is

(1)		(2)		(3)	
Verb,		Agent,		Object, as	
(3)	(2)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(3)
ضَرَبَ	زَيْدٌ	عَمْرًا			
			"Zeid struck 'Amr."		

Either the agent or the object, however, may be placed first, as

- (1) زید ضریبی "Zeid struck me."
 (2) زیداً ضربته "Zeid—I have struck him."
 (3) زید ضربت غلام صاحبه "Zeid—I have struck his friend's slave."
 (4) { زیداً مررت به او یغلامه او "Zeid—I have passed by him, or by
 یغلام صاحبه his slave, or by his friend's slave."

In (1) Zeid is regarded as the subject, of which the verb with its object ضَرَبْنِي is the predicate.

In (2) some word governing زَيْدًا is understood, *e.g.* إِنَّ زَيْدًا and the clause thus obtained is regarded as the subject of the proposition, the verb and its object ضَرَبَتْهُ is the predicate.

If the object of the verb which thus precedes it be itself preceded by any word which ordinarily introduces a verbal proposition, it is put in the objective case, as اِنْ زَيْدًا ضَرَبْتَهُ ضَرَبْتُكَ “If—Zeid—you strike him, he will strike you;” اِنْ “if” being always used with verbs.

But if it be preceded by any other word, it is put in the nominative, as خَرَجْتُ فَإِذَا زَيْدٌ يَضْرِبُونَهُ “I went out, and behold! Zeid—they were beating him;” إِذَا being used with nouns.

If it be not preceded by any other word, it may be put either in the nominative or accusative indifferently, as زَيْدٌ or زَيْدًا ضَرَبْتَهُ “Zeid—I struck him.”

When an exception is implied, the second noun is in the objective case, as

كُنْتُ حَبِيبَكَ وَعَمْرًا كُنْتُ عَدُوًّا لِأَبِيهِ “I was thy friend, but (and) as for ‘Amr I was an enemy of his father.”

جَلَسَ مُحَمَّدٌ وَجَعْفَرًا أَذْهَمْتُ “Mohammed sat down, but as for Ja‘far I sent him away.”

قَتَلَ زَيْدٌ فَعَمْرًا لَمْ يَقْتُلُوهُ “Zeid was killed, but as for ‘Amr they did not kill him.”

ON CERTAIN INVOLVED FORMS OF EXPRESSION.

(166). There are certain involved forms of expression which, although they occur but rarely, it will be well to notice:—(1) قَامَ وَتَعَدَّ زَيْدٌ “Zeid rose and sat.” This is a

simple case; the actions follow so closely one upon another that they may be almost considered as one verb, of which the agent is expressed afterwards in the usual way. (2) *ضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا* “Zeid struck me, and I struck Zeid.” This seems a mere ellipse of the agent *زَيْدٌ* in the first verb, as though the speaker were mentioning it in passing as a reason for the action described by the second, as “he struck me—so I struck Zeid.”

Nothing but the agent can be so elided; you cannot, for instance, say, *ضَرَبْتَهُ وَضَرَبَكَ زَيْدٌ* “you struck him, and Zeid struck you,” because in this case the *ز* in *ضَرَبْتَهُ* would be ambiguous, being in fact a correlative pronoun referring to a noun not yet expressed, which is inadmissible in Arabic (see p. 179).

ظَنَّ and the cognate verbs, from the nature of the case, form an exception to this last rule, and you may say, *ظَنَنْتُ زَيْدًا قَائِمًا أَبَدًا* “I thought Zeid’s father was standing, and Zeid thought I was standing.”

When more than one agent is expressed, *one or other* of the verbs must agree with it in number and tense, as *قَامَا وَفَعَدَا أَخَوَاكَ* “your two brothers rose and sat,” where the first agrees with it as occupying the most important position; or *قَامَ وَفَعَدَا أَخَوَاكَ*, where the second agrees with it as the nearest. It is better, however, in all such cases to adopt the usual order of words, and say, *قَامَ زَيْدٌ وَفَعَدَا قَامَ أَخَوَاكَ وَفَعَدَا*.

EXCEPTION.

(167). The words used in Arabic to imply exception are—*إِلَّا*, which is a particle; *مُبَوَى* and *غَيْرَ*, which are nouns; *عَدَا*, *خَلَا*, and *حَاشَا*, which are particles partaking of the nature of verbs.

1. إِلَّا.

إِلَّا takes the objective case, if the preceding *clause* is neither negative nor interrogative, as قَامَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا “the people use—except Zeid.” Otherwise it is put in simple apposition with the noun, as مَا قَامَ أَحَدٌ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ “no one rose but Zeid.”

If the noun to which exception is made be understood, the noun excepted and following إِلَّا is put in the case in which such noun would have been, as

مَا قَامَ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ “There rose not save Zeid.”

مَا رَأَيْتُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا “I saw but Zeid.”

مَا مَرَرْتُ إِلَّا بِزَيْدٍ “I passed by but Zeid.”

2. سِوَى and غَيْرِ.

سِوَى and غَيْرِ, being nouns, place the thing excepted in a state of construction.

سِوَى is indeclinable, but غَيْرِ is declined, and follows the same rules as those given for the noun following إِلَّا, as

قَامَ الْقَوْمُ غَيْرِ زَيْدٍ “The people rose except Zeid.”

مَرَرْتُ بِالْقَوْمِ غَيْرِ زَيْدٍ “I passed by the people except Zeid;”

where it is put in the accusative.

مَا جَاءَ أَحَدٌ غَيْرِ زَيْدٍ “No one came except Zeid.”

مَا مَرَرْتُ بِأَحَدٍ غَيْرِ زَيْدٍ “I passed by one but Zeid;”

where it is either declined or not.

مَا جَاءَ غَيْرِ زَيْدٍ “None came but Zeid.”

مَا رَأَيْتُ غَيْرَ زَيْدٍ "I saw none but Zeid."

مَا مَرَرْتُ بِغَيْرِ زَيْدٍ "I passed by no one but Zeid;"

where it is declined.

حَاشَا, خَلَا, and عَدَا.

حَاشَا, خَلَا, and عَدَا, are generally construed with the objective case, عَدَا and خَلَا having for the most part the particle مَا prefixed.

جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ مَا عَدَا زَيْدًا	} "The people came except Zeid," <i>lit.</i> what is beside (or free from) Zeid.
جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ مَا خَلَا زَيْدًا	

If مَا be omitted, they may be construed with the oblique case, but this is rare.

لَا سِيَّامَا "especially," may take either the nominative or genitive after it, as أَعْجَبَنِي النَّاسُ لَا سِيَّامَا زَيْدٌ أَوْ زَيْدٍ "all the people pleased me, especially Zeid."

In the first case لَا سِيَّامَا زَيْدٌ is considered as equivalent to لَا وَشَلَّ مَا هُوَ زَيْدٌ, and in the second زَيْدٌ is regarded as the complement of سِيَّ and in a state of construction with it; the particle مَا being pleonastic, and exercising no influence on what follows, see p. 207 (121).

APPOSITION.

(168). Words in apposition are put in the same case, as جَاءَ زَيْدُ الْفَائِزِ "Zeid the accomplished came," where the noun and qualifying adjective are considered to be in apposition, and are both in the subjective case with —. But if the first be indeclinable, the second is put in the case which the first would have exhibited had it been declinable, as رَأَيْتُ ذَلِكَ الرَّجُلَ "I saw that man."

If the noun has lost its case-ending accidentally, as, for instance, by a vocative particle, see p. 199, (113) 2, it may take either ُ or َ, as يَا زَيْدُ الْكَرِيمِ أَوْ الْكَرِيمَ “Oh Zeid the generous!”

There are five kinds of apposition :

1. نَعَتْ Description.
2. عَطْفٌ Simple Apposition.
3. تَوْكِيدٌ Corroboration.
4. بَدَلٌ Substitution.
5. عَطْفُ الصِّيَانِ Explanatory Apposition.

1. DESCRIPTION.

(169). To this class belong what we should call adjectives; but it cannot be too strongly impressed upon the student's mind that there is no such thing in Arabic as an *abstract adjective*. Thus in the expression: رَجُلٌ كَرِيمٌ “a generous man,” the word كَرِيمٌ does not signify “generous” in the abstract, but rather means a “generous being,” of what kind the context must define. The strictly literal translation will therefore be “a man, a generous one.” This will explain how it is that we speak of “apposition,” rather than of “the concord of adjectives and substantives,” a phrase which could have no meaning in Arabic, and which would lead to much misconception.

The Descriptive either applies to the noun itself, as مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ كَرِيمٍ “I passed by a generous man;” or to something connected with the noun, as مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ كَرِيمٍ أَبُودُ “I passed by a man whose father is generous.”

NATURE OF THE DESCRIPTIVE.

(170). The Descriptive must be

1. A derived form, as

ضَارِبٌ } from ضَرَبَ.
مَضْرُوبٌ

حَسَنٌ "handsome," from حَسَّنَ.

أَفْضَلُ "more accomplished," from فَضَّلَ.

2. A demonstrative pronoun, as مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ هَذَا "I passed by (this) Zeid here."

3. A noun introduced by some other noun implying possession as, مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ ذِي أَوْصَاحِبٍ مَالٍ "I passed by a man the possessor of property."

4. A relative noun, as مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ بَيْرُوتِيٍّ "I passed by a man of Beyrout."

The noun thus qualified must be expressed; and if it be indefinite, it must be limited to one individual, as in the foregoing example.

The verbal noun is sometimes used as a descriptive, as مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ عَدْلٍ "I passed by a just man;" but this is for "a possessor of justice," and must stand by itself and be masculine, as though it had ذُو prefixed; see p. 208 (123).

A sentence consisting of subject and predicate may stand for the descriptive, as جَاءَنِي رَجُلٌ أَبَوْهُ قَائِمٌ "I passed a man (whose) father is standing." Or consisting of a verb and its object, as مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ يُحِبُّ الْعِلْمَ "I passed by a man who loves knowledge."

So too an adverb or a preposition and its case, as أَتَجَمَّنِي رَجُلٌ عِنْدَكَ أَوْ فِي الدَّارِ “I like a man with you” or “in the house.”

CONCORDANCE OF THE DESCRIPTIVE AND THE NOUN.

(171). When the descriptive applies to the noun itself, it follows it in gender, number, and case, and in taking the article or not, as the case may be, as

جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ الْفَاضِلُ “The accomplished man came.”

رَأَيْتُ رَجُلَيْنِ فَاضِلَيْنِ “I saw two accomplished men.”

مَرَرْتُ بِامْرَأَةٍ فَاضِلَةٍ “I passed by an accomplished woman.”

When the descriptive applies to something connected with the noun, it follows the preceding noun in number and case, and in taking the article; but in gender and person it agrees with what follows, according to the rules given for the concord of the verb and agent, see p. 178 (100), as

جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ الْفَاضِلُ أَبُودَ أَوْ أَبَوَيْهِ “The man came whose father is—or whose two parents, or parents are—accomplished.”

جَاءَ الرَّجُلُ الْفَاضِلُ ابْنَتَهُ أَوْ ابْنَاتِهِ “The man came whose daughter is—or whose two, or daughters are—accomplished.”

In these cases the singular or the broken plural may be used at pleasure, as مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ كَرِيمٍ أَبَاؤُهُ أَوْ كِرَامُهُ “I passed by a man whose parents are generous.” In short, the descriptive in these and in similar examples is considered in every way equivalent to a verb, see p. 228 (138).

2. SIMPLE APPPOSITION.

(172). Simple apposition is of two kinds, grammatical and logical. The first is when two words are joined by a simple conjunction, as

جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرُو "Zeid and Amr came to me."

مَنْ يَقُمْ وَيَذْهَبُ أَكْرَمُهُ "Whosoever gets up and goes I will honour him."

If the first word be a pronoun forming part of a verbal form, it must be repeated in its detached shape, as جِئْتُ أَنَا وَزَيْدٌ "Zeid and I came (*lit.* I came, I and Zeid)," unless a word intervene, in which case it need not be so repeated, as ذَهَبْتُ الْيَوْمَ وَزَيْدٌ "I and Zeid went to-day."

If the first word be a preposition, with its noun, the preposition must be repeated, as

مَرَرْتُ بِكَ وَبِزَيْدٍ "I passed by thee and by Zeid."

الْمَالُ بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَكَ "The property is between me and thee."

If the words thus connected are both verbs, they must agree in tense, as

قَامَ وَقَعَدَ "He rose and sat."

يَقُومُ وَيَتَعَدَّ "He rises and sits."

If the first of two words so joined be a participle governing a noun like a verb, the second may be a verb, as

فَالْمَغِيرَاتِ صَبَحًا فَائِثْنَ بِهِ نَقْعًا

"And by the cavalry making incursions on the enemy in the morning, and raising up dust therein."—Kor. c. 3-4.

Similarly a verb used as a noun may have a noun in apposition with it, as in the verse—

يَا رَبَّ بَيْتَاءَ مِنَ الْعَوَاهِجِ أُمِّ صَبِيٍّ قَدْ حَبَا وَدَارِجٍ

“Oh! many a fair one of the tribe of el-Āwāhij, mother of a boy who has crawled and is beginning to walk.”

where قَدْ حَبَا is equivalent to a participle.

PARTICLES EMPLOYED IN FORMING THE APPPOSITION.

(173). The particles employed in forming the apposition are—

وَ “and,” implying simple conjunction, as زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرُو
“Zeid and ‘Amr.”

فَ “and,” implying sequence or consequence, as
قَامَ زَيْدٌ فَعَمْرُو “Zeid rose and ‘Amr.”

ثُمَّ “then,” implying progressive series, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ ثُمَّ عَمْرُو
“Zeid came and then ‘Amr.”

حَتَّى “even to,” implying limited progression, as

مَاتَ النَّاسُ حَتَّى الْأَنْبِيَاءِ “The people died, even to the Prophets.”

قَدِمَ الْحُجَّاجُ حَتَّى الْمَشَاةِ “The pilgrims arrived, even to those walking on foot.”

أَوْ “or,” implying simple disjunction, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ أَوْ عَمْرُو
“Zeid or ‘Amr came.”

أَمْ “or” (after “whether”), as أَعِنْدَكَ زَيْدٌ أَمْ عَمْرُو “is Zeid or ‘Amr with you?”

إِمَّا “either,” as وَتَعَلَّمَ إِمَّا فِقْهًا وَإِمَّا نَحْوًا “and he learned either law or grammar.”

لَا “not,” implying simple negation, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ لَا عَمْرُو
“Zeid came—not ‘Amr.”

جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ بَلْ عَمْرُو “nay,” “or rather,” alternative, as
 “Zeid came to me—nay rather ‘Amr.’”

لَكِنَّ “but,” as

جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ لَكِنَّ عَمْرُو لَمْ يَجِ “Zeid came to me, but ‘Amr’ did not
 come.”

مَا جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ لَكِنَّ عَمْرُو قَدْ جَاءَ “Zeid came not to me, but ‘Amr’ has
 come.”

3. CORROBORATION.

(174). The corroborative apposition takes place either
 in (1) the words, or (2) the sense. The first consists of
 simple repetition by way of emphasising the word itself, as

جَاءَنِي زَيْدٌ زَيْدٌ “Zeid, Zeid came to me.”

ضَرَبَ ضَرْبَ زَيْدٍ “Zeid struck, struck.”

نَعَمْ نَعَمْ “Yes, yes!”

Or it is the use of synonyms, as

جَاءَ لَيْثٌ أَسَدٌ “A lion, a lion came.”

جَلَسَ قَعْدَ زَيْدٍ “Zeid sat, sat down.”

نَعَمْ جَوَابٌ “Yes, certainly!”

Or it is the repetition of a clause, as زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ
 “Zeid is standing, Zeid is standing.”

If it be required to repeat the affixed pronoun, the
 word to which it is affixed must also be repeated, as
 مَرَرْتُ بِكَ بِكَ “I passed by thee, by thee” [not بِكَكَ].

It may, however, be repeated separately in its nominative
 form, as مَرَرْتُ بِكَ أَنْتَ “I passed by thee—thee.” So, too,
 the initiative إِنَّ cannot be repeated without its noun, as
 إِنَّ زَيْدًا إِنَّ زَيْدًا “verily Zeid” [not زَيْدًا زَيْدًا].

If the pronoun be inseparable from the verb or preposition, etc., it must be repeated in its detached form, as

ضَرَبْتَ أَنْتَ “Thou hast struck—thou.”

ضَرَبْتَنِي أَنَا “Thou hast struck me—me.”

مَرَرْتُ بِهِ هُوَ “I passed by-him—him.”

In one case a verb in the third person singular has the corroborative detached pronoun following it in the first person, namely, after the particle of restriction *إِنَّمَا*, as *إِنَّمَا قَامَ أَنَا* “no one got up but me.”

أَنَا الزَّائِدُ الْحَامِي الذِّمَامُ وَإِنَّمَا يُدَافِعُ عَنْ أَحْسَانِهِمْ أَنَا أَوْ مِثْلِي

“I am he who provides them with livelihood, and who defends their rights; and none but I or the like of me protect their honour.”

By the “apposition of corroboration” which takes place in the sense is meant such expressions as “he himself,” “they—all of them,” and the like, which are expressed in Arabic as follows: my—thy—him—her—its—self; our—your—their—selves, are rendered by the words *نَفْسٌ* “self” or “soul,” and *عَيْنٌ* “eye” or “essence,” with the affixed pronouns. *نَفْسٌ* agrees in number with the noun, as

MASCULINE.

زَيْدٌ نَفْسُهُ	} جَاءَنِي	Zeid himself	} came to me.
الزَّيْدَانِ أَنْفُسُهُمَا		The two Zeids themselves	
الزَّيْدُونَ أَنْفُسَهُمْ		The Zeids themselves	

FEMININE.

هَيْدٌ نَفْسُهَا	} جَاءَتْ	Hind herself	} came.
الْهَيْدَانِ أَنْفُسُهُمَا		The two Hinds themselves	
الْهَيْدَاتُ أَنْفُسَهُنَّ		The Hinds themselves	

عَيْن is used in the singular only, as

الزَيْدُونَ عَيْنَهُمْ "The Zeids themselves."

الْهِنْدَاتُ عَيْنَهُنَّ "The Hinds themselves."

We may also say بِنَفْسِهِ "in *propria personá*," as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ بِنَفْسِهِ "Zeid came in *propria personá*," and so on.

"All of them" is expressed either by the word كُلُّ "all," with the affixed pronoun and agreeing with the noun in gender and number, or by the word أَجْمَعُ "altogether," employed separately; "both of them," by the dual word كِلَانِ, fem. كِلْتَانِ, construed in the same manner as كُلٌّ, as

جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ كُلُّهُمْ "The people came, all of them."

جَاءَ الرَّجُلَانِ كِلَاهُمَا "The two men came, both of them."

مَرَرْتُ بِالْمَرْأَتَيْنِ كِلْتَيْهِمَا "I passed by the two women, both of them."

(The word كُلٌّ is often used to express thoroughness, as هُوَ أَعْلَمُ كُلِّ أَعْلَمٍ "he is a thoroughly learned man.")

لَقِيتُ الْجَيْشَ أَجْمَعُ "I met the army all-together."

وَعَلَى آلِهِ أَجْمَعِينَ "And on his family altogether."

If it be necessary to repeat the pronoun affixed to نَفْسٌ or عَيْنٌ "self," it is to be repeated in the nominative detached form, and placed first, as

ضَرَبْتَ أَنْتَ بِنَفْسِكَ "Thou thyself didst strike."

ضَرَبَ هُوَ عَيْنَهُ "He himself struck."

In short the words أَنْفُسٌ = "self," أَنْتُمْ = "selves," كُلٌّ = "all," أَجْمَعُ = "altogether," are used in almost the same manner in Arabic as in English.

“Each other,” “one another,” are expressed by ^{بَعْضُ} “a portion,” repeated for each of the two parties to the mutual action, as

^{اِهْبِطُوا بَعْضُكُمْ لِبَعْضٍ عَدُوٌّ} “Go down, enemies to each other.”
^{تِلْكَ الرِّسَالُ فَضَّلْنَاهُمْ بَعْضُهُمْ عَلَى بَعْضٍ} “To those prophets have we given pre-eminence, one of them over another.”

4. APPPOSITION OF SUBSTITUTION.

(175). This is of four kinds :

1. Simple substitution of one word for another conformable to it in meaning, as ^{جَاءَ أَخُوكَ زَيْدٌ} “Zeid, your brother, came.”

2. Substitution to correct a statement respecting the whole of a thing, and to imply that a part only was meant, as ^{اَكَلْتُ الرِّغِيفَ ثُلَاثًا أَوْ نِصْفَهُ أَوْ أَكْثَرَهُ} “I eat the loaf—a third of it—half of it—most of it.”

3. Substitution of a word or phrase to correct a statement respecting a person or thing, and to imply that it is not the person himself or thing itself, but something connected with him or it which is meant, as

^{اَعْجَبْنِي زَيْدُ عِلْمِهِ - حَسَنِهِ - كَلَامِهِ} “I like Zeid—his knowledge—beauty—speech,” etc.

^{سَلَبَ زَيْدٌ فَرَسَهُ أَوْ ثَوْبَهُ} “Zeid was plundered—his mare—his garment.”

4. Substitution of a word or phrase to correct a *lapsus lingue*, or a statement erroneously made through want of reflection, as ^{رَكَبْتُ الْفَرَسَ الثَّقَاةَ} “I rode the horse—the she-camel.”

5. EXPLANATORY APPPOSITION.

(176). Explanatory apposition defines more particularly something that has gone before, as

جَاءَ صَاحِبُكَ زَيْدٌ "Your friend Zeid came."

أَنَا الضَّارِبُ الرَّجُلِ زَيْدٌ "I am the beater of the man Zeid,"
—see p. 202 (116).

In these two examples the word "Zeid" is said to be in explanatory apposition, عَطْفُ الْبَيَانِ.

A noun (substantive or adjective) in apposition to a vocative, may be put either in the subjective or objective; unless it be followed by another noun in a state of construction with it, in which case it must be put in the objective, as

يَا مُحَمَّدُ النَّبِيُّ "Oh! Mohammed, the Prophet."

يَا زَيْدُ الْعَاقِلُ "Oh! Zeid, the intelligent."

يَا إِبْرَاهِيمُ خَلِيلَ اللَّهِ "Oh! Abraham, the friend of God."

يَا رَجُلَ ابْنِ أَخِي "Oh! man, son of my brother."

Note.—If the word ابْنٌ occur between two proper names, and consequently lose its *alif*, see p. 12, (11) 3, the noun to which it is in apposition may be pointed with either *dhammah* or *fethah*, as يَا زَيْدُ بْنُ عَمْرٍو O! Zeid, the son of 'Amr."

ADMIRATION.

(177). There are many forms of expressing admiration in Arabic, as

لِلَّهِ دَرْدُ فَارِسًا "God bless him² for a horseman!" = "what a fine horseman!"

وَاهَا لِسَلَمَى ثُمَّ وَاهَا "Bravo! Selma! bravo! bravo!"

Such as these are of course irregular; but there are

¹ See p. 60, end of note 2.

² See note, p. 194.

two forms which may be derived regularly from any verb, viz. (1) مَا أَفْعَلٌ, and (2) أَفْعَلٌ بِهِ.

(1) مَا أَفْعَلٌ takes the accusative of the thing admired, as

مَا أَحْسَنَ زَيْدًا "How handsome is Zeid!"

مَا أَحْسَنَهُ "How handsome he is!"

(2) أَفْعَلٌ بِهِ governs the thing admired in the genitive by the preposition بِ, as

أَحْسَنَ زَيْدٍ "How handsome is Zeid!"

أَكْرَمَ بِهِ "How noble he is!"

The thing admired must immediately follow the forms مَا أَفْعَلٌ and أَفْعَلٌ بِهِ, and cannot occur in any other position in the sentence.

The thing admired need not be expressed with مَا أَفْعَلٌ if it be already sufficiently obvious from the context, as

أَرَى أُمَّ عَمْرٍو دُمْعَهَا قَدْ تَحَدَّرَا بِكَاءَ عَلَى عَمْرٍو وَمَا كَانَ اصْبِرًا

"I see Umm 'Amr, her tears pour down, weeping for 'Amr; and how patient she used to be!"

where أَرَى أُمَّ عَمْرٍو وَمَا كَانَ اصْبِرًا stands for أَرَى أُمَّ عَمْرٍو وَمَا كَانَ اصْبِرًا; the thing admired, in this case the pronoun هَا being sufficiently obvious, although not expressed.

The complement may be a proposition introduced by أَنْ or مَا, as

خَلِيلِي مَا أَحْرَى بِذِي اللَّبِّ أَنْ يَرَى صَبُورًا

"Oh, my two friends, *how fit* is it for a man of intellect *that he should seem patient!*" etc.

SECTION III.—THE PARTICLES AND INDECLINABLE WORDS.

PARTICLES.

(178). In addition to the particles already treated of in the course of this work, there are some others which it will be necessary to indicate. Of these the following are the most important :

لَوْ used in conditional sentences, and followed by ل in the complement, as لَوْ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ لَأَكْرَمْتُهُ "if Zeid had come, I would have honoured him."

أَمَّا "as for," as أَمَّا زَيْدٌ فَمُنْطَلِقٌ "as for Zeid, (he is) going away;" see p. 166 (87).

This last is chiefly used to introduce a subject, as in the phrase with which, after the formal exordium, most books commence, viz. أَمَّا بَعْدُ *lit.* "as for after," *i.e.* "after praising God," etc.

أَمْ interrogative, as

أَفَاقَامَ زَيْدٌ "Did Zeid stand up?"

أَزَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ "Is Zeid standing?"

When an alternative follows, it is introduced by أَمْ, as

أَدِبْسٌ فِي الْإِنَاءِ أَمْ عَسَلٌ "Is it *dibs* (syrup of raisins) in the vessel or honey?"

أَفِي الْحَابِيَةِ دِبْسُكَ أَمْ فِي الزِّقِّ "Is your *dibs* in the jar or in the leathern bottle?"

كَلْ asks a direct question, and is never used in alternative questions, as

هَلْ قَامَ زَيْدٌ "Did Zeid stand up?"
 هَلْ عَمَرُو قَائِمٌ "Is 'Amr standing?"

If used with the aorist, هَلْ gives it a future sense.

نَعَمْ "Yes."

بَلَى "Oh, yes; certainly!"

إِى "Yes"—used only with interrogatives or oaths, اِى وَاللّٰهِ

"Yes, by God!"¹

أَجَلٌ "Yes."

جَيِّرٌ "Just so."

إِنَّ "Verily."

أَلَا "Is not?" (before a vocative).

أَمَّا "Is not?" (before an oath).

The two last are also used in solemnly opening a discourse; اَلَا is also employed in making a petition.

هَآ "Hulloa!" When this is used with the demonstrative pronoun ذَا, the detached form of the pronoun often intervenes, as

هَآ هُوَ ذَا "Ho! that one there."

هَآ أَنْتَ ذَا "Ho! you there."

هَلَا } are used with the future tense to excite or encourage
 أَلَا } to the performance of an action; when used with
 لَوْلَا } the past tense, they imply blame or reproach for
 لَوْلَمَا } having neglected it.

CERTAIN ADVERBS OF TIME AND PLACE.

(179). حَيْثُ signifies "where," and is generally joined to a sentence.

أَيْنَ is an interrogative of place.

¹ In Egypt اَيُّوَا is commonly used for نَعَمْ "yes!" and in Syria and elsewhere اَيُّ is frequently prefixed to نَعَمْ: thus, اَيُّ نَعَمْ "yes!" اِى وَاللّٰهِ is also used, especially by Turks, as equivalent to our "farewell," on formally taking leave of any one.

لَدَى or لَدَيْ signifies “near” = عِنْدَ.

لَدَى becomes لَدَيْ with the affixed pronoun, as لَدَيْهِ.

[Note.—لَدَى governs its noun in the genitive, with the sole exception of عُنْدُوكَ, which it governs in the accusative.]

أَمْسٍ “yesterday,” but it means any day that is past. If it is in construction with any other word, it is declinable as an ordinary noun.

فَطَّ “at all,” used with a negative, and referring to past time, as مَا رَأَيْتُهُ فَطَّ “I have not seen him at all.”

عَوَّضَ (all three terminations being recognized) signifies “ever;” it is used with the negative, and refers to future time. If it be placed in construction with another word, it is declined, as عَوَّضَ آلِ عَائِشَةَ “for ever and ever.”

مُنْذُ and مِنْ إِذْ = “since,” إِذْ ذَاكَ “then (when it was so)” حِينَئِذٍ “then,” يَوْمَئِذٍ “on that day.”

إِذَا “when,” refers to future time even when joined with the preterite tense, as إِذَا كُنْتَ “when you are, or shall be....”

لَمَّا “when,” requires a complement, as فَلَمَّا رَأَيْتُهُ قَامَ “and when I saw him, he rose.”

إِذْ “when,” refers to past time.

أَيْنَ “where?” is interrogative or conditional.

أَيَّانَ “when,” is interrogative or conditional.

كَيْفَ “how,” is interrogative or conditional.

الآنَ “now,” refers to present time. This is not properly speaking a particle, but the adverbial accusative of the noun آنَ “time,” with the article.

إِذْ and حَيْثُ may have either a nominal or a verbal sentence for their complement, as

- جَاءَ أَبِي إِذَا زَيْدٌ أَمِيرٌ "My father came when Zeid was Emír."
 مَاتَ أَبِي إِذَا وَلِدٌ عَمْرٌ "My father died when Omar was born."
 جَلَسْتُ حَيْثُ أَنْتَ جَالِسٌ "I sat where you are sitting."
 حَيْثُ أَقَامَ السُّلْطَانُ أَقْمَتُ "Where the Sultan stays, there will I stay."

Note.—وَحِينَ، وَيَوْمَ and سَاعَةً imitate the construction of إِذَا, as

- هَذَا يَوْمٌ يَنْفَعُ الصَّادِقِينَ صِدْقُهُمْ "This is the day when their sincerity shall profit the sincere."
 حِينَ أَنْتَ مِنْزِلِيَا "When she came to her house."
 مِنْ يَوْمٍ حَدَّثَنِي "Since the day he spoke to me."

أَيَّ "that is," is used especially to introduce a comment upon or explanation of a difficult word, *e.g.* هَذَا عَسْجَدٌ أَيْ ذَهَبٌ "this is 'asjad, i.e. gold."

سَوْفَ and سَوَفَ are used with the aorist of verbs to impart a distinctly future sense, سَوَفَ being the more emphatic of the two.

قَدْ with the aorist expresses hope, it may be rendered in English by "I suppose," as قَدْ يَتَقَدَّمُ الْمَسَافِرُ "the traveller is approaching, I suppose." Like its English equivalent, it is used ironically, as قَدْ يَصَدِّقُ الْكَذُوبُ "a liar will speak the truth, I suppose." With the preterite it implies the accomplishment of an expected action, as

- قَدْ رَكِبَ الْأَمِيرُ "The Emír is mounted" (said to people who are expecting his coming).
 جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَقَدْ رَكِبَ "Zeid came—he was riding too."

كَأَنَّ "certainly not," said to one who tells you to do a thing, or makes an assertion.

PLEONASTIC PARTICLES.

(180). Pleonastic particles are.

بِ after *كَيْسَ* "it is not."

لِ "to" is sometimes, though rarely, so used, as
شَكَرْتُ لَهُ.

مَا with وَ in such sentences as مَا أَشْرَكْنَا نَحْنُ وَلَا آبَاؤُنَا
"we have never been polytheists, neither we nor our fathers."

مَا in conditional sentences (see p. 175).

مَا after عَنْ and مِنْ, in which case it does not prevent them from governing the genitive as before.

مَا after رَبِّ, see p. 197 (111).

مَا after كَمَا, as كَمَا "like what" = "as."

[Note.—In فِيمَا "whilst," and كُلَّمَا "whenever," the مَا and the word to which it is joined should always be written as one word.]

إِنْ after the negative مَا, as مَا إِنْ زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ "Zeid is not standing," see p. 254.

لَمَّا أَنْ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ جِئْنَا "when that Zeid went we went."

INDECLINABLE WORDS.

(181). Indeclinable words, *i.e.* those which do not change their terminations to indicate the different cases, are the following:

Particles.

The preterite and imperative of verbs (see p. 26, note: the pronominal prefixes and affixes being considered as separate words).

The aorist when followed by the energetic نَ or يَ.

3. The first portion of compound proper names is indeclinable, as **خَضِرْمُوتُ**, **بَعْلَبُكُ** (see p. 220).

2. كِنَايَات METONYMS.

(183). These are

1. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{كَيْتَ كَيْتَ} \\ \text{ذَيْتَ ذَيْتَ} \end{array} \right\} \text{“So and so.”}$

These are used with or without the conjunction **و**, as

كَانَ مِنْ الْأَمْرِ كَيْتَ وَكَيْتَ “The affair was so and so.”

قُلْتُ لَهُ ذَيْتَ ذَيْتَ “I said to him so and so.”

2. **كَمْ** “how many?”

This is construed either with the adverbial accusative, or with the genitive, with or without **مِنْ**.

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{كَمْ دِرْهَمًا} \\ \text{كَمْ دِرْهَمٍ} \\ \text{كَمْ مِنْ دِرْهَمٍ} \end{array} \right\} \text{“How many dirhems?”}$

If it is separated from the noun to which it refers, the latter is always in the accusative, as **كَمْ لِي عَبْدًا** “How many slaves have I?”

3. **كَايَ** “how many!” The predicate of this is generally a sentence, as in the verse

فَكَايَ مِنْ أَمْسَى أَمْسَى الْإِنْسَى نَالَ لَوْ يَعْنِيهِ قَوْلِي وَكَايَ

“How many griefs that the physician cannot heal does he suffer! Ah! would that my saying ‘how many,’ could express it!”

4. **كَذَا** “so and so,” “so many,” which always take the accusative, as **عِنْدِي كَذَا دِرْهَمًا** “I have such and such a number of dirhems.”

It may be also repeated with or without the conjunc-

tion, as ^{لَئِنْ كَذَبْتُ كَذَابًا} “I had so many dirhems.”

3. ADVERBS OF TIME AND PLACE.

(184). Some indeclinable adverbs of place may be used absolutely without a governed noun, and are then pointed with ^{ـَ} *dhammah*. They are—

^{قَبْلُ} before (of time).	^{أَمَامُ} before, in front (ditto).
^{بَعْدُ} after (ditto).	^{خَلْفُ} behind.
^{تَحْتُ} under.	^{وَرَاءُ} behind.
^{فَوْقُ} above.	^{دُونُ} down.
^{قُدَّامُ} before (of place).	^{عَلُ} up.

^{غَيْرُ} “else,” is also sometimes so used, but in this case some such word as ^{مَا} = “what is,” is supposed to be omitted: it occurs after ^{لَيْسَ} and ^{لَا}, as ^{قَبَضْتُ عَشْرَةَ لَا غَيْرَ} “I caught ten, nothing else.”

^{حَسْبُ} “enough,” as ^{يُعْجِبُنِي كَلَامُهُ حَسْبُ} “I like his speech well enough.”

The declinable adverbs are sometimes made to govern a sentence, in which case they are pointed with *fethah*, as ^{حِينَ عَاتَبْتُ الْمَشِيبَ} “the time I reproached old age.” If they are followed by anything but a preterite, the declined form is preferred, as ^{يَوْمَ يَنْفَعُ الصَّادِقِينَ صِدْقُهُمْ} “the day their truth shall profit the truthful.”

^{مِثْلُ} “like,” when followed by ^{أَنْ} or ^{مَا}, is pointed with *fethah* and not further declined, as

^{مِثْلَمَا قَامَ}
^{مِثْلُ أَنْ يَقُومَ}
^{مِثْلُ أَنَّهُ يَقُومَ} } ^{قَامْتُ} “I rose like he rose,”
 or “like he rises.”

SUMMARY OF THE PRINCIPLES OF ARABIC SYNTAX.

(185). If we analyze Arabic sentences by the rules of European syntax, we shall find them full of anomalies. But if we discard our preconceived notions as to the concord of substantive and adjective, nominative case and verb, etc., and look at the question from an Arabic point of view, we shall find them consistent and logical. The following are the principal points of Arabic syntax, to which the attention of the student is directed.

1. Sentences are composed of nouns, verbs, and particles.

2. Arabic nouns are all *concrete*; that is, they are all what we should call substantives, and do not express *abstract* ideas.

3. The verbs contain a pronoun inherent in the form, which is their real agent.

Consequently, in analyzing the sentence جَاءَ زَيْدٌ الْكَرِيمُ "Zeid the generous came," rather than say, as in European languages, that زَيْدٌ is the nominative or agent to the verb جَاءَ, and that الْكَرِيمُ is an adjective agreeing with زَيْدٌ, I should prefer to say that the true explanation is—

جَاءَ "He came" (the agent *he* being contained in the word جَاءَ).

زَيْدٌ "I mean Zeid" (Zeid being the *name* of the agent اِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ, and therefore in apposition with it).

اَلْكَرِيمُ "The generous one" (also in apposition with the agent or with the name).

4. One noun may define or determine another; such a state of dependence is indicated by the dependent case, as كِتَابُ الرَّجُلِ "the book of the man."

The *indefinite* nature of a noun is expressed by *tenwīn*.

The definite nature of a noun by the loss of the *tenwīn*; and, if it stand by itself, except it be a proper name, by the addition of the article.

The absence of both *tenwīn* and article shows that the noun, unless it be a proper name, is connected with that which immediately follows it.

5. A sentence naturally consists of a subject and predicate, that is, the thing about which we are going to speak, and some statement concerning it, as

SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.
زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ	“Zeid (is) standing.”

Both subject and predicate are put in the subjective case with dhammah.

The simple logical copula “*is*,” is generally omitted; if emphasis be required, the pronoun is used to supply its place, as زَيْدٌ هُوَ قَائِمٌ “Zeid *he* (is) standing.”

The predicate may consist of or contain a verb, as ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ “Zeid struck.” This is properly “*He struck*,” namely “*Zeid*.” The agent “*he*” being contained in the verb, and the name of such agent being subsequently mentioned for the sake of clearness, hence it follows that the natural order of words is to place the *so-called* agent after the verb.

But if the verb is active or transitive, there must be also an object on which the action falls, as ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا “Zeid struck ‘Amr.”

The object is put in the objective case with fethah.

If it is neuter or intransitive, further explanation may be needed as to the *state or condition* of the agent, as قَامَ زَيْدٌ مُسْرِعًا “Zeid rose hastily.”

State or condition is always expressed by the objective case.

I have said that both subject and predicate are put in the direct case, as in the sentence "Zeid (is) standing," in which the logical copula "is," and a noun or a verb with its true inherent pronominal nominative, form the predicate.

If, however, we wish to express *existence in a state of—* or, *the fact of becoming*, that is, *of assuming a certain condition*—it is clear that by the rule above given, such state must be expressed by the objective case, as

كَانَ زَيْدٌ نَائِمًا "Zeid was standing."

صَارَ زَيْدٌ خَيَّاطًا "Zeid became a tailor."

Hence the rule that كَانَ and similar verbs put the predicate in the objective case.

6. Particles modify the sentence by extending or restricting the action of the verb. Some few, إِنَّ and the like, are exactly the reverse of كَانَ, see p. 248 (154), putting the subject in the objective case, and the predicate in the nominative, thus إِنَّ زَيْدًا لَّنَائِمٌ "verily, Zeid is standing." Here the predicate is introduced by a second or subordinate initial particle ل. The explanation of this seems to be—

إِنَّ I am going to speak of my subject.

زَيْدًا quā "Zeid," i.e. in his condition of Zeid (whence the use of the objective case).

لَّنَائِمٌ "Well—(ل) he is standing" (which last becomes, as it were, a new predicate, and is therefore properly put in the nominative).

These are the principal points which the student should bear in mind. Having mastered these, and made himself familiar with the further details given in the course of the work, he should study some easy native grammar, such as the *Ajrumíyeh*. This he will be able to do without difficulty with the help of the Glossary of technical terms at the end of this book

PART III.—PROSODY.

SECTION I.—THE METRE.

(186). A knowledge of Prosody is absolutely necessary to the student of Arabic, since it enables him to correct the errors of copyists and printers, and, in this way, to understand passages which would be otherwise obscure.

NOMENCLATURE.

(187). The technical name for prosody is ^{علم العروض} *ʿilm al-ʿarūḍ*, the word ^{عروض} *ʿarūḍ* signifying a “pattern” or “standard of comparison.” It is also called ^{علم الخليل} *ʿilm al-khalīl*, from the name of the inventor of the system.

The Arabs have instituted a fanciful comparison between “a verse of poetry,” ^{بَيْتُ شِعْرِ} *bayt shiʿr* (*lit.* “a house of poetry”) and “a tent,” ^{بَيْتُ شَعَرٍ} *bayt shaʿr*, *lit.* “a house of hair (cloth).”

The parts of the ^{بَيْتُ شِعْرِ} *bayt shiʿr* or “verse” are named after those of the ^{بَيْتُ شَعَرٍ} *bayt shaʿr* or “tent,” thus:—Each of the two hemistichs of which the ^{بَيْتُ} *bayt* is composed is called a ^{مِصْرَاعٌ} *miṣraʿ* “one of the two flaps which form the folding-door of the tent.” The first of these is called the ^{صَدْرٌ} *ṣadr* or “fore-part,” the second the ^{خِزْفٌ} *khizf* or “hind-part.”

Each of the ^{مِصْرَاعَانِ} *miṣraʿān* consist of “feet,” called ^{أَجْزَاءٌ} *ajzāʾ* (sing. ^{جُزْءٌ} *juʾʾ*) “portions” when spoken of as integral parts

of the verse; but when spoken of in the abstract they are called تَفَاعِيلُ (sing. تَفْعِيلٌ), *i.e.* “representing the measure by parts of the root فَعَّلَ” (see p. 19).

The last foot of the first مِصْرَاعٌ is called the عَرُوضٌ, as it determines the metre; the last foot of the second مِصْرَاعٌ is called the ضَرْبٌ, or “class,” and determines to what subdivision of a particular metre the verse belongs.

The opening foot of the verse is called the صَدْرٌ; the first foot of the second مِصْرَاعٌ is called the اِبْتِدَاءٌ “beginning;” and all the remaining parts are included in the general term حَشْوٌ “stuffing.”

The metres are called بُحُورٌ (singular بَحْرٌ). This word means “sea,” but in its primary signification it means “extent” or “space,” and is applied to the “space” covered by the بَيْتٌ شَعْرٍ, or “tent.”

A complete poem in Arabic is called قَصِيدَةٌ; it should contain not less than thirteen or more than one hundred and twenty distichs (بَيْتٌ, pl. أَبْيَاتٌ).

The first two hemistichs مِصْرَاعَانِ rhyme together, and *the same rhyme* is repeated at the end of every second hemistich throughout the poem.

The two rhyming hemistichs with which the poem commences are called the مَلَأَعٌ “exordium.”

A poem without a مَلَأَعٌ, and consisting of only a few verses, is called طَعْمَةٌ “fragment.”

The scansion of a verse, *i.e.* its resolution into the constituent feet تَفَاعِيلُ, is called تَقْطِيعٌ “cutting up.”

ELEMENTS OF WHICH THE FEET ARE COMPOSED.

(188). The elements of which the feet are composed are not, as in Latin prosody, merely long and short syllables, but certain rhythmical sounds or notes; namely,

ARABIC NAME AND SYMBOL.	LATIN NAME AND SYMBOL.
سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ تَنَ light chord.	— (hemi-spondeus).
سَبَبٌ ثَقِيلٌ تَنَ heavy chord.	— — (dibrach).
وَتْدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ تَنَنَ undivided bar.	— — (iambus).
وَتْدٌ مَفْرُوقٌ تَانَ divided bar.	— — (trochee).
فَاعِلَةٌ صَغْرَى تَتَنَنَ minor stay.	— — — (anapæst).
فَاعِلَةٌ كَبْرَى تَنَنَنَنَ major stay.	— — — (pyrrichio-iambus).

In the nomenclature of these elements the analogy between the “tent” and the “verse” is kept up; the سَبَبٌ signifying “a tent-rope” or “cord;” the وَتْدٌ “a tent-peg” or “bar;” and the فَوَاصِلُ (sing. فَاعِلَةٌ) the long ropes or “stays” by which the tent is fastened before and behind to steady it against the wind.

Practically there are but four of these elements, as the last two are merely combinations of the first three.

QUANTITY.

(189). The quantity of a syllable or syllables consists in conformity with one of the elements above mentioned: thus the word مِثْنٌ is not spoken of as a long syllable, but as a سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ, and is equivalent to تَنَ; again, قَالٌ is not looked upon as consisting of two syllables, one long and one short, but as a وَتْدٌ مَفْرُوقٌ = تَانَ.

The following are the only anomalies in quantity which occur in Arabic prosody:

1. Letters of prolongation are considered as quiescent, thus فَيٌّ, فَوْ, فَآ.

2. اِ (alif maḥṣura) is also treated as though the ى were a quiescent alif, and for prosodial purposes فَتَى = فِتَا.

3. The ا of أَنَا "I," is short, thus أَنَا = اَنَا.

4. The ُ or ِ of the affixed pronoun is long, اُنْهُ = هُوَ; so too the ُ, with which اَنْتُمْ, اَنْتُمْ, and اَنْتُمْ, are pronounced before a *hemzet el-wasl*, is long = هُمْ, etc.

THE NORMAL FEET.

(190). From the elements above spoken of, a certain number of feet are constructed which are called اَرْكَان, or standards. They consist of combinations of the elements represented by a word of the same measure formed from the root فَعَلَ (see p. 19).

NORMAL FEET.	OF WHAT COMPOSED.	ARABIC SYMBOLS.	LATIN SYMBOLS.
فَعُولٌ ¹	وَتَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ + سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ	تَنَ + تَنَ =	— —
مَفَاعِيلٌ	وَتَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ + سَبَبَانِ خَفِيفَانِ	تَنَ + تَنَ تَنَ =	— — —
مَفَاعِلَتُنْ	وَتَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ + فَاصِلَةٌ صَغْرَى	تَنَ + تَنَنَ =	— —
فَاعِلَانِ ²	وَتَدٌ مَفْرُوقٌ + سَبَبَانِ خَفِيفَانِ	تَنَ + تَنَ تَنَ =	— — —
فَاعِلُنْ	سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ + وِتَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ	تَنَ + تَنَ =	— —
مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ	سَبَبَانِ خَفِيفَانِ + وِتَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ	تَنَ تَنَ + تَنَ =	— — —
مُتَفَاعِلُنْ	فَاصِلَةٌ صَغْرَى + وِتَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ	تَنَنَ + تَنَ =	— — —
مَفْعُولَاتٌ	سَبَبَانِ خَفِيفَانِ + وِتَدٌ مَفْرُوقٌ	تَنَ تَنَ + تَنَ =	— — —

¹ The termination تَنَ represents the *tenwin*, the ن of which, as is explained further on, is always written in noting the scansion of a verse.

² This may also be written فَاعِلَانِ, and regarded as if composed of the following elements : سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ + وِتَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ + سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ = تَنَ + تَنَ + تَنَ = — — —

THE CIRCLES.

(191). The various *metres* ^{مُخَوَّر} used by the Arab poets consist of combinations of the eight feet described in the last table. They are fifteen in number, but divide themselves naturally into five groups, each containing a certain number of metres, in all of which the number and consecutive arrangement of the elements are the same; the variety being obtained by beginning on a different element for each metre. In order to exhibit this correspondence, the Arab prosodians write these groups in five circles, which I will give and explain in detail.

THE FIRST CIRCLE ^{دَائِرَةُ الْمُخْتَلِفِ}.

(192). The first circle is called ^{الْمُخْتَلِفِ} “varied,” because it is composed of feet of various lengths.

The elements of which it is composed are—

¹⁰ ⁹ ⁸ ⁷ ⁶ ⁵ ⁴ ³ ² ¹
 تَنَن . تَن . تَنَن . تَن . تَنَن . تَن . تَن . تَنَن . تَن . تَنَن

Now if these be divided into feet thus,

¹⁰ ⁹ ⁸ تَنَن تَن تَن	⁷ ⁶ تَنَن تَن	⁵ ⁴ ³ تَنَن تَن تَن	² ¹ تَنَن تَن
مَفَاعِيلُ	فَعُولُ	مَفَاعِيلُ	فَعُولُ

we have the first metre of the circle, viz. الطَوِيلُ. The second line being obtained by following out the rule laid down of representing each foot by a word of the same measure formed from the root فَعَل.

Now, if instead of beginning upon element 1, we begin upon element 2, we shall have a different effect produced, although the consecutive arrangement remains the same, thus

1 10 تَن تَن	9 8 7 تَن تَن تَن	6 5 تَن تَن	4 3 2 تَن تَن تَن
فَاعِلِن	فَاعِلَاتِن	فَاعِلِن	فَاعِلَاتِن

which is the second metre of the circle, viz. المَدِيدُ.

Again, beginning on 4, we have

3 2 تَن تَن	1 10 9 تَن تَن تَن	8 7 تَن تَن	6 5 4 تَن تَن تَن
فَاعِلِن	مُسْتَفْعِلِن	فَاعِلِن	مُسْتَفْعِلِن

which is the third metre of the first circle, viz. البَسِيطُ.

Thus we obtain the three metres of the first circle as they are usually represented:

1. الطَوِيلُ مَفَاعِيلِن فَعُولِن مَفَاعِيلِن
2. المَدِيدُ فَاعِلَاتِن فَاعِلِن فَاعِلَاتِن فَاعِلِن
3. البَسِيطُ مُسْتَفْعِلِن فَاعِلِن مُسْتَفْعِلِن فَاعِلِن

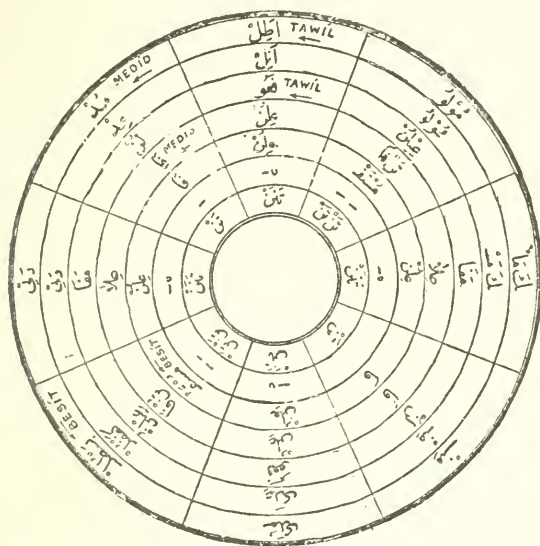
The following verse will serve as a *memoria technica* for the circle:

أَطْلُ مَدَّتِي بِسَطُ الْمَدَى مِنْكَ مَا مَوْلُ
أَنْلُ عِدَّتِي كَفَ الْعِدَى مِنْكَ مَسْؤُلُ

By commencing at the word أَطْلُ, which suggests الطَوِيلُ, we have a verse in that measure; commencing with مَدَّتِي, which recalls المَدِيدُ, a verse is obtained in the metre of المَدِيدُ; and similarly with بِسَطُ for البَسِيطُ, the verse affording a complete specimen of all three metres with a rhyme for each.

The following diagram of the circle exhibits all the facts I have pointed out in connexion with this part of my subject. The two outer circles contain the *memoria technica* verse, the point at which each metre begins

being indicated. The next three inner circles contain the conventional feet of each metre; the commencements being also noted. The two innermost circles contain the Latin symbols and the Arabic elements.



1ST CIRCLE, دَائِرَةُ الْمَخْتَلِفِ.

Note.—That in selecting a word as the representative of the elements forming any foot, a form must be chosen which actually exists. This is exhibited very clearly in the circle. The same element تَنْن, being represented by فَعُو, when beginning the foot تَنْ تَنْن = فَعُولُن, but when it ends a foot, as تَنْ تَنْن = فَاعِلُن, it is represented by عِلُن, because no form of the root فَعَل could end in فَعُو.

THE SECOND CIRCLE دَائِرَةُ الْمُتَوَلَّفِ.

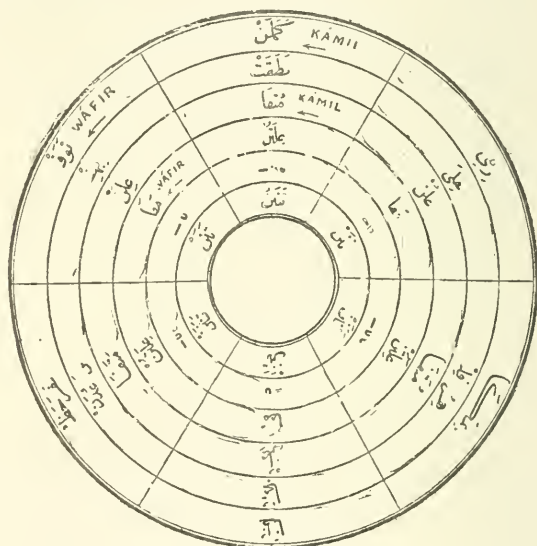
(193). The second circle is called الْمُتَوَلَّفِ “agreeing,” because all its feet agree in length, consisting of seven letters each. It contains two metres, viz.;

مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ الْكَامِلُ
 مُفَاعِلَتَيْنِ مُفَاعِلَتَيْنِ مُفَاعِلَتَيْنِ الْوَافِرُ

The *memoria technica* for which is :

كَمَلًا تَوْفَرَ حَظًّا بِمَكَارِمِ
 نَطَقَتْ بَيْنَ عِدَى تَجَاهِرُ فِي الْقَلَى

The following diagram explains the formation of the feet and metres :



2ND CIRCLE, دَائِرَةُ الْمُؤْتَلَفِ.

THE THIRD CIRCLE دَائِرَةُ الْمُجْتَلَبِ.

(194). The third circle is called الْمُجْتَلَبِ “brought on,” because its feet are “brought on” from the first circle. It contains three metres, viz. :

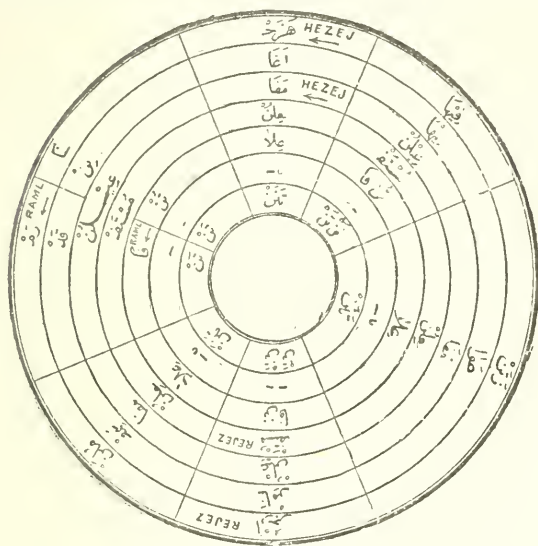
مُفَاعِلِينَ مُفَاعِلِينَ مُفَاعِلِينَ الْبُزْجُ

مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ
الرَّجَزُ
فَاعِلَاتِنِ فَاعِلَاتِنِ فَاعِلَاتِنِ
الرَّمْلُ

And the *memoria technica* is:

هَزَجْنَا رَمَلًا أَرْجُوزَةً فِيمَا
أَغَانِ قَدْ سَمِعْنَا مِنْ غَوَانِمَا

The following diagram shows the analysis of the circle:



3RD CIRCLE, دَائِرَةُ الْمُسْتَعْلِنِ.

THE FOURTH CIRCLE دَائِرَةُ الْمُسْتَعْلِنِ

(195). The fourth circle is called "the intricate," from the intricate nature of its metres, which are six in number, viz. .

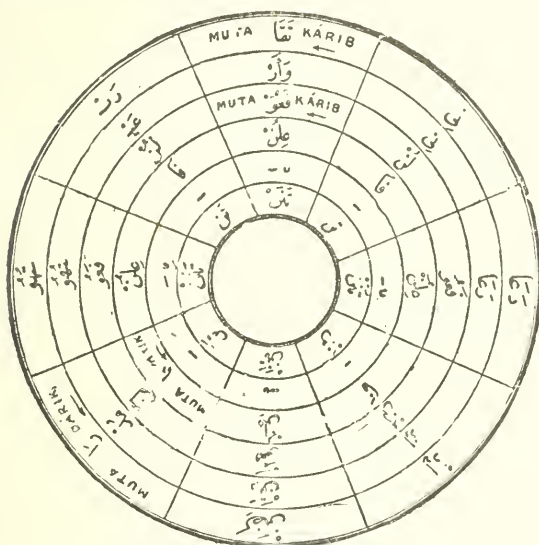
مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ
السَّرِيعُ
مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ
الْمُنْسَجُ

الْمُتَقَارِبُ فَعُولٌ فَعُولٌ فَعُولٌ فَعُولٌ
 (الرَّاكِضُ or المَتَدَارِكُ) فَاعِلٌ فَاعِلٌ فَاعِلٌ فَاعِلٌ

And the *memoria technica* is:

تَقَارِبُهُ رَاكِضًا إِنْ دَعَانِي
 وَارْعَيْتُهُ مَدَّةً إِنْ رَعَانِي

The following diagram shows the analysis of the circle:



5TH CIRCLE, دَائِرَةُ الْمَتَقِّقِ.

SCANSION.

(197). *Note*.—In representing the scansion of a verse, the words must be written as they are pronounced. The *آ* being omitted, and تَشْدِيدٌ and تَنْوِينٌ being written in full, thus—

أَلَا يَا أَسْمَى ذَاتَ الدَّمَالِيحِ وَالْعَتَدِ
وَذَاتَ الشَّيَا الْغَرِّ وَالْفَاحِمِ الْجَعْدِ

is represented in scansion as follows :

أَلَا	يَا	أَسْمَى	ذَاتَ	الدَّمَالِيحِ	وَالْعَتَدِ
فَعُولُنْ	مَفَاعِيلُنْ	فَعُولُنْ	مَفَاعِيلُنْ	فَعُولُنْ	مَفَاعِيلُنْ
تَنْ تَنْ	تَنْ تَنْ	تَنْ تَنْ	تَنْ تَنْ	تَنْ تَنْ	تَنْ تَنْ
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —

وَذَاتُ	الشَّيَا	الْغَرِّ	وَالْفَاحِمِ	الْجَعْدِ
فَعُولُنْ	مَفَاعِيلُنْ	فَعُولُنْ	مَفَاعِيلُنْ	فَعُولُنْ
تَنْ تَنْ	تَنْ تَنْ	تَنْ تَنْ	تَنْ تَنْ	تَنْ تَنْ
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —

For the same reason the words employed to represent the feet or combinations of the elements are written *مَفَاعِيلُنْ*, *فَعُولُنْ*, etc., and not *فَعُولٌ*, *مَفَاعِيلٌ*.

VARIATIONS OF THE PRIMITIVE FEET.

(198). The variations to which the feet are subject are of two kinds, *زُحَافٌ* "Deviation," and *عِلَّةٌ* "Defect."

1. *الزُّحَافُ* DEVIATION.

(199). Deviation is either simple or compound.

(a.) *الزُّحَافُ الْمُنْفَرِدُ* SIMPLE DEVIATION.

حَبْنٌ is the suppression of the second letter of a foot when it is quiescent, *i.e.* without a vowel; as the *م* in *مَسْتَعْلَنٌ*, which then becomes *مَسْتَعْلَنٌ*, and is changed

by the rule given in p. 297, *Note*, to مُتَغَايِلُنْ; or as the ا in فَاغِلُنْ, which then becomes فَعِغِلُنْ.

وَقَصْر is the suppression of the second letter of a foot with its vowel, as the ا of مُتَغَايِلُنْ, which then becomes مُتَغَايِلُنْ.

إِضْمَار is making the second letter of a foot quiescent when it has a vowel, as the ا of مُتَغَايِلُنْ, which becomes مُتَغَايِلُنْ, and by p. 297, *Note*, مُسْتَقْعِلُنْ.

طَي is the suppression of the fourth letter of a foot when it is quiescent, as the ه of مُسْتَقْعِلُنْ, which then becomes مُسْتَعِلُنْ, and is changed into مُتَغِعِلُنْ.

قَبْض is the suppression of the fifth letter of a foot when quiescent, as the ن of فَعُولُنْ, which becomes فَعُولْ; or of the ي of مُتَغَايِلُنْ, which becomes مُتَغَايِلُنْ.

عَقْل is the suppression of the fifth letter of a foot when it has a vowel, as the ل of مُتَغَايِلُنْ, which then becomes مُتَغَايِلُنْ, and is changed by p. 297, *Note*, into مُتَغَايِلُنْ.

عَضْب is making quiescent the fifth letter of a foot, when this has a vowel, as the ل of مُتَغَايِلُنْ, becoming مُتَغَايِلُنْ, and subsequently مُتَغَايِلُنْ, by p. 297, *Note*.

كَمْ is the suppression of the seventh letter of a foot when it is quiescent, as the ن of فَاغِلَاتُنْ, which becomes فَاغِلَاتْ; or the ن in مُسْتَقْعِلُنْ becoming مُسْتَقْعِلْ.

Note.—These modifications can only occur in a سَبَب or “chord,” as تَنْ or تَنْ; we cannot, for instance, apply the حَبْص to the foot فَاغِلَاتُنْ, because the second letter ا, although considered as quiescent, is part of a وَتْد or “bar” تَنْ; nor can we apply the كَمْ to the foot مُسْتَقْعِلُنْ, because, although the seventh letter ن is quiescent, it is part of a وَتْد, تَنْ.

(b.) *الْخَفَافُ الْمَرْدُوهُ* COMPOUND DEVIATION.

خَبْنٌ is the occurrence in one and the same foot of *خَبْنٌ* and *طَيٌّ*; as the suppression of the *س* of *مُسْتَعْلِنٌ* by *طَيٌّ*, and of the *ن* by *طَيٌّ*, leaving *مُتَعْلِنٌ*, or, by p. 297, *Note*, *فَعْلَتْنٌ*.

خَزَلٌ is the concurrence of *إِضْمَارٌ* and *طَيٌّ*; as the suppression of the *ز* of *مُتَعْلِنٌ* by *إِضْمَارٌ*, and of the *ا* by *طَيٌّ*, leaving *مُتَعْلِنٌ* = *مُتَعْلِنٌ*.

شَكْلٌ is the concurrence of *خَبْنٌ* and *كَفٌّ*, as the suppression of the *س* of *مُسْتَفْعٍ لُنْ* by *خَبْنٌ*, and of the *ن* by *كَفٌّ*, leaving *مُسْتَفْعٍ لُ*; or of the *ا* and *ن* of *فَاعِلَاتْنٌ*, leaving *فَعِلَاتٌ*.

نَقَصٌ is the concurrence of *عَصَبٌ* and *كَفٌّ*, as rendering the *ا* of *مُعَايَلَتْنٌ* quiescent by *عَصَبٌ*, and suppressing the *ن* by *كَفٌّ*, leaving *مُعَايَلْتُ* = *مُعَايِلٌ*.

2. *الْعِلَّةُ* DEFECT.

(200). The *عِلَّةُ* consists either in adding to or taking from a foot. Amongst the former are—

وَدَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ (*تَن*) *سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ* to a *وَدَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ* at the end of a foot, as adding *تَن* to *مُتَعْلِنٌ*, which becomes *مُتَعْلِنَتْنٌ* = *مُتَعْلِنَاتْنٌ*, by p. 297, *Note*.

وَدَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ (*تَن*) *سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ* to a *وَدَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ* at the end of a foot, as *ن* to *مُتَعْلِنٌ*, which becomes *مُتَعْلِنَتْنٌ* = *مُتَعْلِنَاتْنٌ*.

تَسْمِيعٌ is the addition of a quiescent letter to a *سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ* at the end of a foot; as the addition of *ن* to *تَن* at the end of *فَاعِلَاتْنٌ*, which then becomes *فَاعِلَاتْنَتْنٌ* = *فَاعِلَاتْنَانٌ*.

Those which are formed by taking away from the foot are—

حَذْفٌ which is the suppression of a سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ at the end of a foot, as of the لٌ in مَتَاعِلُنْ becoming مَتَاعِي = مَتَاعِي; or تٌ in فَاعِلَاتُنْ, which becomes فَاعِلَا = فَاعِلُنْ. فَعُولُنْ.

قَطْفٌ is suppressing a سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ at the end of a foot, and making the previous consonant quiescent; as the suppression of تٌ from مَتَاعِلَاتُنْ and making the لٌ quiescent, the foot then becoming مَتَاعِلْ = مَتَاعِلُنْ. فَعُولُنْ.

قَصْرٌ is the suppression of the second letter of a سَبَبٌ خَفِيفٌ at the end of a foot, making the remaining letter quiescent; as the suppression of the نٌ and making the لٌ quiescent in مَتَاعِلُنْ, which becomes مَتَاعِيلٌ; or similarly in فَعُولُنْ, which becomes فَعُولٌ.

قُطْعٌ is the suppression of the last letter of a وَتَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ at the end of a foot, at the same time making the preceding letter quiescent; as the removal of the نٌ and making the لٌ quiescent in مَسْتَعِلُنْ, which then becomes مَسْتَعِلْ = مَسْتَعِلُنْ.

تَشْعِيبٌ is the suppression of one of the two moveable letters of the وَتَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ in فَاعِلَاتُنْ, which becomes فَاعِلَاتُنْ or فَاعِلَاتُنْ (according as the عِ or لٌ of عِلَا is removed) = مَسْتَعِلُنْ.

حَذْفٌ is the suppression of the entire وَتَدٌ مَجْمُوعٌ from the end of a foot, as of the عِلُنْ from مَتَاعِلُنْ, which becomes مَتَاعِلْ = مَتَاعِلُنْ. فَعِلُنْ.

صَلْمٌ is the suppression of a وَتَدٌ مَفْرُوقٌ from the end of a foot, as of the لَاتٌ from مَتَعُولَاتٌ, which becomes مَتَعُولْ = مَتَعُولُنْ. فَعُولُنْ.

كُشْفٌ is the suppression of the last letter of a وَتَدٌ مَفْرُوقٌ at the end of a foot, as of the تٌ of مَتَعُولَاتٌ, which then becomes مَتَعُولَا = مَتَعُولُنْ. فَعُولُنْ.

وَقَفَّ is the making the last letter of a **وَتَدَّ مَغْرُوقٌ** quiescent at the end of a foot, as the **ت** of **مَفْعُولَاتٌ**, which becomes **مَفْعُولَاتٌ = مَفْعُولَانِ**.

There are some kinds of **عِلَّةٌ** which resemble the **زُحَافٌ** in being used as occasional licences or variations in the feet, and not being permanent changes in the feet continuing through the whole poem. Of these are—

خَزَمٌ which is the addition of one letter to a foot of four letters at the beginning of a verse; or of one or two letters at the beginning of the second hemistich. It more frequently occurs in the beginning of the verse, its occurrence at the beginning of the second hemistich being rare.

خَرَمٌ is the suppression of the first letter of a **وَتَدَّ مَغْرُوقٌ** at the beginning of a verse, as of the **ف** of **فَعُولُنِ**, which thus becomes **فَعْلُنِ = عُولُنِ**.

تَلَمٌ is the same as **خَرَمٌ**, when it occurs in a foot which is perfect in all other respects, and is not affected by any of the other licences or variations.

تُرْمٌ is the suppression of the first letter of a **وَتَدَّ مَجْمُوعٌ** at the beginning of a verse, when the foot in which it occurs is also affected by the licence called **قَبْضٌ**; as the suppression of the **د** of **فَعُولُنِ**, and of the **ن** by **قَبْضٌ**, the foot then becoming **فَعْلٌ = عُولٌ**.

سَشَرٌ is the concurrence of **خَرَمٌ** and **قَبْضٌ** in **مَدَائِعِيْلُنِ**; the **م** being suppressed by **خَرَمٌ** and the **ي** by **قَبْضٌ**, making the foot **فَاعِلُنِ**.

خَرَبٌ is the concurrence of **خَرَمٌ** and **كُفٌّ** in **مَدَائِعِيْلُنِ**; the **م** being suppressed by **خَرَمٌ** and **ن** by **كُفٌّ**, making the foot **مَفْعُولٌ = فَاعِيلٌ**.

عَصَبٌ is the suppression of the م of مَفَاعِلَتُنْ at the beginning of a verse, leaving فَاعِلَتُنْ.

قَصَمٌ is the concurrence of خَرَمٌ and عَصَبٌ in مَفَاعِلَتُنْ; the first removing the م and the second making the ل quiescent: the first thus becomes مَفَاعِلَتُنْ = مَفْعُولُنْ.

جَمَمٌ is the concurrence of خَرَمٌ and عَقَلٌ in مَفَاعِلَتُنْ, the first removing the م and the second the ل, leaving فَاعِلُنْ = فَاعَتُنْ.

عَقَصٌ is the concurrence of خَرَمٌ, عَصَبٌ, and كَفَّ in مَفَاعِلَتُنْ; the first removing the م, the third the ن, and the second making the ل quiescent, the foot then becomes مَفْعُولٌ = فَاعِلَتُ.

تَشَعِيعٌ is sometimes thus employed as an incidental variation of the foot in the metres خَفِيعٌ and مُجْتَعٌ; and حَدَفٌ is occasionally so employed in the metre مُتَقَارِبٌ.

(201). TABLES REPRESENTING THE VARIATIONS OF THE PRIMITIVE FEET.

FIRST FOOT, فَعُولُنْ.

Name of Foot.	Natural Measure.	Artificial Measure by rule p. 297, Note.	Arabic Symbols.	Latin Symbols.
صَحِيحٌ	فَعُولُنْ		تَنْ تَنْ	— —
مُتَبَوِّضٌ	فَعُولٌ		تَنْ تَت	— —
مَقْصُورٌ	فَعُولٌ		تَنْ تْ	—
أَنْلَمٌ	عُولُنْ	فَعْلُنْ	مَنْ تَنْ	— —
أَنْرَمٌ	عُولٌ	فَعْلٌ	مَنْ تَت	— —
مَحْدُوفٌ	فَعُوٌ	فَعْلٌ	تَنْ	—
أَبْرٌ	فَعٌ	فَلٌ	تَنْ	—

SECOND FOOT, مَفَاعِلُنْ.

Name of Foot.	Natural Measure.	Artificial Measure by rule p. 297, Note.	Arabic Symbols.	Latin Symbols.
صَحِيحٌ	مَفَاعِلُنْ		تَمَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَقْبُوضٌ	مَفَاعِلُنْ		تَمَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَكْنُوفٌ	مَفَاعِلُنْ		تَمَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَحْذُوفٌ	مَفَاعِلُنْ	فَعُولُنْ	تَمَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
اِخْرَمٌ	فَاعِلُنْ	مَفْعُولُنْ	مَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
اِشْتَرٌ	فَاعِلُنْ		مَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
اِخْرَبٌ	فَاعِلُنْ	مَفْعُولُنْ	مَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَقْصُورٌ	مَفَاعِلُنْ	فَعُولُنْ	تَمَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —

THIRD FOOT, مَفَاعِلَتُنْ.

Name of Foot.	Natural Measure.	Artificial Measure by rule p. 297, Note.	Arabic Symbols.	Latin Symbols.
صَحِيحٌ	مَفَاعِلَتُنْ		تَمَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَعْصُوبٌ	مَفَاعِلَتُنْ	مَفَاعِلُنْ	تَمَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَعْقُولٌ	مَفَاعِلَتُنْ	مَفَاعِلُنْ	تَمَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَنْقُوصٌ	مَفَاعِلَتُنْ	مَفَاعِلُنْ	تَمَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَقْطُوفٌ	مَفَاعِلَتُنْ	فَعُولُنْ	تَمَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
اَعْصَبٌ	فَاعِلَتُنْ	مَفْعُولُنْ	مَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
اَقْصَمٌ	فَاعِلَتُنْ	مَفْعُولُنْ	مَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
اَجْمٌ	فَاعِلَتُنْ	فَاعِلُنْ	مَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —
اَعْصَصٌ	فَاعِلَتُنْ	مَفْعُولُنْ	مَن تَمَن تَمَن	— — — —

FOURTH FOOT, فاعِلَاتِن.

Name of Foot.	Natural Measure.	Artificial Measure by rule p. 297, Note.	Arabic Symbols.	Latin Symbols.
صَحِيح	فاعِلَاتِن	فاعِلَاتِن ¹	تَن تَمَن تَن ¹	— — — —
مُخَبَّر	فَعِلَاتِن		ت تَمَن تَن	— — — —
مَكْنُوف	فاعِلَاتِن		تَن تَمَن ت	— — — —
مَشْكُول	فَعِلَاتِن		ت تَمَن ت	— — — —
مَقْصُور	فاعِلَاتِن	فاعِلَان	تَن تَمَن ت	— — — —
مَقْصُور مُخَبَّر	فَعِلَاتِن	فَعِلَان	ت تَمَن ت	— — — —
مَحْذُوف	فاعِلَا	فاعِلِن	تَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَحْذُوف مُخَبَّر	فَعِلَا	فَعِلِن	ت تَمَن	— — — —
اِبْتَر	فَعِلَا	فَعِلِن	ت تَمَن	— — — —
مَشْعَت	فَعِلَاتِن	مَنْعُولِن	ت تَمَن تَن	— — — —
مَسْبُوع	فاعِلَاتِن	فاعِلِيَان	تَن تَمَن تَن	— — — —
مَسْبُوع مُخَبَّر	فَعِلَاتِن	فَعِلِيَان	ت تَمَن تَن	— — — —

FIFTH FOOT, فاعِلَان.

Name of Foot.	Natural Measure.	Artificial Measure by rule p. 297, Note.	Arabic Symbols.	Latin Symbols.
صَحِيح	فاعِلَان		تَن تَمَن	— — — —
مُخَبَّر	فَعِلَان		ت تَمَن	— — — —
مَقْطُوع	فاعِل	فَعِلِن	تَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَذِيل	فاعِلَان	فاعِلَان	تَن تَمَن	— — — —
مَرْفَل	فاعِلَان	فاعِلَاتِن	تَن تَمَن تَن	— — — —

¹ See note 2, p. 294.

SIXTH FOOT, مُسْتَعِلِن.

Name of Foot.	Natural Measure.	Artificial Measure by rule p. 297, Note.	Arabic Symbols.	Latin Symbols.
صَحِيح	مُسْتَعِلِن		تَن تَن تَن	— — — —
مُخَبَّر	مُسْتَعِلِن	مُفَاعِلِن	تَ تَن تَن	— — — —
مَطْوِي	مُسْتَعِلِن	مُسْتَعِلِن	تَن تَ تَن	— — — —
مُخْبِل	مُسْتَعِلِن	فَعِلَتِن	تَ تَ تَن	— — — —
مَقْطُوع	مُسْتَعِلِن	مُفَعِّلِن	تَن تَن تَ	— — — —
مَذِيل	مُسْتَعِلِن	مُسْتَعِلِن	تَن تَن تَن	— — — —
مَقْطُوع مُخَبَّر	مُسْتَعِلِن	فَعُولِن	تَ تَن تَ	— — — —
مَذِيل مُخَبَّر	مُسْتَعِلِن	مُفَاعِلِن	تَ تَن تَن	— — — —
مَذِيل مَطْوِي	مُسْتَعِلِن	مُسْتَعِلِن	تَن تَ تَن	— — — —
مَذِيل مُخْبِل	مُسْتَعِلِن	فَعِلَتَان	تَ تَ تَن	— — — —
مَكْنُوف	مُسْتَعِلِن ¹		تَن تَانِ تَ ¹	— — — —
مَشْكُول	مُسْتَعِلِن ¹	مُفَاعِل	تَ تَانِ تَ ¹	— — — —

¹ See note 2, p. 294, and the diagram on p. 300.

SEVENTH FOOT, مُتَعَالِنٌ.

Name of Foot.	Natural Measure.	Artificial Measure by rule p. 297, Note.	Arabic Symbols.	Latin Symbols.
صَحِيحٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ		تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَضْمَرٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَانٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَوْقُوصٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ		تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَخْزُولٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَانٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَقْطُوعٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ	فَعِلَاتِنٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَضْمَرٌ مَقْطُوعٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَانٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
أَحْذُ	مُتَعَالِنٌ	فَعِلَانٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
أَحْذُ مَضْمَرٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ	فَعِلَانٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَذِيلٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَانٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَذِيلٌ مَضْمَرٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَانٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَذِيلٌ مَوْقُوصٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَانٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَذِيلٌ مَخْزُولٌ	مُتَعَالِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَانٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَرْفَلٌ	مُتَعَالِمَتِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَاتِنٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَرْفَلٌ مَضْمَرٌ	مُتَعَالِمَتِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَاتِنٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَرْفَلٌ مَوْقُوصٌ	مُتَعَالِمَتِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَاتِنٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —
مَرْفَلٌ مَخْزُولٌ	مُتَعَالِمَتِنٌ	مُسْتَفْعِلَاتِنٌ	تَمَنُّنٌ تَمَنُّنٌ	— — — —

EIGHTH FOOT, مَفْعُولَاتُ.

Name of Foot.	Natural Measure.	Artificial Measure by rule p. 297, <i>Note</i> .	Arabic Symbols.	Latin Symbols.
صَحِيحٌ	مَفْعُولَاتُ		تَنْ تَنْ تَانِ	— — — ˘
مُخْبُولٌ	مَعْلَاتُ	فَعِلَاتُ	تَ تَ تَانِ	˘ ˘ — ˘
مَوْقُوفٌ	مَفْعُولَاتُ		تَنْ تَنْ تَانِ	— — ˘
مَكْشُوفٌ	مَفْعُولَا	مَفْعُولَيْنِ	تَنْ تَنْ تَا	— — —
مَوْقُوفٌ مَطْوِيٌّ	مَفْعَلَاتُ	فَاعِلَاتُ	تَنْ تَ تَانِ	— ˘ ˘
مَطْوِيٌّ مَكْشُوفٌ	مَفْعَلَا	فَاعِلَيْنِ	تَنْ تَ تَا	— ˘ —
مُخْبُولٌ مَكْشُوفٌ	مَعْلَا	فَعِلَيْنِ	تَ تَ تَا	˘ ˘ —
أَصْلَمُ	مَفْعُو	فَعِلَيْنِ	تَنْ تَنْ	— —
مُخْبُونٌ	مَعْلَاتُ	فَعْلَاتُ	تَ تَ تَانِ	˘ — — ˘
مَطْوِيٌّ	مَفْعَلَاتُ	فَاعِلَاتُ	تَنْ تَ تَانِ	— ˘ — ˘
مُخْبُونٌ مَوْقُوفٌ	مَعْلَاتُ	فَعْلَاتُ	تَ تَ تَانِ	˘ — ˘
مُخْبُونٌ مَكْشُوفٌ	مَعْلَا	فَعْلَيْنِ	تَ تَ تَا	˘ — —

THE METRES.

(202). Each of the fifteen metres (p. 295) may be subdivided into classes, according to the variations of which the *عَرُوض* is susceptible. These classes may be further subdivided according to the variations of the *ضَرْب*. Thus, the first metre *الطَّوِيل* has for its normal *عَرُوض* the foot *مَعَايِلُنْ*; in practice, however, this is seldom employed in its integrity, the two variations *مَفَاعِلُنْ* and *فَعُولُنْ* being the only ones in use.

These two classes of *الطَّوِيل* contain respectively four and two subdivisions, according to the variations of the *ضَرْب*.

A single instance will suffice to show the method of employing these and the foregoing tables. The verse from my edition¹ of the Poems of El Behá Zoheir, p. 7.

إِلَى كَمْ مَقَامِي فِي بِلَادِ مَعَاشِرٍ تَسَاوَى بِهَا آسَادُهَا وَكِلَابُهَا

is said to be *ثَانِي الطَّوِيل*, the second class of the metre *طَوِيل*.

Now, the second *ضَرْب* of the first *عَرُوض* of this metre is called *مَتَّبُوض* (p. 314); if we turn to the table (p. 303) of the second foot *مَدَائِعِلُنْ* (the normal *ضَرْب*), we shall find that the variation *مَتَّبُوض* is equivalent to the foot *مَعَايِلُنْ*, which is the actual *ضَرْب* of the verse in question. In the list of variations (p. 303), under the article *فَعَيْش*, we find described the process by which the change is made.

¹ Now in the Press.

TABLES EXHIBITING THE DIFFERENT METRES.

I. بحر الطويل LONG METRE.			
NAME OF THE ضرب	العجز		NAME OF THE عروض
	الضرب	الحشو	
١ صحيف	مفاعيلن	فعولن	فعولن
٢ مقبوض	مفاعيلن	مفاعيلن	مفاعيلن
٣ مخدوف	فعولن	مفاعيلن	مفاعيلن
٤ مقصور	مفاعيلن	مفاعيلن	مفاعيلن
١ مخدوف	فعولن	فعولن	فعولن
٢ مقبوض	مفاعيلن	مفاعيلن	مفاعيلن

¹ With this ضرب it is usual to make the third foot of the مقبوض, مخدوف, i.e. the فعولن becomes فعول.

EXAMPLES OF الطويل.

NAME OF THE ضرب.	المعجز		الصدر		NAME OF THE عروض.
	ضرب	الحشو	العروض	الحشو	
1 صحيح	معاذيرى	فطالت	فديتها	سليمى	اطالت
2 مقبوض	معاذيرى	"	"	"	"
3 محذوف	معاذيرى	فطال	"	"	"
4 مقصور	رعران	مساك	نثية	طهارى	ثياب
1 محذوف	مغرم	لمباني قبل لمباني	مب سعد	وصاح	لقدست
2 مقبوض	وقد فعل	ويأت	يغيب	س آل	جزى اللعاب

The examples of 1, 2, and 3 are from the treatise of Sheikh Nāṣif el-Yāzījī; they form a *memoria technica*, the first word *أطالت* serving to recall to the student's mind that they illustrate the metre الطويل.

¹ These are examples of قبض.

The licences permitted in this metre are **قَبَضٌ** and **كُنْفٌ**.

قَبَضٌ, the suppression of the fifth quiescent letter of the foot, affects both **فَعُولُنْ** and **مَفَاعِيلُنْ**, making them respectively **فَعُولٌ** and **مَفَاعِيلٌ**.

كُنْفٌ, the suppression of the seventh quiescent letter in a foot, can obviously affect only **مَفَاعِيلُنْ**, which becomes **مَفَاعِيلٌ**.

Both licences cannot occur in the same foot, such a form as **مَفَاعِلٌ** being impossible. This exclusion of one licence by another is called **مُعَاقَبَةٌ**.

Examples:—1. **قَبَضٌ**, as

أَتَلَّ بَ مَنْ أَسُو دَ بِيْشَ تَ دُونَهُ أَبُو مَ طَرَوْعَا مَرُو أَبُو سَعْدِ
فَعُولٌ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولٌ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولٌ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولٌ مَفَاعِيلُنْ

in which every foot except the **ضَرْبٌ** loses its fifth quiescent letter.

2. **كُنْفٌ**, as

شَافَتْ كَ أَحْدَاجُ سَلِيْمَى بِعَاقِلٍ فَعِينَا كَ لِلْبَيْنِ تَجُودَا نِ بِالْذَمِّ
فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ

where the second foot in each hemistich loses its last quiescent letter.

In the first hemistich the first foot suffers **كُنْفٌ** (see below).

Of the licence called **خَزْمٌ**, **عِلَّةٌ**, and **تَرْمٌ** sometimes occur.

1. **خَزْمٌ**:

وَ كَانَ ثَمِيرًا فِي عَرَانِيهِ وَ بَلَدِهِ كَمِيرُ أَنَاسٍ فِي بَجَادٍ مَزْمَلٍ
لَقَدْ تَجَبَّيْتُ لِقَوْمٍ أَسَاءَ لِمَوَاعِدِ عَزِيمٍ إِمَامَهُ هُمُ لِلْمَنَى كِرَانَتِ وَ لِلْعَدْرِ

where *وَ* and *لَقَدْ* are respectively prefixed to the verse by *خَزَمٌ*.

2. *ثَلَمٌ*:

إِنْ كَانَ مَا بَلَغَتْ عَنِّي فَلَا مَنِي صَدِيقِي وَشَلَّتْ مِنْ يَدِي أَا أَنَا بَلٌ
where, instead of *فَعُولُنْ*, the verse begins with *فَعْلُنْ* (إِنْ كَا).

3. *ثَرَمٌ*:

مَا وَلَدْتَنِي حَا صَنَرَ بَعِيَّةٌ لَدُنِّي نَا مَا لَأَمْتُ أَا بَوَى لِأَنِّ بَا عَهَا
where, instead of *فَعُولُنْ*, the verse begins with *فَعْلٌ* (مَا وَ).

تَضَرُّعٌ.

The *عَرُوضٌ* and *ضَرْبٌ* of a poem usually differ. But since the first two hemistichs rhyme together, and the rhyme concludes each distich in the poem, it follows that in the first distich the *عَرُوضٌ* and *ضَرْبٌ* will correspond. Thus:

الْأَعْمُ صَبَاحًا أَيْ بَا الطَّالُ لَمْلُ الْبَالِي وَهَلْ يَأْمَنُ مِنْ كَانِ فِي الْعِصْرِ الْخَالِي
وَهَلْ يَأْمَنُ إِلَّا سَعِيدٌ مُخْلَدٌ قَلِيلٌ أَلْ يَمُومُ لَا² يَمِيتُ¹ بِأَوْجَالِ
فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ

the *عَرُوضٌ* being *مَفَاعِيلُنْ*, and the *ضَرْبٌ* *مَفَاعِيلُنْ*; but in the first couplet the *عَرُوضٌ* becomes *مَفَاعِيلُنْ*, like the *ضَرْبٌ*.

The *تَضَرُّعٌ* may be repeated in the course of the poem, as in the same *kašīdah* Imru' el Kaïs says:

دِيَارٌ لِسُلَمَى عَا فَيَاتْ بِذِي خَالِ أَمَحْ¹ عَلَيْهَا كَلَّ اسْحَا² مَ هَطَالِ
وَحَسْبُ¹ سُلَمَى لَا تَرَالِ¹ تَرَى طَلَا² مِنْ الْوَحْشِ أَوْ بَيْضًا بِمِثْلِ² سَحْلَالِ

¹ Instances of *قَبْضٌ*.

² An instance of *كَفَتْ*.

2. بحر المديد.

NAME OF THE فُروض	صَوَرُ العجز	صَوَرُ الصدر	NAME OF THE فُروض
صحيح	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان
متنوع	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان
محدوف	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان
أبتر	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان
محدوف مخبون	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان
أبتر	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان فاعِلان	فاعِلان فاعِلان

¹ The فُروض being the last foot in the first and second hemistichs respectively, it follows that what was before part of the مَجْرُوم becomes the فُروض عَرُوب when the verse is مَجْرُوم.

The licences allowed are

1. خَزَم , as in the second of the two following verses:

أَشْجَاكُ الْرَبْعِ أَمِ قَدَمُهُ أَمِ رَمَادِ دَارِسِ حَمَمُهُ
هَلْ تَذْكُرُونَ إِذْ نَقَا تِلْكَمُ إِذْ لَا يُضِرُّ مَعْدِمًا عَدَمُهُ

where هَلْ and إِذْ are added to the metre.

2. خَبِنَ in the حَشَو , in فَاعِلُنْ and فَاعِلَاتُنْ .

3. كَفَّ and شَكَّلَ in فَاعِلَاتُنْ .

In the first عَرُوض the same licences are allowed as in the حَشَو , but in the first ضَرْب only خَبِنَ is allowed.

In the second عَرُوض , خَبِنَ is not allowed, or it would be confused with the third.

El Khalil does not allow خَبِنَ in the مَقْصُور , but El Akhfash permits it: this ضَرْب is of such rare occurrence that El Akhfash declares that only one قَصِيدَةٌ is found in that measure amongst the poems of the ancient Arabs, namely, one by الطرماح, of which the first verse is

شَتَّ شَعْتُ الْحَيَّ بَعْدَ الدَّائِمِ وَشَجَاكُ الْيَوْمِ رُبَّ عَمَامِ

1. خَبِنَ :

وَمَتَى مَا يَبْعُ مِنْ كَلَامًا يَتَكَلَّمُ فَيُجِبُ كَتَّ بِعَقْلٍ
فَاعِلَاتُنْ فَعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ فَعِلَاتُنْ فَعِلَاتُنْ فَعِلَاتُنْ

where all the feet suffer خَبِنَ , i.e. the loss of the second quiescent.

2. كَفَّ :

لَنْ يَزَالَ قَوْمَنَا مُخْصِبِينَ صَالِحِينَ مَا اتَّقُوا وَاسْتَقَامُوا
فَاعِلَاتُ فَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُ فَاعِلَاتُ فَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ

where all the seven-letter feet suffer كُتِّ (i.e. the loss of the seventh quiescent).

3. شَكَلٌ :

لَمَنِ الدِّ يَارُغِي رَهْنِ كُلُّ جَوْنٍ أَلَمْزَنِ دَا نِي الرَّبَابِ
فَعِلَاتُ فَاعِلُنْ فَعِلَاتُ فَاعِلَاتُنْ فَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُ

where the seven-letter feet in the first hemistich suffer شَكَلٌ.

The metre الْمَدِيدُ is considered by native poets as the most difficult of all, and few, if any, examples of it occur in the later writers. The modern Arabs have invented a metre called الْمَمْتَدُّ, which consists of الْمَدِيدُ reversed, as :

قَدْ شَجَا نِي حَبِيبٌ وَاعْتَرَا نِي إِدْكَارٌ لَيْتَهُ إِذْ شَجَانِي مَا شَجَتْهُ الدِّيَارُ
فَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ فَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ فَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ

The licence called *خَزْم* may be used in the *حَشَو* of this metre; and of the *زُحَاف* the feet *فَاعِلُنْ* and *مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ* suffer *خَبْن*, and *مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ* suffers *طَي* and *خَبْل*.

1. *خَزْم* :

وَلَكِنِّي عَلِمْتُ لَمْ مَا هَجَرْتُ أَنِّي أَمُوتُ يَا هَجْرَعَنْ قَرِيبُ
 مُفَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ فَعُولُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ فَعُولُنْ¹

The verse belongs to the second *ضَرْب* of the third *عَرُوض*, the words *وَلَكِنِّي*, consisting of eight letters (including the upright *alif*), are all added over and above the metre by *خَزْم*.

2. *خَبْن* :

لَقَدْ مَضَتْ حِقَبٌ صُوفِيَا عَجَبُ فَاحْدَثْتُ عِبرَ وَابْدَلْتُ دَوْلَا
 مُفَاعِلُنْ فَعِلُنْ مُفَاعِلُنْ فَعِلُنْ مُفَاعِلُنْ فَعِلُنْ مُفَاعِلُنْ فَعِلُنْ
 where every foot suffers *خَبْن*.

3. *طَي* :

إِزْجَلُوا غُدُوَّةً وَأَنْطَلِقُوا سَحَرًا فِي زَمَرٍ مِنْهُمْ تَتَّبِعَانِ زَمَرُ
 مُفْتَعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ مُفْتَعِلُنْ فَعِلُنْ مُفْتَعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ مُفْتَعِلُنْ فَعِلُنْ

where all the seven-letter feet suffer *طَي*.

طَي is also admissible sometimes in the first *ضَرْب* of the second *عَرُوض*, as

يَا صَاحِبَ قَدْ اخْلَقْتَ أَسْمَاءَ مَا كَانَتْ تَمُنُّ نِيكَ مِنْ حَسَنِ وَصَالِ
 مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ

¹ By *خَبْن* for *مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ*.

4. خَبِلَ :

وَزَعَمُوا أَنَّهُمْ لَتَجِيْعَ رَجُلٌ فَآخِذُوا مَالَهُ وَضَرَبُوا عُنُقَهُ
فَعِلْتَنُ فَاعِلُنْ فَعِلْتَنُ فَعِلُنْ فَعِلْتَنُ فَعِلُنْ فَعِلْتَنُ فَعِلُنْ

It is also allowed in the first ضَرْب of the second عَرُوض, as

هَذَا مَتَا مِى قَرِيبٌ مِّنْ أَخِي كُلُّ امْرِئٍ قَائِمٌ مَّعَ أَخِيهِ
مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ فَعِلْتَنُ

In the third عَرُوض of this metre a somewhat unusual licence is allowed, the عَرُوض and ضَرْب both being susceptible of خَبِنَ, the foot مَعْعُولُنْ becoming فَعُولُنْ = مَعْعُولُنْ, as in the following verses of 'Obeid ibn al Abras:

فَكُلُّ ذِي نِعْمَةٍ مَّخْلُوسٌ وَكُلُّ ذِي أَمَلٍ مَّكَذُوبٌ
وَكُلُّ ذِي إِبِلٍ مَّوْرُوثٌ وَكُلُّ ذِي سَلَبٍ مَّسْلُوبٌ
وَكُلُّ ذِي غِيْبَةٍ يَوْبٌ وَغَائِبُ الْمَوْتِ لَا يَوْبٌ

where the عَرُوض and ضَرْب are sometimes مَعْعُولُنْ and sometimes فَعُولُنْ. If the عَرُوض of every verse in the poem is فَعُولُنْ, the metre is called مُخَلَّعُ الْبَسِيطةِ, as in the table.

The خَبِنَ may also suffer حَشَهُ.

بحر الوافر. THE EXUBERANT METRE.

NAME OF THE ضرب	العجز العجز	الضرب	حشو	العروض	حشو	NAME OF THE عروض
مقطوف	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	1st عروض (مقطوف)
صحيح	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	2nd عروض مجزوءة صحيح
معصوب	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	3rd عروض مجزوءة مقطوف
مقطوف	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	مفاعلتن	

EXAMPLES OF الْوُفْرِ.

NAME OF THE ضرب	الضرب	العجز	الصدر	NAME OF THE شروض
مَنْطُوف	الضرب	حشو	حشو	عروض
ضَمِيم	هم غَضِبُوا	وجود إذا	بنو قُتَيْبٍ	مَنْطُوفَة
مَعصوب	إِلَيْنَا	مَذَاهِبِكُمْ	مَوَاجِبِنَا	عروض
مَنْطُوف	وَتَعْمِيْنِي	مَذَاهِبِكُمْ	مَوَاجِبِنَا	مَجْرُوءَة صَحِيْحَة
	رَدِيكَ	وَأَنْتِ الدَّهْ	وَأَمْرَهَا	عروض
			مَتَاهِي	مَجْرُوءَة مَنْطُوفَة

عَصَبٌ (ب) by عَصَبٌ (ب) for مَقَاعِشٍ

1

The following licences (زُحَافٌ) are allowed in this metre: نَقْصٌ, عَقْلٌ, and عَصَبٌ.

1. عَصَبٌ:

إِذَا لَمْ تَسَّ تَطْعُ شَيْئاً فَدَعَهُ وَجَاوِزُهُ إِلَى مَا تَسَّ تَطْعُهُ
مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ

where all the feet in the *حَشْوٌ* suffer *عَصَبٌ*.

2. عَقْلٌ:

مَنَازِلٌ لِّفَرْتَنَا قَفَارٌ كَانَمَا رَسُولَنَا سَطُورٌ
مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ

3. نَقْصٌ:

لِسَلَامٍ تَهْدِي دَارِي خَنْمِيرٍ كَبَائِي الْخَلَقَ لَمَقِ السَّحَابِ قِفَارٌ
مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ

The first *عَرُوضٌ* of the first *ضَرْبٌ* may suffer *نَقْصٌ*, as

فَلَيْتَ أَبَا شَرِيكَ كَا نَ حَيًّا فَيَقْصُرُ حِيَّ نَ يَبْصُرُ شَرِيكَ
وَيَتَرَكُ عَنْ تَدْرِيبِهِ عَلَيْنَا إِذَا قَلْنَا لَهُ هَذَا أَبُوكَ
مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولُنْ

¹ If the *عَصَبٌ* occur in every foot in the second *عَرُوضٌ* of this measure, it will be identical with the *مَجْزُوءُ الرَّجْزِ*; but if the foot *مَفَاعِيلُنْ* occur only in the course of the poem, it is sufficient to stamp it as belonging to the metre *وَأَفْرِ*. Similarly, if the *عَقْلٌ* occur in every verse of it, it will resemble the *مَجْزُوءُ الرَّجْزِ الْخَبُونِ*.

Of the عِلَّة (see p. 307):

عَضَبَ, عَقَصَ, and جَمَمَ sometimes occur in this metre, but they are not considered elegant.

1. عَضَبَ :

إِنْ نَزَلَ اللَّهُ	شِئَاءَ بَدَا	رِقْوَمِ	تَجَنَّبَ جَا	رَبِيعَتِمْ	الْهَ شِئَاءَ
مَفْعَلَتْنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	فَعُولِنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	فَعُولِنِ

2. قَصَمَ :

مَا قَالُوا	لَنَا سَدَدًا	وَلَكِنْ	تَفَاحَشَ قَو	لَيْمِ	وَأَتُوا	بِجَرِّ
مَفْعُولِنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	فَعُولِنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	فَعُولِنِ	فَعُولِنِ

3. عَقَصَ :

لَوْلَا	مَلِكٌ رَوَفٌ	رَحِيمٌ	تَدَارَكْنِي	بِرَحْمَتِهِ	هَلَكْتُ
مَفْعُولٌ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	فَعُولِنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	فَعُولِنِ

4. جَمَمَ :

أَنْتَ خِي	رَمَنْ رَكِبَ	الْمَطَايَا	وَكَرِهْتُمْ	أَبَا	وَإِخَا	وَأَمَّا
فَاعِلِنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	فَعُولِنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	مَفْعَلَتْنِ	فَعُولِنِ	فَعُولِنِ

5. بحر الكامل. THE PERFECT METRE.			
NAME OF THE ضرب.	العجز	الصدر	NAME OF THE عروض
١ صحيح	الضرب	العروض	عروض
٢ منقطع	متفاعلين	متفاعلين	متفاعلين
٣ أخذ مضمر	متفاعلين	متفاعلين	متفاعلين
١ أخذ	متفاعلين	متفاعلين	عروض (صبيحة)
٢ أخذ مضمر	متفاعلين	متفاعلين	عروض
١ مرفل	متفاعلاتين	متفاعلين	حذاء
٢ مذييل	متفاعلين	متفاعلين	عروض
٣ معرّي	متفاعلين	متفاعلين	عروض
٤ منقطع	فعلاتين	متفاعلين	عروض
			مجزوءة صبيحة

EXAMPLES OF الْكَامِلُ.

NAME OF THE

عروض

1st عروض (صحيحة)

2nd عروض حذائية

3rd عروض معجزة صحيحة

الصدر

العروض

وإذا صحو
كملت لكم

ت فما اقتر
خطرات ذي

وعن ندى
وصفت لكم

لعمري الدنيا
كملت لكم

ربراهم
خطرات ذي

ن فعاقل
وصفت

كملت لكم

خطرات ذي

متهان

وإذا هم

ذكروا الإنسا

العجز

الضرب

ت شمائل
خطران ذا

خطران ذا

خطران ذا

خطران ذا

خطران ذا

خطران ذا

خطران ذا

خطران ذا

خطران ذا

خطران ذا

NAME OF THE

ضرب

١ صحيحة

٢ مذبذبة

٣ أحد مضمهر

٤ أحد

٥ أحد مضمهر

٦ أحد

٧ مرفل

٨ مذبذبة

٩ مذبذبة

١٠ مذبذبة

١١ مذبذبة

The licences occurring in this metre are **إِضْمَارٌ**, **وَقْصٌ** and **خَزْلٌ**, which may be employed in the **عَرُوضٌ** and **ضَرْبٌ**, as well as in the body of the verse (**حَشْوٌ**).

1. **إِضْمَارٌ**¹

إِنِّي أَمَرْتُ مِنْ خَيْرِ عِبَادٍ شَطْرِي وَأَحَدِي سَائِرِي بِالْمَنْصِلِ
مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ مُسْتَعْلِنٌ

and in the second **ضَرْبٌ** of the first **عَرُوضٌ**.

فَلَذَا يَحِبُّ بِي وَيَسْتَحِقُّ عَفَاةً شَغْنَاهُ فَلِبَابِهِ خَلَابٌ
مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ

The last foot having become **مَقْطُوعٌ** in the **ضَرْبٌ**, i.e. **فَعْلَاتُنْ**, suffers the further modification of **إِضْمَارٌ**, and becomes **مُضْمَرٌ مَقْطُوعٌ**, see table, p. 311.

The following (from El Bahá, Zoheir) contains examples of the **إِضْمَارٌ** in the **الضَرْبُ الْمَرْفُوعُ**, and in the body of the verse:

غَيْرِي عَلَى السَّلَوانِ قَادٍ وَسَوَايَ فِي الْعَشَاقِ غَادِرٌ
لِي فِي الْغُرَامِ سَرِيرَةٌ وَاللَّهُ أَعْلَمُ بِالسَّرَائِرِ
يَا لَيْلٍ طُلُ يا شَوْقٍ دَمٍ إِنِّي عَلَى الْحَالِيْنَ صَابِرٌ

An example of **إِضْمَارٌ** in the **مُدَّيْلٌ** foot is

وَإِذَا اغْتَبَطْتُ أَوَابَتَاهُ مَتَّ حُدُوتُ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ
مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ مُتَفَاعِلُنْ

¹ If **إِضْمَارٌ** occur in every foot, the verse will resemble **رَجَزٌ**, but the occurrence of the foot **مُتَفَاعِلُنْ**, if only *once* in the poem, proves it to be **كَامِلٌ**. Thus the above example might be supposed to belong to **الرَّجَزُ**, but the first verse of the *Kasidah* is—

طَالَ الثَّوَاءُ عَلَى رُسُومِ الْمَنْزِلِ بَيْنَ الْكَلِيلِ وَبَيْنَ ذَاتِ الْحَرَمِ

where the foot **مُتَفَاعِلُنْ** occurs once in each hemistich.

(فَرَبَّ مَنطُوعٍ) عَرُوض 3rd : اِضْمَارٌ :

وَابُو الْحَلِيهِ مِسْ وَرَبِّ مَكَّةَ فَارِغْ مَشْعُولٌ
مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مَفْعُولِينَ

2. وَفَصْ :

يَذُبُّ عَنْ حَرِيهِهِ بِسَيْفِهِ وَرَمَحَهُ وَنَبِلَهُ وَيَحْتَمِي
مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ

foot : مَرْقَلٌ in the وَفَصْ

وَلَقَدْ شَرِدَتْ وَفَاتَهُمْ وَنَقَلْتَهُمْ إِلَى الْمَقَابِرِ
مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلَاتِينَ

foot : مَدِيلٌ in the وَفَصْ

كُتِبَ الشِّتَا عَلَيْهِمَا فِيهِمَا لَهُ مَيْسِرَانِ
مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ

3. خَزَلٌ :

مَنْزِلُهُ صَمَّ صَدَا هَا وَتَفَتْ أَرْسَمَهَا إِنْ سَأَلْتَ لَمْ تُجِبْ
مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ

foot : مَرْقَلٌ in the خَزَلٌ

صَفَحُوا عَنْ أَبِ نِكَأْنٍ فِي أَبِ نِكَأْنٍ جِدَّةَ حِينَ يَكَلِّمُ
مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلَاتِينَ

foot : مَدِيلٌ in the خَزَلٌ

وَاجِبٌ أَخَاكَ إِذَا دَعَا كَمْ مَعَالِنَا غَيْرُ مَنَحَافِ
مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ

4. خَزَمٌ is sometimes introduced into this metre, as

يَا مَطْرِبْنَ نَا حِيَّةَ بَنِ سَا مَةَ إِنِّي أَجْفَى وَتَغَلْنِي دُونِي أَلْ أَبَوَابِ
مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ مُتَفَاعِلِينَ

6. بحر التخرج THE TRILLING METRE.			
NAME OF THE ضرب	العجز	الصدر	NAME OF THE عروض
1 صحيح	مفاعيلن مفاعيلن	مفاعيلن مفاعيلن	مفاعيلن
2 محذوف	مفاعيلن فعلون	مفاعيلن مفاعيلن	عروض 1st محذوف صحيح
3 مقصور	مفاعيلن مفاعيلن	مفاعيلن مفاعيلن	عروض 2nd محذوف مقصور
4 محذوف	فعلون	فعلون	

EXAMPLES OF الْهَرْج.

الْعَجْزُ

NAME OF THE

ضَرْبٌ

الضَرْبُ

مَا فِيهَا

أَبْنَى تَجْرَى

فَظَلَّتْ مَتَى

عَطَايَا نَا

فَأَجْزَلْتُمْ

ذُلُولٍ

مَ بِأَظْهَرِ الْإِ

وَإِسْنَانٍ

أَظَافِيرٍ

رَبَا

مِنْ الْوَسْمِيِّ

NAME OF THE

عَرُوضٌ

العروض

عَفَايَا صَا

ح مِنْ سَلَمَى

مَرَّعِيهَا

هَزَجْنَا فِي

بَوَادِيكُمْ

لِبَاغِي الشَّيْءِ

وَمَا ظَهَرِي

عَرِيصٍ ذُو

عَرُوضٌ

وَمَا لَيْثٌ

مَتَاهَا

عَرُوضٌ

مَجْزُوءَةٌ صَحِيحَةٌ

مَجْزُوءَةٌ مَكْدُونَةٌ

مَجْزُوءَةٌ

كَيْفَ An example of

قَبْضٌ and كُفٌّ are allowed in this metre.

1. قَبْضٌ :

فَقَلْتُ لَا تَحْفَ شَيْئاً فَمَا عَلَيَّ كُفٌّ مِنْ بَاسٍ
مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ

where all but the عَرُوضٌ and ضَرْبٌ suffer قَبْضٌ.

2. كُفٌّ :

فَهَذَا يَذُودَانِ وَذَا مِنْ كُشْبٍ يَرْمِي
مَفَاعِيلُ مَفَاعِيلُ مَفَاعِيلُ مَفَاعِيلُ

where all but the ضَرْبٌ suffer كُفٌّ.

حَرَمٌ, شَتْرٌ, and خَزَمٌ also occur.

1. حَرَمٌ :

رَدُّوا مَا اسْتَعَارُوهُ كَذَاكَ الْعَيْسُ عَارِيَهُ

Here the first foot suffers حَرَمٌ, مَفَاعِيلُنْ becoming مَفْعُولُنْ, and the ي in عَارِيَهُ is doubled by poetical license, ضَرُورَةُ الشَّعْرِ.

2. شَتْرٌ :

فِي الَّذِينَ قَدْ مَاتُوا وَفِي مَا خَلَفُوا عِبْرَةً

Here the first foot becomes فَاعِيلُنْ, dropping by شَتْرٌ the first and fifth of مَفَاعِيلُنْ.

3. خَرَبٌ :

لَوْ كَانَ أَبُو هُوَسٍ أَمِيرًا مَا رَضِينَاهُ

Here in the first foot لَوْ كَانَ is of the measure مَفْعُولٌ for فَاعِيلٌ, formed by dropping the first and seventh of مَفَاعِيلُنْ.

4. خَزَمٌ :

أَشَدُّ حَيَازِيْمَكْ¹ لِلْمَوْتِ فَإِنَّ الْمَوْتَ لَا قِيَمَا
وَلَا تَجْزَعُ مِنَ الْمَوْتِ إِذَا حَلَّ¹ بِوَادِيكَا

Where the word أَشَدُّ occurs at the beginning of the verse, and is over and above the ordinary number of feet by the licence called خَزَمٌ, see p. 305 (and *Erratu*).

¹ Instances of كَفَّ.

7. بحر الرجز. THE TREMBLING METRE.			
NAME OF THE	العجز	الرجز	الصدر
ضرب.	الضرب	الرجز	الصدر
صحيح	مستعمل	مستعمل	مستعمل
مقطوع	مستعمل	مستعمل	مستعمل
صحيح	مستعمل	مستعمل	مستعمل
مستطور	مستعمل	مستعمل	مستعمل
منهول	مستعمل	مستعمل	مستعمل
مقطوع	مستعمل	مستعمل	مستعمل

1 "Halved."

2 "Attenuated;" technically the word means "from which two-thirds have been removed."

EXAMPLES OF الرجز.

NAME OF THE	الرجز	الصدر	NAME OF THE
ضرب	الضرب	العروض	عروض
صحيح	مختاريا	إن زرتنا	1st عروض صحيح
مختلج	مختلج	"	"
صحيح	ومن شعرونا	يا صاحبي	2nd عروض صحيح
مختلج	"	"	"
مختلج	ومن شعرونا	يا صاحبي	3rd عروض مختلج
مختلج	إن زرتنا	ارجز لنا	4th عروض مختلج
مختلج	فنبها جلع	يا ليتني	5th عروض مختلج
مختلج	ليس كذا	ذي عربي	انا السرو
مختلج	والبدار شي	جبي ولد	مختلج
مختلج	والشمس		

خَبْن may be used in the عَرُوض and ضَرْب of the fifth عَرُوض, as

وَلَا طَرَفَ	نَ حِصْنِهِمْ	صَبَاحًا	وَلَا بَرَكَةَ	نَ مَبْرَكِ	الذِّ مَعَامَةِ
مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مَفَاعِلْنَ	فَعُولْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مَفَاعِلْنَ	فَعُولْنَ

but this verse is said to belong to the metre سَرَب. The عَرُوض and ضَرْب both losing their second quiescent letter by خَبْن and becoming مَعُولْنَ = فَعُولْنَ.

خَبْلٌ, طَيٌّ, and خَبْنٌ.

1. خَبْنٌ :

وَطَالَمَا	وَطَالَمَا	وَطَالَمَا	كُفِيَ بِكَ	فِ خَالِدٍ	هَخَوْفُهَا
وَطَالَمَا	وَطَالَمَا	وَطَالَمَا	سُقِيَ بِكَ	فِ خَالِدٍ	وَأَطْعَمَا

where all the feet are مَحْمُودٌ.

And in the second ضَرْب of the first عَرُوض.

لَا خَيْرَ فِي	مَنْ كَفَّ عَنْ	مَنْ شَرَّ	إِنْ كَانَ لَا	يَرْجِي	إِلَّا مَخِيرَ
مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ

the ضَرْب being مَقْطُوعٌ مَحْمُودٌ (see table, p. 310).

2. طَيٌّ :

مَا وَلَدْتُ	وَالِدَةً	وَمِنْ وَلَدٍ	أَكْرَمَ	مِنْ عَبْدٍ	مِنَا	فِ حَسْبَا
مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ	مُسْتَفْعِلْنَ

3. خَبْلٌ :

وَتَقِلَّ	مَنْعَ خِيٍّ	رَطَلٍ	وَعَجَلٍ	مَنْعَ خِيٍّ	رَتَوَدَدَ
فَعِلْتَنَ	فَعِلْتَنَ	فَعِلْتَنَ	فَعِلْتَنَ	فَعِلْتَنَ	فَعِلْتَنَ

The first and second *ضَرْبُ* of the first *عَرُوضُ* may be used alternately in a poem composed in the *rejez* metre ; but as the verses consist of a series of rhyming couplets, each distich is an instance of *تَضَرُّعٌ* (see p. 317), and the *عَرُوضُ* and *ضَرْبُ* of the same verse should therefore always agree ; thus in the opening verses of the *Kitáb es Sádiḥ w'el Bághim*:¹

بِالْأَصْغَرَيْنِ الْقَلْبِ وَاللِّسَانِ	الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي حَبَانِي
وَفَخَّرَهُ بِالْعَقْلِ وَالْبَيَانِ	وَإِنَّمَا فَخْصِلَةُ الْإِنْسَانِ
وَجَلَّ أَنْ يَبْلُغَ حَمْدُ مِنْتِهِ	حَمْدًا يَجَازِي مِنْهُ وَنِعْمَتِهِ
مَا اخْتَلَفَ الْخِيَاءُ وَالظَّلَامُ	ثُمَّ سَلَاةُ السُّلَى وَالسَّلَامُ
مُحَمَّدٍ وَالْغَرَمِ رِجَالُهُ	عَلَى النَّبِيِّ الْمُصْطَفَى وَآلِهِ
يَفُوقُ أَنْوَاعَ الْقَرِيبِ وَالْخُطْبِ	هَذَا كِتَابٌ فِيهِ عِلْمٌ وَادَبٌ
وَمَوْئِلُ الْمَلْهُوفِ وَالصَّعْلُوكِ	نَظْمَتُهُ لِسَيِّدِ الْمَلُوكِ

where the *ضَرْبُ* is sometimes *مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ*, with or without *مَنْعُوعُونْ*, sometimes *مَنْعُوعُونْ*, *مَنْعُوعُونْ*, *مَنْعُوعُونْ*, or *مَنْعُوعُونْ* (see table, p. 310), sometimes *مَنْعُوعُونْ*, and sometimes *مَنْعُوعُونْ*. *Rejez* is the only metre in which such a licence is allowed.

¹ A series of Fables and Aphorisms in verse, by Ibn el Hibbáryeh.

8. بحر الرمل. THE RUNNING METRE.			
NAME OF THE	العجز	الصدر	NAME OF THE
ضرب.	الضرب	العروض	عروض.
١ صبيح	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	1st عروض
٢ مقصور	"	"	مكذوفة
٣ مكذوف	"	"	"
١ مسبيح	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	2nd عروض
٢ معزى	فاعلاتن	"	مجزوءة صبيحة
٣ مكذوف	فاعِلن	"	"
١ مكذوف	فاعِلن	فاعِلن	3rd عروض.
			مجزوءة مكذوفة

Of the *زُحَافٌ*, *كُفٌّ*, and *شُكْلٌ* occur.

1. *خَبْنٌ* :

In the *ضَرْبٌ مُقْصَرٌ*.

أَقْصَدْتُ كَيْسَ رِي وَامْسَى قَبْصَرٌ	مُغْلَقًا مِنْ دُونِهِ بَابُ حَدِيدٍ
فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ
فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ
فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ

In the *ضَرْبٌ مُسَبَّغٌ*.

وَاضِحَاتٌ	فَارِسِيَا	تِ وَأَدَمَ	عَرَبِيَّاتٍ
فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ

2. *كُفٌّ* :

لَيْسَ كُلُّ مَنْ ارَادَ حَاجَةً	ثُمَّ جَدَّ فِي طَلَابٍ	هَذَا قَصَادَا
فَاعِلَاتُ	فَاعِلَاتُ	فَاعِلَاتُ
فَاعِلَاتُ	فَاعِلَاتُ	فَاعِلَاتُ

3. *شُكْلٌ* :

إِنَّ سَعْدًا	بَطْلًا	مَارِسًا	صَابِرًا	مَنْسِبًا	مَا أَصَابَهُ
فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ

And of the خَزَمَ, عِلَّةٌ may be employed.

وَالْبَنَانِيَّةُ قِيَامٌ حَوْلَنَا	بِكُلِّ مَلْثُو	مِإِذَا صَبَّ بَ هَمَلٌ
فَاعِلَاتْنِ فَاعِلَاتْنِ فَاعِلُنْ	فَاعِلَاتْنِ فَاعِلَاتْنِ فَاعِلُنْ	

9. بحر السريع. THE SWIFT METRE.					
NAME OF THE ضرب.	العجز		الصدر		NAME OF THE عروض.
	الضرب	منعولات	العروض	منعولات	
١ موقوف	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	عروض ١st عروض مطوية مكشوفة
٢ موقوف مكشوف	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	
٣ اصل	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	عروض ٢nd عروض مخبولة مكشوفة
١ مخبول مكشوف	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	
٢ اصل	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	عروض ٣rd عروض مستطرفة موقوفة
١ موقوف	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	
١ مكشوف	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	عروض ٤th عروض مستطرفة مكشوفة
	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	منعولات	

EXAMPLES OF السَّريِعُ.

NAME OF THE ضرب.	العجز	الصدر	NAME OF THE عروض.
١ مطوي موقوف	الضرب	العروض	عروض
٢ مطوي مكشوف	لا اخشى	في عتيها	1st عروض
٣ اصل	عائبا	"	مطوية مكشوفة
٤ مخبول مكشوف	عائبا	"	2nd عروض
٥ اصل	تعلم	زارى على	مخبولة مكشوفة
٦ موقوف	لا توفيك	عمر	3rd عروض
٧ مكشوف	احلى اقل	يا صاحي	مستوردة موقوفة
			4th عروض
			مستوردة مكشوفة

The licences allowed are خَبَّرَ, طَيَّ, and خَبَّلَ.

1. خَبَّرَ :

أَرَادَ مِنْ أَمُورٍ مَا يَنْبَغِي وَمَا تُطِيعُهُ وَمَا يَسْتَقِيمُ
مُفَاعِلُنْ مُفَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ مُفَاعِلُنْ مُفَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ

In the 3rd عَرُوضٌ.

قَدْ عَرَضْتُ سَعْدَى بِقَوٍّ لِي إِفْنَادٌ
مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَعُولُنْ

In the 4th عَرُوضٌ.

يَا رَبِّ إِنِّي أَخْطَأْتُ أَوْ نَسِيتُ
مُفَاعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَعُولُنْ
فَانْتَ لَا تَنْسَى وَلَا تَهْوِي
مُفَاعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَعُولُنْ

2. طَيَّ :

قَالَ لَهَا وَهَوَّ بِهَا عَالَمٌ وَيَحْكُ أَمَّ ثَالُ طَرِيٍّ فِي قَلِيلٍ
مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ مُنْتَفِعِلُنْ مُنْتَفِعِلُنْ فَاعِلُنْ

3. خَبَلٌ :

وَبَلَدٍ	قَطَعَهُ	عَامِرٌ	وَجَمَلٌ	نَحْرُهُ	فِي الطَّرِيقِ
فَعِلْتُ	فَعِلْتُ	فَاعِلُنْ	فَعِلْتُ	فَعِلْتُ	فَاعِلَانْ

EXAMPLES OF ^{الممنسح} المنسح.

العجز

الصدر

NAME OF THE
ضرب

الضرب

العروض

NAME OF THE
عروض

1 مطوي

صندوق

شبي في مصر

التخيري

2 منطوق

مغني

باني

قامت على

1 موقوف

عبد الدار

صبرا بني

صبرا بني

1 مكشوف

د سعاد

ويل أم سع

ويل أم سع

1st عروض
صحا

لأن ابن زيد

دي لزال

مستعلا

طوق

ما هيج الله

2nd عروض
موقوف

موقوف

موقوف

موقوف

موقوف

موقوف

3rd عروض
مكشوف

مكشوف

مكشوف

مكشوف

مكشوف

مكشوف

طى

The licences which occur are *خَبَلٌ*, *طَى*, and *خَبَلٌ*, but *خَبَلٌ* cannot be used in the second and third *عَرُوض*, and *خَبَلٌ* must not be employed in the first.

1. *خَبَلٌ* :

مَنَازِلَ عَفَاهُنْ بِذِي الْأَرَا كِ كُلِّ وَاءِ بِلِ مُسَبِّ لِي هَطَلِ
مُفَاعِلُنْ فَعُولَاتُ مُفَاعِلُنْ مُفَاعِلُنْ فَعُولَاتُ مُفْتَعِلُنْ

In 2nd *عَرُوض*.

لَمَّا التَّقْوَا بِسُورَافِ
مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَعُولَانْ

In 3rd *عَرُوض*.

مَا بِالْدِيَا رِ اَنْسِ
مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَعُولُنْ

2. *طَى* :

إِنْ سَمِىَ رَأَى عَ شِيرَتِهِ قَدْ حَدَبُوا دُونَهُ وَ قَدْ اِنْفُوا
مُفْتَعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُ مُفْتَعِلُنْ مُفْتَعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُ مُفْتَعِلُنْ

3. خَبَلٌ :

وَبَلَدٍ	مُتَشَابِهٍ	سَمِيحَةٍ	قَطْعَةٍ	رَجُلٍ	لَمَى جَمَلٍ
فَعَلَتْ	فَعَلَاتْ	مُسْتَعْلِمٍ	فَعَلَتْ	فَعَلَاتْ	مُسْتَعْلِمٍ

11. ^{بسيط}بِجَرِّ الْخَفِيفِ. THE LIGHT OR EASY METRE.

NAME OF THE ضَرْبٌ	العجز ع	الغرض ع	الصدر ع	NAME OF THE ضَرْبٌ
صَحِيحٌ ١	فَاعِلَانِ	فَاعِلَانِ	مُسْتَقِيمٌ	فَاعِلَانِ
مَحْذُوفٌ ٢	فَاعِلَانِ	فَاعِلَانِ	فَاعِلَانِ	فَاعِلَانِ
مَحْذُوفٌ ١	فَاعِلَانِ	فَاعِلَانِ	فَاعِلَانِ	فَاعِلَانِ
صَحِيحٌ ١	مُسْتَقِيمٌ	مُسْتَقِيمٌ	مُسْتَقِيمٌ	مُسْتَقِيمٌ
مَحْذُوفٌ ٢	مُسْتَقِيمٌ	مُسْتَقِيمٌ	مُسْتَقِيمٌ	مُسْتَقِيمٌ

عروض
صَحِيحَةٌ
1st

عروض
مَحْذُوفَةٌ
2nd

عروض
صَحِيحَةٌ
3rd

Licences: **خَبْنٌ**, **كُتِّ**, and **شَكْلٌ**.

1. **خَبْنٌ** is allowed in the **عَرُوض** and **ضَرْبٌ**, as well as in the body of the verse, as

وَفَوَادَى كَعَبْدٍ سَلِيمٍ بِهِوَ لَمْ يَحِلْ وَلَمْ يَتَغَيَّرْ
فَعِلَاتِنْ مُنْفَعِلِنْ فَعِلَاتِنْ مُنْفَعِلِنْ فَعِلَاتِنْ
بَيْنَمَا نَحْنُ فِي الْعَقِيْقَةِ مَعًا إِذْ أَتَى رَا كِبَاءَ عَلَى جَمَلِهِ
فَاعِلَاتِنْ مُنْفَعِلِنْ فَعِلْنَ فَاعِلَاتِنْ مُنْفَعِلِنْ فَعِلْنَ

In second **ضَرْبٌ** of the first **عَرُوضٌ**.

وَالْمَنَايَا مَا بَيْنَنَا رَوْغَادٍ كُلُّ حَيٍّ فِي حَبْلِهَا عَلِقُ
فَاعِلَاتِنْ مُسْتَفْعِلِنْ فَاعِلَاتِنْ مُسْتَفْعِلِنْ فَعِلْنَ

2. **كُتِّ** :

يَا عَمِيرَ مَا تَظْهَرُ مِنْ حَوَاثٍ أَوْ تَكُنْ يَسْتَكْشِرُ حِينَ يَبْدُو
فَاعِلَاتٌ مُسْتَفْعِلٌ فَاعِلَاتٌ مُسْتَفْعِلٌ فَاعِلَاتِنْ

3. **شَكْلٌ** :

صَرَمَتَكَ أَسْمَاءُ بَعْدَ دَوَالِهَا فَاصْبَحْ مَتَّ مَكْتَرٌ بِأَحْزِينَا
فَعِلَاتٌ مُسْتَفْعِلِنْ فَعِلَاتٌ مُنْفَعِلٌ فَاعِلَاتِنْ

ضَرْبٌ also occurs in the first تَشْعِيبٌ .

يَتَرَقُّونَ نَ كَالسَّارِ بِ وَقَدْ خَفَ نَ غَمَارًا مِّنَ الشَّرِّ بِ الْجَارِ
فَعِلَانٌ مِّنْعَانٌ فَعِلَانٌ فَعِلَانٌ مِّنْعَانٌ مِّنْعُولٌ

ضَرْبٌ becoming مَنْعُولٌ in the فَاعِلَانٌ .

12. بحر المضارع . THE DOUBTFUL METRE.

NAME OF THE صُورَةُ	صُورَةُ	صُورَةُ	NAME OF THE صُورَةُ
ضَرْبٌ .	الضَرْبُ	العَرُوضُ	شَرْوُضٌ .
	مَقَامِعِينَ	مَقَامِعِينَ	
	قَاعِ لَاتِينَ	قَاعِ لَاتِينَ	
	قَاعِ لَاتِينَ	قَاعِ لَاتِينَ	
صَحِيحٌ			شَرْوُضٌ 1st
			مَجْزُوءٌ صَحِيحٌ

EXAMPLE OF الْمَضَارِعُ .

NAME OF THE صُورَةُ	صُورَةُ	صُورَةُ	NAME OF THE صُورَةُ
ضَرْبٌ .	الضَرْبُ	العَرُوضُ	شَرْوُضٌ .
	مَقَامِعِينَ	مَقَامِعِينَ	
	قَاعِ لَاتِينَ	قَاعِ لَاتِينَ	
	قَاعِ لَاتِينَ	قَاعِ لَاتِينَ	
صَحِيحٌ			شَرْوُضٌ 1st
			مَجْزُوءٌ صَحِيحٌ

In this metre the *ى* and *ن* of the foot مَنَاعِيْلُنْ cannot both be retained at once. This rule is called مُرَاقِبَةٌ.

In the verse given as an example above, the *ن* is suppressed; an instance of the suppression of the *ى* is

وَقَدْ رَأَيْتُ الرِّجَالَ فَمَا أَرَى مِثْلَ زَيْدٍ
مَنَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُ مَنَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ

where the عُرُوضُ كُنْتُ suffers

خَرَبٌ and شَتْرٌ occur.

1. شَتْرٌ :

سَوْفَ أَهْدِي لِسَلَمَى ثَنَاءً لِمَى ثَنَاءً
فَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ مَنَاعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ

the مَنَاعِلُنْ of the first foot becoming فَاعِلُنْ.

2. خَرَبٌ :

إِنْ تَدْنِ مِنْهُ شَبْرًا يَقْرِبُكَ مِنْهُ بَاعًا
مَنْعُولُ فَاعِلَاتُنْ مَنْعُولُ فَاعِلَاتُنْ

In this metre the *ف* and the *و* of *مَفْعُولَاتُ* cannot both be retained together.

In the example the *و* has been suppressed by *طَائِيٌّ*.

The following is an instance of the dropping of the *ف* :

وَالْمَذَرِ	بِالْيَمِينِ	بَشِيرَنَا	أَتَانَا
مُفْتَعِلِينَ	مَفْعُولَاتُ	مُفْتَعِلِينَ	وَمَفْعُولَاتُ

They are only very rarely retained together, as in the verse :

وَمِنْ كَثِيرِ	بَلْ أَدْعُوكَ	وَمِنْ بَعْدِ	لَا أَدْعُوكَ
مُفْتَعِلِينَ	مَفْعُولَاتُ	مُفْتَعِلِينَ	مَفْعُولَاتُ

مَفْعُولَاتُ and *الْمُضَارِعِ* are of very rare occurrence in classical poetry.

14. بحر المجتث THE DOCKED METRE.

العجز

الصدر

NAME OF THE ضرب	الضرب	العجز	الفتروض	الصدر	NAME OF THE شروض
صحيح	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	مستعلن
مخذوف	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	مستعلن
مخذوف مخبون	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	فاعلاتن	مستعلن

1st عروض
مخزولة صحيحا

2nd عروض
مخزولة مخذولة

أَلْفَاظُ الْمُحْتَفِ

EXAMPLES OF

NAME OF THE	الْعَجَزُ	الضَرْبُ	الْعَرُوضُ	الضَرْبُ	الضَرْبُ	NAME OF THE
ضَرْبُ	الضَرْبُ	الضَرْبُ	الضَرْبُ	الضَرْبُ	الضَرْبُ	شُرُوضُ
صَحِيحٌ	لَنْ يَلَامَا	لَنْ يَلَامَا	مُسْتَهَامَا	يَحْتَبِ يَلْحِي	يَا مَنْ عَلَى الْ	عَرُوضُ 1st
صَحِيحٌ	بَعْضُ حَاجَةٍ	بَعْضُ حَاجَةٍ	لَنْ أَصَابَتْ	لَنْ أَصَابَتْ	أَجْنَتْ يَدِي	عَرُوضُ 2nd
صَحِيحٌ	وَالْعَدَمُ	وَالْعَدَمُ	هَذَا الْقَدَمُ	هَذَا الْقَدَمُ	دَارَعْنَا	عَرُوضُ 1st
صَحِيحٌ	سَلَمَةٌ	سَلَمَةٌ	بِالْيَمِينِ مِنْ	بِالْيَمِينِ مِنْ	صَاحِ الْفَرَا	عَرُوضُ 2nd
صَحِيحٌ	مَحْذُوفٌ مَحْذُورٌ	مَحْذُوفٌ مَحْذُورٌ				مَحْذُوفٌ مَحْذُورٌ

¹ Rare and post-classical.

This metre is very rarely used in its full form as in the first example.

The following licences are allowed—**خَبْنٌ**, **كَفٌّ**, and **شَكْلٌ**.

1. **خَبْنٌ** :

وَلَوْ عَلِقَ	مَتِ بِسَلَمَى	عَلِمْتَ أَنَّ	سَمَوْتُ
مُنْفَاعِلُنْ	فَعِلَاتُنْ	مُنْفَاعِلُنْ	فَعِلَاتُنْ

2. **كَفٌّ** :

مَا كَانَ عَ	طَاوَهَنَّ	إِلَّا عِدَ	دَ نِمْارَا
مُسْتَفْعِلُ	فَاعِلَاتُ	مُسْتَفْعِلُ	فَاعِلَاتُنْ

3. **شَكْلٌ**, in the first and third foot :

أَوْلَيْكَ	خَيْرَ قَوْمٍ	إِذَا ذِكُ	رَ الْخِيَارِ
مُنْفَاعِلُ	فَاعِلَاتُنْ	مُنْفَاعِلُ	فَاعِلَاتُنْ

تَشْعِيثٌ also occurs, but if the **ضَرْبٌ** suffer **تَشْعِيثٌ**, it may not suffer **خَبْنٌ** also.

An example of this licence is—

عَلَى الدِّيَا	رِ الْقَفَّارِ	وَالنَّوَى وَالْ	أَحْجَارِ
مُنْفَاعِلُنْ	فَاعِلَاتُنْ	مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ	مُنْفَعُولُنْ

تَظَلُّ عِيَّ	نُكَتْ تَجْرِي	بِرَأَكْف	سِدْرَارِ
مَنْعَ لِنَ	فَعِلَاتِنَ	مَنْعَ لِنَ	مَنْعُولِنَ
فَلَيْسَ بِأَا	لَمِيلِ تَهْدِي	شَوْفَا وَلَا	بِالْمِهَارِ
مَنْعَ لِنَ	فَاعِلَاتِنَ	مُسْتَفْعَ لِنَ	فَاعِلَاتِنَ

where the ضَرْبُ is sometimes فَاعِلَاتِنَ and sometimes مَنْعُولِنَ.

EXAMPLES OF الْمُتَقَارِبُ.

NAME OF THE	العجز		الصدر		NAME OF THE
ضرب	النزب	العجز	الغرض	الصدر	شروض
١ صحيح	بلا	فؤادى يعانى	حماما	على من	شروض 1st
٢ منظور	بلا	"	"	"	(صحيحة)
٣ مكذوف	بلي	"	"	"	
٤ ابتر	ومن ميه ميه	سليمى	على راسه م دار	توجا	
١ مكذوف	بذات ال غضا	لسلمى	فرت	امس له	شروض 2nd
٢ ابتر	ف يانم كا	فماينة	تمس	ولا تب	مكذوف

When the **ضَرْبُ** is **مَحْدُوفٌ** the **عَرُوضٌ** may also suffer the same modification, so that there is an alternation between **فَعُولُنْ** and **فَعَلْ**, thus :

كَانَ الْمَدَامُ وَصَوَّبَ الْغَمَامُ وَرِيحُ الْخَزَامِي وَنَشْرُ الْقَطْرِ

فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ

يَعْلُ بِهَا بَرْدَانِيَا بِهَا إِذَا غَرَّ رَدَّ الظَّائِرُ الْمَسَّ تَحِيرُ

فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ

قَبْضٌ occurs as a variation in the metre.

أَفَادَ فَجَادَ فَسَادَ فَزَادَ * وَقَادَ فَذَادَ وَعَادَ فَافْضَلَ

فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ

ثَلَمٌ and **ثَرَمٌ** may also be used.

1. **ثَلَمٌ** :

لَوْلَا خِدَاشٌ أَخَذَتْ جَمَالَا دَتِ بَكْرٍ وَأَمَاءٌ ظَلَمَ مَا عَلَيْهَا

فَعْلُنْ فَعْلُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ

where the first foot is **فَعْلُنْ**.

2. ثَم :

قُلْتُ سَدَادًا لِمَنْ جَاءَ نَعْنَى فَاَحْسَنْتُ قَوْلًا وَاَحْسَنْتُ رَأْيَا
فَعَلٌ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ فَعُولُنْ

where the first foot is فَعُولٌ.

بَحْرُ الْمَتَارِكِ THE CONSECUTIVE METRE.

NAME OF THE ضَرْبٌ	النَّصْرُ	الْعَجَزُ	العروض	الصدر	NAME OF THE ضَرْبٌ
مَنْخَبُونَ ¹	فَاعِلِينَ فَاعِلِينَ فَعْلِينَ	فَاعِلِينَ فَاعِلِينَ فَعْلِينَ	فَاعِلِينَ فَاعِلِينَ فَعْلِينَ	فَاعِلِينَ فَاعِلِينَ فَعْلِينَ	عروض ¹ مَنْخَبُونَ ¹
مَرْفَلٌ ¹	فَاعِلَاتِينَ فَاعِلَاتِينَ	فَاعِلِينَ فَاعِلِينَ	فَاعِلِينَ فَاعِلِينَ	فَاعِلِينَ فَاعِلِينَ	عروض ² مَنْخَبُونَ ²
مَنْذِلٌ ²	فَاعِلَاتِينَ	فَاعِلَاتِينَ	فَاعِلَاتِينَ	فَاعِلَاتِينَ	عروض ² مَنْخَبُونَ ²

¹ When used thus with خَبِينَ in every foot it is called بَحْرُ الْخَبِينَ.

There is a modification of this metre, in which every foot becomes مَقْطُوعٌ; the effect of this is to make the verse consist entirely of long syllables, and it is then called قَطْرُ الْمِيزَابِ “drops from the spout,” or ضَرْبُ النَّاقُوسِ “striking the *naḳûs*.”¹

The following is an example :

نُومِي حَتَّى جِسْمِي اسْتَقَمَ	أَدْوَى بَدْرًا جَفْنِي أَحْرَمَ
دَمْعِي قَانَ وَشَلَّ الْعَنْدَمَ	نَادَى قَلْبِي طَوْعًا حَسْبِي

¹ A wooden board suspended by chains and beaten, to serve instead of bells, in Christian churches in the East—bells having formerly been prohibited.

SECTION II.—THE RHYME.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF RHYME.

(203). The قَافِيَة, or Rhyme, is comprised between the last two quiescent letters of a verse.

There are five kinds of قَافِيَة, distinguished by the number of vowelled letters which intervene between the last two quiescent letters, viz.

Name of Rhyme.	Number of Letters Intervening.	Example.
مُتَرَادِفٌ	none	الْبَخِيلُ
مُتَوَاتِرٌ	1	وَلَا أَدْرِ
مُتَدَارِكٌ	2	لَوْ جَمَدُ
مُتَرَائِبٌ	3	عَنْ سَبْرِى
مُتَكَوِّسٌ	4	إِلَى الْخَنِيضِ قَدَمُهُ

(204). CONSONANTS OF THE قَافِيَة.

رَوِى is the consonant upon which the rhyme depends, and which remains the same throughout the poem, as the ل in الْعَطَالِ, or the م in حَفَدَم. A *kaşûlah* rhyming in either of these letters would be called respectively قَصِيدَةٌ رَوِيَّةٌ or قَصِيدَةٌ لَامِيَّةٌ.

The following cannot be employed as رَوِى :

ا, و, and ى, unless they are radical, or و and ى forming diphthong with a preceding *fethah*.

هَـ, (pronouns), unless preceded by a long vowel, as
نِسْوَادًا.

خُرُوجٌ and صَلَـةٌ.

If the قَائِمَةٌ end in a vowel, this is always considered as long, whether it be written so or not; when it is *fethah*, the ا is usually written, but with *kesrah* and *dhammah* the و and ى are not often expressed. This additional letter of prolongation is called صَلَـةٌ.

مَكَانِيٌّ may take َ after it for its صَلَـةٌ, as مَكَانِيَّةٌ for مَكَانِيٌّ.

When the pronoun يُ following the رَوَيْ has its vowel so pronounced, the letter understood is called خُرُوجٌ.

رَدَفٌ is a letter of prolongation coming before the رَوَيْ, as the ا, و, and ى in the words نَصِيرٌ, تَدْوِرٌ, سَلَامٌ.

تَأْنِيسٌ is an ا of prolongation coming before the رَوَيْ, but separated from it by a consonant, which is called دَخِيلٌ, as in the words صَابِرٌ, قَادِرٌ. The دَخِيلٌ may differ in every verse.

(205). VOWELS OF THE قَائِمَةٌ.

مَجْرَى is the vowel of the رَوَيْ, which becomes long by the addition of the صَلَـةٌ.

نَفَادٌ is the vowel between the letter َ of the pronoun when it occurs as صَلَـةٌ and the خُرُوجٌ.

تَوَجِيةٌ is the vowel immediately preceding the رَوَيْ, as the *kesrah* in سَيِّدِي.

إِشْبَاعٌ is the vowel of the دَخِيلٌ when the قَائِمَةٌ is مَوْسَسَةٌ, as the *kesrah* in صَابِرٌ, قَادِرٌ.

حَدُوٌ is the vowel of the letter preceding the رَدَفٌ, and made long by the latter, as the *fethah*, *kesrah*, and *dhammah* preceding the letter of prolongation in the words نَصِيرٌ, تَدْوِرٌ, and سَلَامٌ.

In the *ridf* و and ى may interchange; for instance, the word عِيدُ is considered as rhyming with تُعِيدُ, and مَسْمُوعٌ with مُجَاعِعٌ. A similar interchange may take place in the تَوْجِيهٌ, *q.v.*

ا as a رَدْفٌ and *fethah* in the تَوْجِيهٌ are invariable.

The قَافِيَةٌ is called—

مُطَالِقَةٌ when it ends in a vowel.

مُقَيَّدَةٌ when it ends in a consonant.

رَدْفَةٌ when it has a رَدْفٌ.

تَأْنِيْسٌ when it has a تَأْنِيْسٌ.

مَجْرَدَةٌ when it has neither.

عَيْبٌ FAULTY RHYME.

(206). Any departure from the preceding rules is called عَيْبٌ “a fault.” The Arab writers on Prosody enumerate the following :

سَدَانٌ making an improper interchange of vowels in the إِشْبَاعٌ, تَوْجِيهٌ, or حَدْوٌ (*q.v.*).

مَجْرَى إِقْوَاءٌ changing the مَجْرَى.

إِكْنَاءٌ substituting a cognate consonant for the رَوِيٌّ.

إِيطَاءٌ repeating the same word as a rhyme in the course of a poem unless at least seven verses intervene.

تَتْمِيمٌ } so connecting a verse with one that follows that
or
تَتْمِيمٌ } the meaning of the first is not complete until the second be heard or read. Every verse should contain a distinct and intelligible proposition.

ضرورة الشعر POETICAL LICENCE.

(207). The only poetical licence which is considered not to be a blemish is that of making an imperfectly declined

noun declinable, as in the example on p. 103. The reason why this is approved of is, the Arab doctors say, that it is only restoring the noun to its original state.

The Arab poets do, however, as may be expected, take frequent liberties with grammar and orthography in order to meet the exigences of their metres. The following are the principal of these licences :

Changing a *hemzet el-kata'* into a *hemzet el-wasl* (see p. 13), as *يَا لَ مَرَوَانَ* for *يَا أَهْلَ مَرَوَانَ* ; *مُجِيرُ أُمِّ عَامِرٍ* for *مُجِيرُ أُمِّ عَامِرٍ*.

Throwing back the vowel of the *hemzet el-kata'* when so changed on to the preceding consonant, if that be a quiescent letter, as *لَوَّانٌ* for *لَوَّانٌ*.

Changing a *hemzet el-kata'* into the corresponding letter of prolongation, as *رَأْسٌ* for *رَأْسٌ* ; *ذَيْبٌ* for *ذَيْبٌ*, etc.

Dropping the *hemzet el-kata'* altogether, as *آلَسَمَاءُ* for *آلَسَمَاءُ*.

Vice versá, changing a *hemzet el-wasl* into a *hemzet el-kata'*, as *وَإِصْبِرِي* for *وَإِصْبِرِي*.

The *!* of *مَا*, when interrogative, is frequently omitted, as *حَتَّى مَا* for *حَتَّى مَا*.

Other and more violent licences, such as the lengthening a short vowel, or *vice versá* ; the improper use of the *tenwín* and *teshdíd* ; the suppression or insertion of vowels, and the abbreviation of syllables, need not occupy the student's attention, as they occur comparatively seldom, and are nearly always noticed in the commentaries upon the poems in which they are found.

APPENDIX.

GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS USED IN ARABIC GRAMMAR.

^سإِبَاحَةٌ according a full licence.
^سإِبْتِدَاءٌ inchoative, subject.
^سإِلْبَتْدَاءٌ فِي الزَّمَانِ commencement
 of a certain period of time.
^سأَبْجَدٍ alphabet (arranged in nu-
 merical order).
^سإِبْطَالٌ causing a grammatical action
 to cease to take effect.
^سأَبْنِيَّةُ الْمُبَالَغَةِ forms implying in-
 tensity.
^سإِتْبَاعٌ apposition, sequence.
^سإِتْبَاعُ الْمَحَلِّ apposition according to
 the context.
^سإِتِّصَالٌ relation of connexion.
^سإِجَابَةُ الْمَسْئَلَةِ in answer to a
 tentative question.
^سأَجْنِبِيٌّ extraneous; any part of a
 proposition beside the antec-
 edent (subject or agent), the com-
 plement of a verb or an adverb
 of condition.
^سأَجْرَفٌ hollow.

^سأَحَادٌ units.
^سالْأَحْدَاثُ anything that has hap-
 pened.
^سالْإِخْبَارُ enunciative.
^سالْإِخْبَارُ عَنِ الشَّيْءِ بِالَّذِي express-
 ing the quality of a thing by
 means of the conjunctive ad-
 jective الَّذِي.
^سأَخْتُ الْفَتْحَةِ the sister of *fethah*,
 i.e. the homologous letter ا.
^سإِخْتِصَاصٌ ownership, speciality.
^سآخِرُ الْحُرُوفِ ي the last letter in
 the alphabet.
^سأَخْصٌ especial.
^سأَخَوَاتُ كَانَ the verbs mentioned
 on p. 242.
^سإِخْنَاءٌ occultation; a dull pro-
 nunciation of the ن.
^سأَدَاةُ التَّعْرِيفِ the article, particles,
 etc., which render a noun definite.
^سإِدْخَامٌ insertion, assimilation of two
 letters.

إِدْغَامٌ بِعِثَّةٍ insertion with nasal sound; suppression of the ن before ي, و, or ن, which are then doubled, but a slight nasal sound is still heard.

إِدْغَامٌ بِلاَ عِثَّةٍ suppression of the ن before ر and ل, which are then doubled to compensate for the loss.

إِدْغَامٌ صَغِيرٌ فِي الْمَتَجَانِسِينَ assimilation of the last quiescent consonant of a word with a homogeneous letter commencing the following word.

إِدْغَامٌ صَغِيرٌ فِي الْمَثْلِينَ assimilation of the last quiescent consonant of a word with the same letter beginning the next word.

إِدْغَامٌ كَبِيرٌ فِي الْمَتَجَانِسِينَ assimilation of the last letter, even when not quiescent, with a homogeneous letter beginning the next word.

إِدْغَامٌ كَبِيرٌ فِي الْمَثْلِينَ assimilation of the last letter, even when not quiescent, with the same letter beginning the next word.

إِذَا الْمَفْاجَاةُ the word إِذَا signifying something unexpected.

الْأَرْبَعُ الزَّائِدُ the four increments, the letters ن, ي, و, ت, used in forming the inflexions of the aorist.

إِسْتِثْنَالٌ difficulty of pronunciation.

إِسْتِثْنَاءٌ exception.

إِسْتِدْرَاكٌ serving to retain or correct what has been previously enunciated.

إِسْتِزْدَالٌ expressing disdain.

إِسْطَالَةٌ extension.

إِسْتِعَارَةٌ metaphor.

إِسْتِعَارِيٌّ metaphorical.

إِسْتِعَانَةٌ indicating the employment of means, instrument, etc.

إِسْتِعْلَاءٌ elevation.

إِسْتِعَاثَةٌ calling for aid.

إِسْتِغْرَاقٌ being absolute and complete (a negation, etc.).

إِسْتِغْرَاقُ أَفْرَادِ الْجِنْسِ حَقِيقَةً including all the individuals of a species, in a natural sense.

إِسْتِغْرَاقُ خَصَائِصِ الْجِنْسِ مَجَازًا including all the properties of a species, in a metaphorical sense.

إِسْتِغْثَالٌ depression.

إِسْتِثْبَاهٌ interrogation.

إِسْتِثْبَالٌ future.

إِسْتِثْنَاءٌ introducing a new proposition independent of the preceding.

أَسْلِيَّةٌ (consonants) formed with the tip of the tongue.

إِسْمٌ noun or pronoun.

إِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ demonstrative pronoun.

إِسْمُ آلَةٍ noun of instrument.

إِسْمُ إِنْ the nominative of the particle إِنْ.

إِسْمٌ تَامٌ perfect noun.

إِسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ comparative or superlative.

إِسْمُ جَسَدٍ concrete noun.

إِسْمُ الْجَمْعِ collective noun.

إِسْمُ ذَاتٍ real or concrete noun.

إِسْمُ الْجِنْسِ noun of species.

إِسْمُ جِنْسٍ جَمْعِي collective generic noun.

إِسْمُ الزَّمَانِ وَالْمَكَانِ noun of time and place.

إِسْمٌ صَرِيحٌ a real noun.

إِسْمٌ عَلَى النِّسَبِ possessive noun or epithet.

إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ agent.

إِسْمُ الْفِعْلِ noun of action.

إِسْمُ الْكَثْرَةِ noun of abundance.

إِسْمُ الْمَرَّةِ noun of unity (of time).

إِسْمٌ لِلْمُتَدَرِّجِ or إِسْمُ الْمُتَدَرِّجِ quasi-infinitive noun.

إِسْمٌ هَوَوَلٌ an expression equivalent to a noun.

إِسْمُ الْمَقْعُولِ patient, passive participle.

إِسْمُ الْمُنْسُوبِ noun of relation.

إِسْمُ النَّوْعِ noun of unity (of species).

إِسْمُ الْوَسْأَةِ noun denoting the vessel in which a thing is contained.

إِسْمُ حَدَثٍ noun of accident, *i. q.* مصدر.

إِسْمٌ فِي بَابٍ ظَنَنْتَ nominative of a verb in the category of ظَنَّ (see p. 246).

إِسْمُ الظَّرْفِ noun of time and place.

إِسْمُ الْعَدَدِ numeral.

إِسْمٌ عَيْنٍ real or concrete noun.

إِسْمُ الْكَيْفِيَّةِ abstract noun of quality.

إِسْمٌ مُبَالَغَةٍ noun of exaggeration, intensity or excess.

إِسْمٌ مُبْتَمِزٌ a vague or indeterminate noun, such as those on p. 285 (183).

إِسْمٌ مُتَدَرِّجٌ verbal noun, quasi-infinitive.

إِسْمٌ مُتَصَدَّرٌ diminutive noun.

إِسْمٌ مُضْمَرٌ implied or understood, noun, pronoun = ضَمِيرٌ.

إِسْمٌ مُعْنَى ideal or abstract noun.

إِسْمٌ مُتَقَابِلٌ لِلْفِعْلِ وَالْحَرْفِ the noun opposed to the verb and particle.

إِسْمُ الْوَحْدَةِ noun of unity.

أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ the demonstrative pronouns.

أَسْمَاءُ الْأَفْعَالِ adverbs which perform the functions of verbs.

أَسْمَاءٌ سَمِيَّتْ بِهَا الْأَفْعَالُ, *i. e.*

أَسْمَاءُ الْأَفْعَالِ.

أَسْمَاءُ الْعَدَدِ numerals.

- الاسم المشتق من العدد على وزن
 فاعِل nouns derived from num-
 bers on the measure of the agent.
 أسماء منقوصة imperfect nouns.
 إسناد relation of the subject to the
 attribute.
 إسنادى a proper name, consisting
 of a complete proposition, *i.e.* of
 a subject and predicate.
 إشباع in poetry, using a long for
 a short vowel (see also p. 374).
 إشتراك فى الفاعلية والمفعولية
 expressing the idea of agent and
 patient at the same time.
 إشغال distracted or diverted from
 its original object.
 إشتمال enunciating an idea com-
 prised in an antecedent proposi-
 tion.
 إشمام insinuating (the sound of a
 vowel which is not written).
 اصطلاحه technical or conventional
 term.
 اصطلاحى technical.
 أصل root.
 أصلى radical.
 أصوله radicals.
 أصول roots, principles.
 أصم surd verb = مضاعف doubled.
 أصوات interjections.
 إضافة connexion, state of con-
 struction of two nouns.
- إضافة المرادف إلى مرادفه such
 a construction as نهر الفرات
 the River Euphrates.
 إضافى proper name formed of two
 nouns in a state of construction.
 إضباط fixing, *i.e.* giving letters their
 proper vowels.
 إضمار implying.
 إطراد being general.
 مطبقة see إطباق.
 إطلاق being absolute.
 إظهار clear pronunciation.
 إعراب declension of nouns; add-
 ing vowel points.
 الإغراء urging or exciting to the
 performance of an action.
 الإنشاء أفعال inchoative verbs.
 أفعال التعجب verbs signifying
 wonder.
 أفعال الحس verbs of sense or
 feeling.
 أفعال الشروع inchoative verbs.
 أفعال الشك واليقين verbs im-
 plying doubt or certainty.
 أفعال القلب verbs denoting a
 mental process.
 أفعال القلب, *i.g.* أفعال قلبية.
 أفعال المدح والذم verbs of praise
 and blame.
 أفعال المقاربة approximate verbs.

ناقصَة incomplete verbs, *i.g.*

كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا.

أَفْعَلُ the form أَفْعَلُ when signifying comparative or superlative (as distinguished from the same form in the sense of colour or deformity).

مُسْتَبْتَبِ الْجُمُوعِ, see أَقْصَى الْجُمُوعِ.

أَكُونِي الْبِرَاعِثِ a formula employed to express an unusual concordance between the verb and the agent when the former agrees in number with the latter, in violation of the rules given on p. 180 (101).

إِلَى آخِرِهِ abbreviation for إِلَى آخِرِهِ etc.

إِلْصَاقٌ adhesion, propinquity.

إِلْغَاءٌ depriving (a verb, etc.) of its grammatical influence.

إِلْفُ النَّدْبَةِ the ا added to a word to express grief, complaint, etc.

هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ *i.g.* الْفِ الْوَصْلِ.

هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ *i.g.* الْفِ الْقَطْعِ.

إِلْفٌ مُفْرَدٌ isolated *alif*, *i.g.*

الْفِ مِلْسَاءً.

إِلْفٌ مُقْصُودٌ short *alif*, the termination ي, see p. 74.

إِلْفٌ مِلْسَاءً soft *alif*.

إِلْفٌ مَمْدُودٌ long *alif*, the termination آ.

الْإِلْفُ وَاللَّامُ the article.

الْإِلْفُ وَالنُّونُ الزَّائِدَتَانِ the addition of the termination اَن.

أَلْفٌ thousands.

إِمَالَةٌ giving the sound of *é* to an *alif*, see p. 9 (7).

أَمْثَلَةٌ pl. of مَثَالٌ *q.v.*

أَمْرٌ imperative.

إِنْ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا see p. 248 (154).

أَنْ which performs the functions of a noun of action.

إِنْتِبَاطٌ term, limit.

إِحْرَافٌ alteration.

إِنْتِاحٌ being open (the shape of a letter, as ط).

إِهْمَالٌ omission (of the vowel points, etc.).

إِجَابٌ affirmative proposition.

ب

بَاءُ الثَّمَنِ the preposition ب signifying the price at which, etc.

بَابٌ category, conjugation.

بَارِزٌ sensible, obvious.

بَدَلٌ substitute or permutative; this is of four sorts, viz. :

بَدَلُ الْإِسْتِمَالِ permutation of comprehension, enunciating an idea contained in, or inseparable from the antecedent.

بَدَلُ الْبَعْضِ مِنَ الْكُلِّ substitution
of part for the whole.

بَدَلُ الْغَلَطِ substitution correcting
a former statement.

بَدَلُ الْكُلِّ مِنَ الْكُلِّ substitution
enunciating the same idea from
a different point of view.

بَدَلٌ مِنَ الْمَضَافِ إِلَيْهِ substitution
of the article to express the
idea of the second of two nouns
in a state of construction.

بَدِيعٌ a rhetorical figure.

عِلْمُ الْبَدِيعِ rhetoric.

بَيِّنَةٌ indeclinability.

بَيَانٌ explanatory adverbial com-
plement.

ت

تَا۟ءٌ مَبْسُوطَةٌ the termination ت.

تَا۟ءٌ مَرْبُوطَةٌ the termination ة.

تَابِعٌ appositive.

تَأْكِيدٌ corroboration, emphasizing,
making energetic.

تَامَةٌ perfect or attributive verbs.

تَأْنِيثٌ feminine.

تَبْهِي۟ةٌ (a negation) completely
effacing the idea of the existence
of the thing denied.

تَبْعِي۟ضٌ expressing a portion of a
whole.

تَبْيِي۟نٌ distinguishing, explaining.

تَشْدِي۟دٌ, i.g. تَشْثِيلٌ.

تَشْنِي۟ةٌ dual.

تَجَدُّدٌ constant renewal.

تَجْرِدٌ } despoiling a word of its
grammatical influence on
what follows.

تَجْنِي۟سٌ being homogeneous, allit-
eration, a pun.

تَخْفِيفٌ a gentle request or in-
vitation.

تَحْقِيرٌ to express disdain.

تَحْقِيقُ الْهَمْزَةِ giving the *hemzeh* its
full value.

تَخْفِيفٌ making light, writing a
single for a doubled letter.

تَرَادُفٌ a series of distinct words
indicating one and the same
object from the same point of
view; synonyms.

تَرْحَمٌ compassion.

تَرْجٍ hope.

تَرْخِيمٌ cutting off the last syllable
of a word, as اِبْنُ مَالٍ for
اِبْنُ مَالِكٍ. See p. 200 (114).

تَتْدِي۟مٌ putting (a letter, etc.) first.

تَرْقِي۟مٌ } writing the numerical
or
تَرْقِي۟نٌ } cyphers in ordinary use.

تَرْكِي۟بٌ composition, arrangement.

تَرْنَمٌ chaunting, intoning.

تَسْجِي۟عٌ rhythmical prose.

تَسْكِي۟نٌ making a letter quiescent.

صَـرَّـرَ dropping or softening the *hemzeh*.

تَشْدِيدُ adding the mark ّ to double a letter. The mark ّ itself.

تَصْرِيفُ inflexion, changing from one form to another.

تَصْغِيرُ diminutive.

تَعْجَبُ admiration.

تَعْدِيَةٌ rendering transitive.

تَعَذُّرُ impossibility.

تَعْدَادُ numeration.

تَعْرِضُ hinting, innuendo, being ambiguous.

تَعْلِيْقُ leaving in suspense.

تَعْرِيفُ making definite.

تَعْلِيلُ expressing the cause of an event.

تَغْيِيرُ change.

تَفْسِيرُ exposition (especially of the Korān).

تَغْشُ dilatation.

تَقْدِيرٌ virtually.

تَقْدِيرِيٌّ virtual.

تَقْطِيعُ scansion.

تَقْوِيَةُ الْعَامِلِ strengthening the influence of the antecedent.

تَكْرِيْرُ repetition.

تَمَنُّ hoping.

تَمَكِّيْنُ confirming.

تَمْيِيْزُ specificative or discriminative.

تَنَازُعٌ فِي الْعَمَلِ grammatical influence of various antecedents upon their complements in one sentence; see p. 264 (166).

تَنَاسُبُ harmony.

تَنْصِيصُ, i.q. اِسْتِعْرَاقُ.

تَنْكِيرُ making indefinite.

تَنْوِيْنُ doubling a final vowel, which is then pronounced with a nasal sound; see p. 6 (4).

تَوَاضُعُ appositives.

تَوْكِيدُ corroborative.

ث

ثَقِيْلَةٌ (a letter) having *teshdid*.

ثَلَاثِيٌّ trilateral.

ثَنَا abbreviation for حَدَّثَنَا "he related to us."

ثَنَاءِيٌّ biliteral.

ج

جَ abbreviation for جَمْعُ plural, and in the Korān for جَائِزٌ a lawful pause.

جَارٌ preposition.

جَارٌ وَ مَجْرُورٌ a preposition with its noun.

جَامِدٌ primitive (noun)

جَائِزٌ permissible.

جَمْعُ جَمْعٍ abbreviation for جَمْعُ plural of a plural.

- جَدْح denial, negation.
 جَزَاء compensation.
 جَزَم writing the mark َ above a letter to signify that it is quiescent.
 جَزَمَ the mark َ (see سُكُون).
 جَر attraction, genitive case.
 جَمْع plural.
 جَمْع التَكْسِير broken plural.
 جَمْع اِجْمَاع plural of a plural.
 جَمْع سَالِم } sound or regular
 جَمْع صَحِيح } plural.
 جَمْع عَلَى هَجَاءَيْن plural formed by the addition of two letters (regular plural).
 جَمْع مَصَح regular plural.
 جَمْع مَكْسَر broken plural.
 جَمْع الْقِلَّة plural of paucity.
 جَمْعِيَّة being simultaneous (the actions of several verbs).
 جُمْلَة sentence, clause, proposition.
 جُمْلَة اِخْبَارِيَّة enunciative proposition.
 جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة nominal proposition.
 جُمْلَة اِنْشَائِيَّة productive proposition; one expressing volition, or originating something.
 جُمْلَة حَالِيَّة proposition expressing a state or condition.
- جُمْلَة ذَاتِ الْوَجْهَيْن proposition of two phases.
 جُمْلَة شَرْطِيَّة conditional proposition.
 جُمْلَة ظَرْفِيَّة adverbial sentence, or one expressing time or place.
 جُمْلَة فِعْلِيَّة verbal sentence or proposition.
 جُمْلَة مَتَدِيَّة inchoative proposition.
 جُمْلَة جَارِيَّة مَجْرَى الظَرْفِيَّة a sentence which follows the analogy of the adverbial sentence.
 جُمْلَة مَعْتَرِضَة incidental proposition, parenthesis.
 جُمْلَة مَفْسَّرَة لِضَمِير الشَّأْن proposition interpreting the pronoun which stands for the thing or act predicated.
 جُمْلَة وَصْفِيَّة qualificative proposition.
 جُمُوع قِلَّة plurals of paucity.
 جُمُوع كَثْرَة plurals of abundance.
 جُنْس gender.
 جَوَاب response, apodosis.
 جَوَاب الْاَمْرِ apodosis of a command.
 جَوَاب الْقَسَم apodosis of an oath.
 جَوَاب الشَّرْط apodosis of a condition or hypothesis.

جواز الإلغاء the liberty of employ-
ing إلغاء *q v.*

جَوَازِمُ words which require the
aorist of a verb to be in the
apocopated mood.

جَهَر pronouncing clearly.

ح

حَاشِيَة, pl. حَوَاشِي margin, gloss.

حَال circumstance, state, or ad-
verbial condition; present tense.

حَال مَبِينَة } adverb explanatory

OR
حَال مَوْجِبَة } of condition.

حَال مَوْكِدَة adverb corroborative
of condition.

حَال الْمُتَعَلِّقِ بِالْمَوْصُوفِ adverb
of the condition of that which is
accessory to the thing qualified.

حَال الْمَوْصُوفِ condition of the
thing qualified.

حَدَث accident.

حَدُوثُ coming into existence (an
act).

حَذَف apocopation.

حَذَفٌ إِعْتِبَاطِي violent suppres-
sion.

حَرْف particle, letter.

حَرْفُ اسْتِثْنَاء particle of exception.

حَالِ الْمَقَارِنِ accusative, express-
ing a state present at a past time.

حَالِ الْمَقْدَرِ accusative, express-
ing a state conceived of as being
present at a future time.

حَرْفُ اسْتِثْبَالِ future particle.

حَرْفُ إِضْرَابِ the particle بَلْ when
there is no opposition between
the two propositions which it
unites.

حَرْفُ الْإِبْتِدَاءِ initiative particle.

حَرْفُ الْإِسْطِطَالَةِ letter of prolonga-
tion.

حَرْفُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ interrogative par-
ticle.

حَرْفُ الْإِسْتِثْنَاءِ particle intro-
ducing a fresh proposition.

حَرْفُ التَّبَعِيدِ particle of removal.

حَرْفُ التَّرْتِيبِ particle of se-
quence or gradation (ف).

حَرْفُ التَّعْلِيلِ particle enunciating
a cause.

حَرْفُ التَّنْصِيرِ exegetical or ex-
planatory particle.

حَرْفُ التَّنْشِيطِ letter of dilatation.

حَرْفُ التَّقْرِيبِ particle of proxi-
mity.

حَرْفُ التَّكْرِيرِ letter of repetition
(ر *rá*).

حَرْفُ التَّمْنَى particle of hope.

حَرْفُ التَّنْمِيهِ particle of warning,
or calling the attention.

حَرْفُ جَرِ preposition.

حَرْفُ التَّوَقُّعِ particle expressing hope or expectation.

حَرْفُ الْحَصْرِ particle of restriction.

حَرْفُ الْخُطَابِ compellative particle.

حَرْفُ الرَّدْعِ particle of repulsion.

حَرْفُ الزَّجْرِ particle of reprimand.

حَرْفُ الْعَطْفِ conjunction.

حَرْفُ الشَّرْطِ conditional particle.

حَرْفُ اللَّيْنِ soft letter.

حَرْفُ التَّنْدِبَةِ particle of complaint.

حَرْفُ تَشْبِيهِ particle of comparison.

حَرْفُ تَنْفِيسِ particles of respite (س and سَوْفَ).

حَرْفُ شَرْطٍ وَتَفْصِيلٍ وَتَوْكِيدٍ conditional, partitive, and corroborative particle.

حَرْفُ عَطْفٍ conjunction.

حَرْفٌ مَعْنَى particles which influence the sense.

حَرْفُ نَصْبٍ particles which put words in the accusative.

حَرْفَا ابْتِدَاءٍ the two initiative particles (لَئِنْ and بَلْ).

حَرْفَا الْإِسْتِدْرَاكِ the two corrective particles (لَئِنْ and بَلْ).

حَرْفَا التَّرْجِيهِ وَالْإِشْقَاقِ the two particles of hope and apprehension.

حَرْفُ ابْتِدَاءٍ } vocative particle,
حَرْفُ اَلْمَعَادَاةِ } interjection.

حَرْفُ جَوَابٍ وَجَزَاءٍ particle of response and retribution.

حَرْفُ فَصْلٍ disjunctive particle.

حَرْفٌ vowel.

حَرْفٌ بِنَائِيَّةٌ vowel of indeclinability.

حُرُوفٌ letters, particles.

حُرُوفُ الْإِضَافَةِ particles of annexation, i.e. prepositions.

حُرُوفُ الْإِنْجِرَافِ letters of deflection (ل and ر).

حُرُوفُ الْإِنْكَارِ particles of disapprobation.

حُرُوفُ الْإِيجَابِ affirmative particles.

حُرُوفُ الْبَدَلِ permutative letters.

حُرُوفُ التَّخْفِيفِ وَالْعَرْضِ particles of inciting or invitation.

حُرُوفُ التَّحْقِيقِ particles expressing conviction.

حُرُوفُ التَّذْكِيرِ particles expressing the act of recalling to mind.

حُرُوفُ التَّصْدِيقِ particles expressing assent.

حُرُوفُ التَّعْلِيلِ causal particles.

حُرُوفُ الْجَمْرِ prepositions.

أَحْرُوفُ الْجَوَارِ prepositions.

حُرُوفُ الْخَفْصِ prepositions, particles which put nouns in the genitive.

حُرُوفُ الذِّقْنِ letters articulated with the extremity of the tongue and lips.

حُرُوفُ الْحَلْقِ guttural letters.

حُرُوفُ الزَّوَائِدِ servile letters or increments.

حُرُوفُ الشَّرْطِ conditional particles.

حُرُوفُ الصَّفِيرِ sibilant letters.

حُرُوفُ الْعَنْفِ conjunctions.

حُرُوفُ الْعِلَّةِ weak letters.

حُرُوفُ الْقَصْرِ short letters.

حُرُوفُ التَّلْقِيقِ or التَّقْلِيلِ trembling or clacking letters.

حُرُوفُ اللَّيْنِ soft letters.

حُرُوفُ الْمَدِّ letters of prolongation.

حُرُوفُ الْمَضَارَعَةِ letters used in the formation of the aorist.

حُرُوفُ الْمَعْجَمِ the alphabet (arranged in the Arabic order).

حُرُوفُ الْبَيْجَاءِ the alphabet.

حُرُوفُ عَاطِفَةٍ conjunctions.

حُرُوفُ مَقْصُورَةٍ short letters.

حُرُوفُ التَّدَاءِ vocative particles.

حِسَابُ الْجَمَلِ reckoning by the numerical value of the letters.

حِظْ analogy, *i.g.* قِيَّاسٌ memory.

حَقِيقَتِي التَّائِيثِ real feminine.

حِكَايَةٍ direct narration.

حِكَايَةٍ حَالٍ مَاغِيَةٍ narrating a past circumstance as though it were present; historical present.

حِكَايَةٍ أَمْرٍ مَاضٍ direct narration of a past imperative.

حَلْقِيَةٍ guttural.

حَنْجَرِيَةٍ guttural.

خ

خَبَرٍ predicate, attribute.

الْخَبَرُ الْمَقْدَمُ the predicate placed first.

الْخَبَرُ الْمَنْتَوْبُ the predicate in the accusative.

خَفْصٍ genitive or dependent case.

خَفِيفَةٍ light—without *teshdid*.

خَمَائِشٍ quinqueliteral.

د

دَّ abbreviation for دَلَّةٌ “name of town” (in Geographical works).

دَرَجٍ continuation of the discourse, the opposite of وَثْقٌ.

دُعَاءٍ precative.

دَعَائِمُ الْأَبْوَابِ principal forms.

الدُّعَاءُ فِي الْنَبِيِّ deprecative.

دِيَوَانِي the Indian cyphers, the numerical cyphers in ordinary use, the Turkish handwriting; (also abbreviations of the Arabic names of the numerals employed by Indian and Persian merchants and accountants.)

ذ

ذَلْقِيَّة (letters) formed by a rapid movement of the lips.

ذَم blame.

ذُو الْأَرْبَعَةِ quadriliteral (verb).

ذُو الثَّلَاثَةِ trilateral (verb).

ذَوَلْقِيَّة liquids (letters).

ر

رَابِطَةٌ bond (a conjunction).

رَبَاعِي quadriliteral.

رَخَاوَةٌ feebleness (in the pronunciation of a letter).

رَخْوٌ مَحْضٌ decidedly feeble letter.

رَح abbreviation for رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ "may God have mercy upon him!" used in speaking of those who are dead.

رَقْعٌ *q. v.* *q. g.* الرَّاجِعُ

رَسْمُ الْمُصْحَفِ punctuating and vocalizing the Korān.

رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ abbreviation for رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ "May God be satisfied with him!"

رَفْعٌ nominative or subjective case, indicative mood.

رَقْمٌ هِنْدِيٌّ the ordinary numerical cyphers.

رَوْمٌ insinuating the sound of a vowel in pronunciation which is not written; (a little stronger than إِشْمَامٌ).

زَ abbreviation for مَجْزُوزٌ a tolerated pause (in the Korān).

زَائِدَةٌ pleonastic, servile (letter).

زَمَانٌ tense, time.

س

سَاكِنٌ } quiescent (letter).
سَاكِنَةٌ }

سَالِمٌ sound.

سَبَبٌ cause—the noun serving as complement to the adjective in such a construction as رَجُلٌ حَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ.

سَبَبِيٌّ relating to the cause.

سَجْعٌ rhythm.

سُكُونٌ the mark سَ showing that a letter is quiescent—quiescence of a letter (see جَزْمٌ).

سَلْبٌ a privative sense.

سِمَاعٌ irregularity, absence of analogy.

سِمَاعِيٌّ irregular.

سَمِينٌ الْكُسْكُسَةِ pronouncing the ك as س.

ش

شَاوٌ pl. شَوَائٍ rare, uncommon.

شَاغِلٌ that which distracts or diverts a word from its original grammatical influence.

شَأْنٌ state, accident, *q. g.* قِسْمَةٌ.

شِبْهُ الْفِعْلِ assimilated to (analogue of) the verb.

شِبْهُ الْجَمْعِ analogue of the plural.

شِبْهُ اسْتِعْمَالِي analogy in use.

شِبْهُ إِفْتِقَارِي analogy in having need of a proposition to complete the sense.

شِبْهُ إِهْمَالِي analogy of omission.

شِبْهُ مَعْنَوِي analogy in sense.

شِبْهُ وَضْعِي analogy in primitive form.

شَجَر the point where the two maxillaries meet.

شُجْرِيَّة (letters) formed in the upper cavity of the mouth between the tongue and the palate.

شَخْص person.

شِدَّة strong pronunciation.

شَدِيدٌ decidedly strong pronunciation.

شَرْح commentary.

شَرْط condition, hypothesis.

شَفْتِيَّة labials.

الشَّكُّ doubt.

شَكْل vowel.

شَمْسِيَّة solar (letters); see p. 11 (10).

شَيْنُ الْكَشْكَشَةِ pronouncing the ش as ك.

ص

صَرَحٌ abbreviation for مَرْحُصٌ, a pause that is allowed if necessary (in the Korān).

صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ object of the adverbial determination of state or condition.

صَحِيحٌ sound, regular.

صَرَفٌ inflexion, conjugation, accident.

صِفَةٌ qualificative.

صِفَةٌ مُشَبِّهَةٌ assimilated adjective—resembling the agent as شَرِبَ (شَارِبٌ).

صَدْرٌ fore part, first member of.

صَفِيرٌ sibilation.

صَلَّةٌ conjunctive sentence.

صَلَّى abbreviation of the formula صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ "God bless him and give him peace!" always used after the name of Mohammed.

صِيغَةٌ form, measure, case, voice, number.

صِيغَةُ النَّاعِلِ form of the agent.

صِيغَةُ الْمَجْنُولِ the passive voice.

صِيغَةُ الْمَعْلُومِ the active voice.

صِيغَةُ الْمَنْعُولِ form of the patient.

“ plurals of the last form of plural,” i.e. of the form (1) (2) (3) (4).

ض

ضم writing the vowel ُ, ضمة the vowel ُ itself.

ضمير pronoun.

ضمير الشئ pronoun of the thing or idea (the ُ added to أَن).

ضمير الشئ q. ضمير الامر.

ضمير الحاضر affixed pronoun of the first or second person.

ضمير الشئ q. ضمير الحديث.

ضمير الفصل the pronoun of separation.

ضمير الشئ q. ضمير القصة (the pronoun ُ added to أَن).

ضمير بارز an expressed pronoun.

ضمير عائد إلى الموصول the pronoun that refers to the conjunctive noun.

ضمير مستتر } pronoun hidden, or
ضمير مستكن } innate (in the verb).

ضمير متصل attached pronoun.

ضمير متعلل مرفوع attached pronoun representing the nominative case.

ضمير متصل منصوب attached pronoun representing the accusative case.

ضمير مرفوع متعلل detached pronoun representing the nominative case.

ضمير منصوب متعلل detached pronoun representing the accusative case.

ضمير متعلل detached pronoun.

ط

ط abbreviation for مطلق an absolute pause (in the Korān).

طلب expressing desire.

طلبية expression of desire.

ظ

ظاهر apparent (pronoun), pronounced.

ظرف adverb.

ظرف المكان والزمان adverb of time and place.

ظرف زمان adverb of time.

ظرف لغو an adverbial predicate in a proposition when the substantive verb is expressed.

ظرف مستتر an adverbial predicate in a proposition where the word is is understood.

ظرف مكان adverb of place.

ظرفي adverbial.

ظرفية indicating adverbial condition of place.

ظروف adverbs.

ع

ع abbreviation for مَوْضِع "name of a place" (in Geographical works).

عَابَر preterite.

عَارِض accidental.

عَاطِف in a state of grammatical conjunction.

عَامِل governing word.

عَامِل لَفْظِي grammatical regent.

عَائِد the pronoun contained in a qualificative sentence—the antecedent.

عَمِر preterite.

عَجْمَة the quality of being a foreign noun.

عَجْمِي foreign in origin.

عَجْمِي التَّعْرِيف a proper name of foreign origin.

عَدَد number.

عَدَل deviation (formed by alteration from another measure).

عَدَل حَقِيقِي real deviation.

عَدَل غَيْر حَقِيقِي fictitious or conventional deviation.

عَرَض offering, invitation.

عَشْرَات tens.

عَطْف apposition.

عَطْف الْبَيَان explanatory apposition.

عَطْف الْخُرُوف apposition formed by particles.

عَطْف النِّسْبَةِ contextual apposition.

عُقُود the tens from 20 to 90.

عِلَّة cause, motive; in Prosody "defect."

العِلَاقَةُ الْمَفْعُولِيَّة the connexion between a verb and its objective complement.

عِلَامَاتُ التَّغْرِيمِ signs of the inflexions indicative of genders and numbers.

عِلْم proper name.

عَمَل governance, régime.

عِلْمِيَّة the quality of being a proper name.

عَلَى غَيْرِ قِيَاس irregular, not following the analogy of other words.

عَوَامِل governing words.

عَوَامِل سِمَاعِيَّة irregular governing words.

عَوَامِل قِيَاسِيَّة regular governing words.

عَوَامِل لَفْظِيَّة grammatical regents.

عَوَامِل مَعْنَوِيَّة logical regents.

عَلَيْهِ السَّلَام abbreviation for عَلَيْهِ السَّلَام "Peace be upon him!"

عَهْد recollection, calling to mind.

العَهْد الْخَارِجِي external reminiscence.

العهد الداخلي or العهد الذهني
mental reminiscence.

عين the second letter of a triliteral root, substance.

ع

غَابِرٌ aorist or future.

غَائِبٌ the third person.

غَايَةٌ term, limit, extremity.

غُمَارٌ name of a particular form of cypher.

عَبْرٌ future.

غَيْرُ حَقِيقَتِي conventional, fictitious.

غَيْرُ حَقِيقَتِي التَّأْنِيثِ conventional feminine.

غَيْرُ مَالِمٍ imperfect, weak verb.

غَيْرُ لَازِمَةٍ not neuter.

غَيْرُ مُتَعَدٍّ intransitive.

غَيْرُ مُتَمَكِّنٍ وَلَا أَمَكِّنٍ not susceptible of variations and not very susceptible.

غَيْرُ مُبَاشِرٍ the ن of the energetic mood of verbs when an *alif* intervenes between it and the last radical.

غَيْرُ مُرَكَّبٍ not compound.

غَيْرُ مُسْتَقٍ not derived

غَيْرُ مُنْصَرِفٍ indeclinable.

غَيْرُ وَاقِعٍ intransitive or neuter.

ف

فَاءٌ the first letter of a triliteral root.

فَاعِلٌ agent.

فَاعِلِيَّةٌ the quality of agent.

فَتْحٌ writing the vowel َ.

فَتْحَةٌ the vowel َ.

فَرْدٌ unit.

فُرْعِيَّةٌ inflexions signifying genders and numbers.

فِعْلٌ verb.

فِعْلٌ بُنِيَ or فِعْلٌ مَبْنِيٌّ indeclinable verb.

فِعْلٌ مُعْرَبٌ declinable verb.

فِعْلٌ التَّعَجُّبِ verb of wonder.

فِعْلٌ الشَّرْطِ conditional verb.

فِعْلٌ تَامٌ perfect verb.

فَصْلٌ separation.

فَقْرَةٌ sentence, paragraph.

فَحْ abbreviation for فَحْيَيْنِذٍ "and then, at that time."

ق

قِيلٌ abbreviation for قِيلَ, contested pause (in the Koran).

قَسَمٌ oath.

قِصَّةٌ relation, adventure, accident.

قُصْرٌ shortness.

قُفْتُ كُوفْتُ abbreviation for قُفْتُ كُوفْتُ,

a pause, according to the authorities of the Kufic school (in the Korân).

وَقَفَّةٌ abbreviation for ^{5/}يَسِيرَةٌ ^{5/}وَقَفَّةٌ,
slight pause, according to the
authorities of the Kufic school
(in the Korān).

قلب conversion, inversion, sup-
pressing a vowel.

قلقلة clacking, trembling.

قیاس analogy.

قياسي analogous, regular (form).

restriction. Interposing an isolated pronoun between the attached and corroborative pronoun, as *جئتم أنتم أنفسكم*.

لے

گس writing the vowel —.

كسرة the vowel ِ.

كَلَامَ phrase, part of speech.

كَلِمَ الْمَجَازَةِ hypothetical expressions.

كَلِمَاتٌ تُشَبِّهُ الْإِسْمَ الْمُنْسُوبَ
words resembling the relative
adjective.

كَلِمَةً تَضْجِرُ وَتُوجِعُ an expression
of reproof or anguish.

كُنَايَات metonyms, see p.285 (183).

كناية metonym,

كُنْيَة *sobriquet*, nickname, familiar name.

کیفیت quality.

۴

↳ no pause (in the Korán).

the negative particle لا ^{لَا} when it has a second predicate connected with the first by a disjunctive particle, such as لَئِنْ or بَلْ.

لَا لِنَفْسِي الْجَنَسِ the absolute negative, see p. 254 (157).

لَا مَحَلَّ لَهُ مِنَ الْإِعْرَابِ occupying
no place in the grammatical
analysis.

لا expletive لا مزيدة

لَازِمٌ } neuter, necessary.
 لَازِمَةٌ }

لَامٌ the third letter of a triliteral root.

ل. the inchoative لام الابتداء

ل. the imperative لام الامر

the ل of the attribute.

لَا مَ التَّوَكُّيدِ the ل of corroboration.

لام الـ of denial.

کی, the ل of the particle لام کی,
see p. 172.

ل. the separating اللام الفارقة

ل introducing the
 القسم the subject of an oath.

اللام الموحدة للقسم the ل intro-
ducing a condition attached to
the subject of the oath.

لَامُ التَّعْرِيفِ the definite article.

لَامُ جَوَابِ الْقَسَمِ the ل introducing the subject of the oath after a conditional clause.

لَامُ جَوَابِ لَوُلُوْا the ل responding to the conjunctions "if," and "if not."

لَا abbreviation for لَا وَفَّ "there is no pause" (in the Korān).

لُثْوِيَّةٌ formed by pressing the tip of the tongue against the cheek.

لِسَانِيَّةٌ linguals.

لَعَوُ adverbial accusatives in a proposition or phrase which are not essential to the discourse, and may be removed without destroying the sense.

لُفْظًا grammatically, literally.

لُفْظِي verbal, grammatical.

لُثْفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ complicated, but with an interval; *i.e.* verbs doubly imperfect with a strong radical between the two weak letters.

لُثْفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ contiguously complicated; *i.e.* a doubly imperfect verb in which the two weak letters come together.

لَقَبٌ title, see p. 221 (132).

لَتَلَقَّى clacking.

لَمَحَ الصِّفَةِ indicating a predominant quality.

لُثْوِيَّةٌ (letters) formed in the uvula.

لَيْسِيَّةٌ soft (letters).

مَ abbreviation for مَعْرُوفٌ, well known.

مَا الدِّمُومَةُ the مَا of duration.

مَا تَامَةً the مَا having a complete signification.

مَا الْحِجَازِيَّةُ see مَا الْحِجَازِيَّةُ.

مَا خَاصَةً special مَا.

مَا زَائِدَةً expletive مَا.

مَا عَامَةً general مَا.

مَا كَافَةً the مَا which hinders (*i.e.* the مَا after such particles as إِنَّ, which hinders their action on succeeding nouns).

مَا لَمْ يَسْمَعْ فَاعِلُهُ of which the agent or nominative is not named.

مَا مَصْدَرِيَّةٌ the مَا performing the functions of a noun of action.

مَا نَاقِصَةً the مَا having an incomplete signification.

مَا بِمَعْنَى لَيْسَ the مَا in the sense of لَيْسَ, *i.e.* denying a quality of the subject.

مَا لَيْسَ بِالْجِنْسِ مَا denying the existence of the species.

مَاضٍ preterite.

مَا يَقْدَرُ بِاللَّامِ } that kind of relation between two nouns in construction which implies لَ "belonging to," or مِّنْ "made of."

مبتدأ inchoative, subject.

مبدل antecedent of the permutative (بَدَلَ).

مباشرة the ن of the energetic mood of verbs when it immediately follows the last radical.

مبدلة converted.

مبني indeclinable.

مبيته explanatory.

مبهمة vague.

مبهمة vague and indeterminate nouns.

متبوع antecedent of an appositive.

متجانس analogous, homogeneous.

متشابه obscure.

متصل attached (pronoun, etc.).

متصلة بالافعال noun derived from verbs and containing the signification of the same.

متضمن اوله معنى الحرف compound proper names of which the first portion is equivalent to a preposition.

المتعجب منه the subject of admiration.

متعد transitive.

متعلق dependent.

المتعلق به having an adverbial term dependent on it.

متعلقات dependent, subordinate (nouns, words, etc.).

متقارب approximate.

متتاربان two homogeneous letters.

متكلم the first person.

ممكن امكن susceptible of variations.

ممكن غير امكن not susceptible of variations.

مشال primitive form of a verbal root.

مشلثة triliteral.

مشقة having *teshdid*.

مشناة من تحتها (a letter) with two dots underneath.

مشناة من فوقها (a letter) with two dots above.

مشقة the particles *كان*, *لكن*, *إن*, when they preserve the *teshdid*.

مثنى dual.

مجاز metaphor, hypothesis, conventionality.

مجازاة compensation.

مجازى التانيث metaphorical, or conventional feminine.

مجاوز transitive.

مجاوزه being transitive, act of passing away from.

مجرد primitive.

مَجْرُور noun governed by a preposition.

مَجْرُورٌ مَحَلًّا virtually in the genitive case.

مَجْرُورٌ مَحَلًّا عَلَى أَنَّهُ مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ virtually in the genitive, as forming the complement of a grammatical relation between two nouns (state of construction).

مَجْزُومٌ having the mark ْ quiescent (a letter).

مَجْمُوعٌ complex.

مَجْمُوعَةٌ openly pronounced.

مَجْمُوعٌ passive.

مَجْزُومٌ tolerated.

مَحْدُودٌ definite, limited.

مَحْذُوفٌ apocopated.

مَحْذُوفُ الْإِتْجَازِ (nouns) of which the latter portion has been apocopated.

مَحْرُكَةٌ moved, having a vowel; the opposite of "quiescent."

مَحْصُورٌ restricted.

مَحْفُوظٌ *q.v.*, قِيَامِيٌّ *q.v.*

مَحْكَمٌ clear, plain, obvious.

مَحْكِي الْجُمْلِ a proper name consisting of an entire sentence and not declined.

مَحَلٌّ لَهُ مِنَ الْإِعْرَابِ having a place in the grammatical analysis.

مَحَلًّا virtually, in consequence of its position.

مَحْمُولٌ (in logic) the attribute.

مُخَاطَبٌ the second person.

أَلْشَيْءُ الْمَخْبَرُ مِنْهُ بِالَّذِي the thing of which the quality is predicated by the word الَّذِي.

مُخْتَلَسٌ smuggled, (vowels not written but just slightly pronounced).

مُخَصَّصٌ particularized.

مُخْصَصٌ بِالْمَدْحِ أَوْ الذَّمِّ the special object of praise or blame.

مُخَفَّفٌ losing its *teshdid*.

الْمُخَفَّفُ مِنَ الْمَثْقَلِ losing its *teshdid*.

مُخَفَّفَةٌ lightened, losing its *teshdid*.

مُخْفُوضٌ in the genitive case.

مُخْفُوضٌ مَحَلًّا virtually in the genitive.

مَدَّةٌ the sign ِ written over an ا to lengthen it.

مَدٌّ writing such sign.

مَدٌّ عَارِضٌ accidental *meddah*.

مَدٌّ لَازِمٌ necessary *meddah*.

مَدٌّ مُتَّصِلٌ *meddah* preceded by a ّ in the same word.

مَدٌّ مُنْفَصِلٌ or مَدٌّ مُنْقَطِعٌ *meddah* over an ا at the beginning of a word when the preceding word ends with a long vowel.

مَدْحٌ panegyric, eulogium.

المدعو إليه the person appealed to.

مذكر masculine.

مذلة pronounced with a quick motion of the lips or tongue.

مرادف } the first and second
words of the series
مرادف } called ترادف q.v.

مرتبة numerical progression, units, tens, and so on.

مرجل improvised (primitive proper names).

مرخص lawful, allowed.

مرفوع put in the nominative case or indicative mood, having the vowel ^{هـ} or ^و.

مرفوع مجازاً virtually in the nominative.

مرفوع للمدح أو الذم put in the nominative to express praise or blame.

مركب composed, compound.

مركب إسمائى proper names consisting of a complete proposition, as تابت شراً.

مركب إضافى a proper name consisting of two nouns in a state of construction.

مركب تضمينى compound expression containing an ellipse of a preposition, conjunction, etc.

مركب مزجى a proper name consisting of two words inseparably compounded.

مزجى inseparably compounded.

مزيد فيه augmented (verb).

مسبب actuated by an extraneous cause; an adjective which, while seeming to refer to a preceding noun, really refers to one following.

مسبب الموصوف the cause which enables the noun qualified to be so qualified = سبب.

مستتر hidden, understood (opposed to بارز).

المستثنى the thing excepted.

المستثنى المتصل المتقدم conjoined exception.

المستثنى المتصل المؤخر بعد المستثنى posterior conjoined exception placed after a negative proposition.

المستثنى المتصل المؤخر بعد المستثنى positive compound exception placed after an affirmative proposition.

المستثنى منه the thing from which exception is made.

المستزاد augmented (noun).

مستعلية elevated (letters).

المستغاث the one called in for aid.

المستغاث من أجله the person against whom aid is sought.

مستغاث به person for whom aid is demanded.

مستثناة depressed (letters).

مستكن hidden.

مستوى common gender.

مستجع rhymed prose.

مسند referred to the subject; attributed.

مسند إليه that to which an attribute is given.

مسهلة softened by the suppression of the *hemzeh*.

مشاركة participation.

مشتق derivative.

مشتق أو موصول به a verbal adjective, or what may be considered as equivalent to one.

مشددة having *teshdid*.

المشغول عنه the object from which a thing is diverted or distracted.

مشغول بإضافة antecedent of two nouns in a state of construction.

مشغول بحرف جر the intermediate member of a proposition.

مصحبة concomitance.

مصدر infinitive or verbal noun.

مصدر غير ميمي the verbal noun not commencing with م.

مصدر ميمي the verbal noun commencing with م.

مصدرية the quality of being a noun of action.

مصمتة solid (letters), opposed to مذلقة.

مضارع aorist.

مضارع المضاف relation analogous to that of the antecedent of two nouns in a state of construction.

مضارع مجزوم apocopated aorist.

مضارع مرفوع aorist indicative.

مضارع من الباب الأول aorist of the first class.

مضاعف doubled.

مضاف the antecedent of two nouns in a state of construction.

مضاف إليه the complement of such noun.

مضمر pronominal agent; implied, understood.

مضمر فيه ضمير الشأن containing the idea of the pronoun which expresses an event.

مضمر لين the pronoun contained in a verb and consisting of a single quiescent letter, as the ا in يتبع.

مضمر متصل attached pronominal agent.

مضمر منفصل detached pronominal agent.

مضمن الهمزة having the value of the interrogative أ.

مضمومة pointed with *dhammah*.

مطابق corresponding.

مطابقة concordance.

مطابقة المنة والمنعوت concordance of the adjective and substantive.

مطاع dominant (verb).

مطاع a verb submitting to the influence of the dominant verb.

مطوعة submission.

مطبقة arched (letters) ط, ض, ص, ظ and ذ.

مطلق universal.

مطلق absolute, general.

مطلق العين } "whatever the first
مطلق الفاء } or second radical
may be."

مدة i. q. مدة.

مظهر special noun.

معتل weak (verb).

معتد على الف الاستفهام preceded by an interrogative particle.

معتد على المبتدأ preceded by the inchoative of which it serves as enunciative.

معتد على الموصوف preceded by the noun which is qualified by the agent itself.

معتد على الموصول preceded by the conjunctive adjective.

معتد على حرف النفي preceded by a negative particle.

معتد على ذي الحال preceded by the noun which is modified by the agent itself performing the functions of an adverbial accusative of state or condition.

معجمة dotted (letter); having diacritical points.

معرب declined.

معرف determinate, definite.

معرف باللام determined by the article.

معرف بالالف واللام determined by the article.

معرفة a determinate noun.

معرفة مفرد isolated determinate noun.

معروف active.

معطوف in apposition; word or proposition joined to another.

المعطوف عليه word to which the معطوف refers or is joined.

معول active voice

معول the complement of the attribute; governed.

معول الفعل with the government of a verb.

معنوي logical.

المعبرود previously mentioned.

مغالبة superiority.

مفتوحة having the vowel ا.

مُفَاجَاةٌ suddenness

مَوْثِقٌ singular.

مَوْثِقٌ مِنَ الْقَامِلِ q.v. i.q. مَوْثِقٌ

مَوْثِقٌ explained.

الْمَوْثِقُ عَلَيْهِ the inferior of two terms of comparison.

مَوْثِقٌ passive participle, patient, objective complement.

الْمَوْثِقُ الْأَوَّلُ the first patient or accusative of a verb which has several complements.

الْمَوْثِقُ الثَّانِي the second patient or accusative of a verb which has several complements.

الْمَوْثِقُ الْقَائِمُ مَقَامَ الْفَاعِلِ the object of the action performing the functions of the agent.

الْمَوْثِقُ الَّذِي لَا يُسَمَّى فَاعِلًا the object of an action of which the subject is not expressed.

مَوْثِقٌ مطلقٌ "absolute patient," i.e. the verbal noun used adverbially, as ضَرْبًا in ضَرَبَهُ ضَرْبًا.

مَوْثِقٌ بِهِ the patient or passive participle, the complement or object of a verb.

مَوْثِقٌ بِهِ حَقِيقٌ the real objective complement.

مَوْثِقٌ بِهِ خَيْرٌ ضَرْبٍ the fictitious complement.

مَوْثِقٌ خَاصٌّ special complement.

مَوْثِقٌ خَيْرٌ ضَرْبٍ fictitious patient.

مَوْثِقٌ حَقِيقٌ real patient

مَوْثِقٌ عَامٌّ general complement.

مَوْثِقٌ فِيهِ complement of a verb expressing time or place of action.

مَوْثِقٌ لَهُ adverb expressing the motive of the action.

مَوْثِقٌ مِنْ أَجْلِ adverb expressing the motive of the action.

مَوْثِقٌ مَعَهُ adverb expressing the person who participates in an action, as مَا صَنَعْتَ وَزَيْدًا "what hast thou done with Zeid?"

مَوْثِقٌ مَقْصُورٌ shortened.

مَوْثِقٌ مُنْقَسِبٌ regular.

مَوْثِقٌ مُكْثَرٌ plural.

مَوْثِقٌ مُكْسُورَةٌ having the vowel َ

مَوْثِقٌ مُكْنًى metonym.

مَوْثِقٌ مُصَاحِبَةٌ q.v. i.q. مُصَاحِبَةٌ

مَوْثِقٌ مُتَشَبِّهٌ ambiguous, identical.

مَوْثِقٌ مُتَّخَذٌ adopted; the verbs mentioned on p. 45.

مَوْثِقٌ مُتَّخَذٌ بِالرَّبَاعِيِّ adopted; the quadriliteral verbs described on p. 45.

مَوْثِقٌ مُلْكٌ possession.

مَوْثِقٌ مُنْزَعٌ deprived (of variations), imperfectly declined

مَوْثِقٌ مُبَيِّنٌ specifying.

مَوْثِقٌ مُبَيَّنٌ specified.

مَوْثِقٌ مُبَيِّنٌ بِهٍ specificative.

مُنَادَى person called upon.

مُنَادَى حَقِيقَةً person really addressed in the vocative.

مُنَادَى حُكْمًا person supposed to be present and addressed in the vocative.

مُتَعَدِّى الْجُمُوع plurals of the form (1) (2) أ (3) (4).

مُنْخَفِضَةٌ depressed letter.

مُتَدَوِّبٌ the thing complained of.

مُتَصَرِّفٌ variable.

مُنْصُوبٌ in the objective or accusative case, or the subjunctive mood.

مُنْصُوبٌ مَحَلًّا virtually in the accusative.

مُنْصُوبٌ مَحَلًّا virtually in the accusative.

مُنْصُوبٌ عَلَى الْمَدْحِ أَوْ الذَّمِّ } in the
مُنْصُوبٌ لِلْمَدْحِ أَوْ الذَّمِّ } adverbial accusative to express praise or blame.

مَنْعُوتٌ qualified by an adjective.

مُنْفَتِحَةٌ open letters.

مُنْتَحِلٌ detached.

مُنْتَطَعٌ separated.

مُنْتَوٍ defective (noun).

مُنْتَوِلٌ a word which has come to be used as a proper name.

مَنْقُولَةٌ مِنْ صِيغَةِ الْإِخْبَارِ إِلَى صِيغَةِ الْإِنْشَاءِ a proposition which has passed from the *enunciative* to the *productive* form.

مُنْكَرٌ indefinite.

مُنَوَّنٌ having *tenwin*.

مُنَوًى implied.

مُوجِبَةٌ affirmative.

مُوحِدَةٌ having *one* dot (a letter).

مُؤَسَّسَةٌ fundamental, modified.

مُؤَوَّفٌ qualified, *i.q.* مَعْنُوتٌ.

مُؤَوَّفٌ لُغَوِيًّا grammatically qualified by an adjective.

مُؤَوَّفٌ مَعْنَوِيًّا logically qualified by an adjective.

مُؤَوَّلٌ conjunctive noun.

مُؤَوَّلٌ اِسْمِيٌّ conjunctive noun.

مُؤَوَّلٌ حَرْفِيٌّ conjunctive particle.

مُؤَوَّلَاتٌ خَاصَّةٌ particular conjunctives, *i.q.* نَصْ *q.v.*

مُؤَوَّلَاتٌ مُشْتَرَكَةٌ general (common) conjunctives.

مَوْضُوعٌ (in logic) the subject.

مَوْضُوعٌ لِدُنُوِّ الْخَبَرِ اخْذَا فِيهِ employed to express the proximate occurrence of the action predicated which one has already set about.

مَوْضُوعٌ لِدُنُو الْخَيْرِ حَصُولًا employed
to express simply the speedy
occurrence of the thing predi-
cated.

مَوْضُوعٌ لِدُنُو الْخَيْرِ رَجَاءً employed
to express the speedy occurrence
of the predicate as something
hoped for.

مَوْكَّدٌ corroborated.

مَوْكَّدٌ corroborative.

مَوْكَّدَةٌ feminine.

مَوْكَّدَةٌ حَقِيقِيَّةٌ real feminine.

مَوْكَّدَةٌ غَيْرُ حَقِيقِيَّةٍ conventional
or fictitious feminine.

مَوْكَّدَةٌ لَفْظِيَّةٌ grammatical femi-
nine.

مَوْكَّدَةٌ مَعْنَوِيَّةٌ logical or natural
feminine.

مِهْمَلَةٌ having no dots or diacritical
points.

مِهْمَلَةٌ having no dots or diacritical
points.

دَهْمَزَةٌ having مِهْمُوزٌ.

مِهْمُوسَةٌ pronounced with a scarcely
perceptible articulation.

مِائَاتٌ hundreds.

مِيزَانٌ measure.

ن

أَخْبَرَنَا "he
informed us."

نَادِرٌ rare.

نَاصِبٌ putting a noun in the ac-
cusative case, or a verb in the
subjunctive mood.

نَافٍ denying, of negation.

نَاقِصٌ defective.

نَائِبٌ occupying the place of.

نَائِبٌ عَنِ الْفَاعِلِ } occupying
نَائِبٌ مَنَابِ الْفَاعِلِ } the place
of the agent.

نَحْوٌ grammar, syntax.

نِدَاءٌ vocative case.

نِسْبَةٌ relation, the relative pronoun.

نَسْتَعْلِيْقٌ the Persian style of writ-
ing, which bears the same relation
to the نَسْخِيَّةٌ or Arabic hand
which the *italic* does to the ordi-
nary English printing.

نَسْخِيَّةٌ the Arabic hand-writing.

نَصٌّ words susceptible of only one
application.

نَصْبٌ accusative or objective case.

نَطْعِيَّةٌ letters formed by pressing
the tip of the tongue against the
anterior part of the palate.

نَعْتٌ adjective, epithet.

نَبْرَةٌ *i.g.* دَهْمَزَةٌ.

نَعْتٌ حَقِيقِيَّةٌ a real epithet.

نَفْسُ الْمُتَكَلِّمِ the first person.

نَفْسُ الْمُتَكَلِّمِ مَعَ الْغَيْرِ the first
person plural.

نَقَى negation.

نَقَى الِجْنَسِ absolute negation of the existence of the subject.

نَقَى بِمَعْنَى لَيْسَ negation synonymous with the verb لَيْسَ.

نَقَى الْحَالِ negation of the present.

نَقَى اسْتِقبالِ negation of the future.

نُقْطَةٌ diacritical point.

نَقْلٌ conversion; removing a vowel from one consonant to another which precedes it.

نَقْلٌ مِنَ الصَّوْتِيَةِ إِلَى الْإِسْمِيَةِ conversion of an adjective into a noun.

نَكْرَةٌ indeterminate noun.

نَهْيٌ prohibition.

نَوَاسِخٌ expressions which abrogate.

نَوَاسِخُ الْإِبْتِدَاءِ particles which destroy the influence of the inchoative.

نَوَاصِبٌ words which put nouns in the accusative, and verbs in the subjunctive.

نَوْعٌ species.

نُونُ التَّأْكِيدِ the emphatic ن added to the aorist and imperative of verbs.

نُونُ الْعِمَادِ } the ن which distinguishes the affixed pronoun of the accusative or first person used with verbs from the affixed pronoun of the same person used with nouns.

نَيْفٌ or نَيْفٌ all above the tens in numerals composed of tens and units, after twenty-one.

ذ

ذَ abbreviation for بِلَادٌ "name of a small town" (in Geographical works).

ذَاءُ السَّكَنِ } silent há.
ذَاءُ السَّكُونِ }

ذَاءُ الْوَقْفِ the há in pause.

هَجَاءٌ spelling, orthography.

هَمْزٌ the letter or sign ء.

هَمْزٌ writing such sign.

هَمْزَةُ الْأَمْرِ the hemzeh used in forming the imperative.

هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ see pp. 9 and 12.

هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ see pp. 9 and 11.

كَمْسٌ mumbling (compressing the lips in mastication).

وَاجِبٌ obligatory, necessary.

وَاقِعٌ actual, transitive (verb).

وَءُ الْإِبْتِدَاءِ initiative و.

وَءُ التَّجْمَعِ و, expressing concomitance.

وَءُ الْحَالِ the conjunction و when it introduces an adverbial proposition, the initiative و.

وَإِذَا تَصَرَّفَ the conjunction و in such expressions as

هَلْ تَأْكُلُ الشَّمَكْتَ وَتَشْرَبُ اللَّبَنَ implying *simultaneous action*, and putting the verb in the subjunctive.

وَأَوَّاهُ الْمَصَاحِبَةِ و of concomitance.

وَأَوْرُبَ see p. 198.

وَأَوَّاهُ الْجَمْعِ i.q. q.v.

وَزْنُ measure of a word.

وَزْنُ الْفِعْلِ the measure of the verb.

وَصْفُ the quality of being an adjective.

وَصْفٌ أَصْلِيٌّ a natural adjective or qualifying term.

وَصلَ the sign of elision ۞.

وَصلَ writing such sign.

وَضعَ fashion, usage, axiom.

وَضعِيٌّ external.

وَضْعًا in accordance with the primitive usage of the language.

وَفْقُ الْفَتْحَةِ the homologue of *fethah*, i.e. *alif*.

وَقْفٌ period, full stop, pause.

وَقْفٌ كُوفِيٌّ a pause according to the Kúfic school (in the Kōrān).

INDEX.

A.

Abstract noun, 147.

„ verbs, 242, 243.

Action, cause or effect of, 191.

„ words specifying the, 189.

عَدَا 267.

Adjectives, gender of, 207.

أَخَوَاتُ كَانَ 242.

Admiration, 277.

Adverbs, 166, 233.

„ compound, 284.

„ verbs used as, 193.

„ governing like verbs, 232.

„ of time and place, 280, 286.

Adverbial expressions, 190, 192, 193.

أَجْمَعَ 275.

Agent, 46, 178, 183, 225.

„ broken plurals of, 131, 132, 133.

„ intensive, 52.

„ position of, 263.

عَيْنَ 275.

أَفْعَلَ 128.

أَفْعَلَ بِهِ 278.

Affixed pronouns, changes of vowels, etc., before the, 152.

Alfiyeh of Ibn Málík, quotation from the, 76.

Alif, pronunciation of, 197, note.

Alphabet, 1.

أَوَّاهَ 279.

Alternative expressions, 279.

أَن 171, 172, 173, 187, 225.

أَن use of, 250.

Antecedent, 256.

Aorist, 27, 171, 178.

„ of defective verbs—
(final و), 78.

(final ي), 80

„ of derived conjugations, 39

„ of hollow verbs—

(medial و), 71.

(medial ي), 72.

(medial ا), 74.

„ subjunctive, always refers to future time, 261, note.

Apposition, 267.

„ of corroboration, 268, 273, 274.

„ simple, 268, 271.

„ „ of verb with a noun, 271, 272, 274.

„ of description, 268.

Apposition, explanatory, 276.

„ of substitution, 268, 276.

„ particles employed in forming, 272.

„ of vocatives, 277.

Approximate verbs, 244.

Arab tribes, names of, 182, 184.

Article, the, 157, 256.

„ used with the aorist of a verb, 256.

„ use of, with numerals, 215

عَسِي 88.

Assimilated verbs, 66.

Assimilation, 23.

Attribute, 234.

أَيْت 157.

عَيْب 375

B.

El Behá Zoheir, verses from, 18, 165, 169, 332.

Benu Hudheil (idiom of), 108.

Benu Temím (idiom of), 109.

Broken plurals, 110, 182.

„ of agent, 131, 132, 133.

„ anomalous forms of, 130, note; 135, note; 137.

„ declension of, 102.

„ forms of, 111.

„ of feminine nouns,

„ feminine plurals used with, 208.

„ gender of, 111.

„ of quadriliteral and quinqueliteral nouns, 134-138

„ tables of, 113,

„ general table of, 139.

C.

Caliph, story of a, 170, note.

Cases, subjective, 177, 178, 236, 288.

„ objective, 177, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194,

199, 288, 289,

„ dependent, 177, 195.

Case endings, 171, n.

Cardinal numbers, 158.

Chronograms, 5.

„ Moorish, 5.

Circles, the, 295.

Clause, the, 234.

Clauses used as adjectives without a conjunction, 234, 235.

Collective nouns, 183, 208, 213.

„ plural from relative adjectives, 139.

Colour, noun of, 128.

„ form of words signifying, 90.

Common gender, 96.

Comparative, plural of, 128.

Comparison, 196, 227, 228.

Compound expressions, 284.

Conditional sentences, 261.

„ protasis and apodosis of, 262.

Conjunctions, 166, 256, 257, 258.

Copula, the logical, 288.

D.

Dates, 217, 218, 219.

Declension of nouns, 97.

„ ancient, 6, 98.

„ of nouns with weak final radical, 99.

Defective verbs, 74, 76.
 „ tenses of, 77.
 Demonstrative pronouns, 154.
 Dependent case, 195.
 Derived conjugations, tables of—
 (active), 43.
 (passive), 44.
 „ of assimilated verbs, 68.
 „ of defective verbs, 77.
 „ of doubled verbs, 59.
 „ of hemzated verbs—
 (initial), 63.
 (medial), 64.
 (final), 65.
 „ of hollow verbs, 70.
 „ 32-39.
 „ tenses of, 39.
 Descriptive, nature of, 269.
 „ sentence used as, 269.
 „ and noun, concordance of,
 270.
 Diminutive noun, 148.
 Doubled verbs, derived conjugations of, 59.
 Doubly imperfect verbs, 84.
 Dual, 104.
 دَخِيلٌ 374.

 E.
 Epithets, concordance of nouns and,
 208.
 „ feminine plurals used with
 broken plurals of nouns
 208.
 „ gender of, 207.
 „ noun of action as an, 208.
 Exception, how expressed, 265.

F
 Feet, 292.
 „ normal, 294.
 „ tables of variation in, 307,
 308, 309, 310, 311, 312.
 „ elements of which feet are
 composed, 292, 294.
 „ variations of, 93.
 Feminine, formation of, 93.
 „ grammatical, 183.
 Flight, form of words signifying, 91.
 Fractions, 164.

 G.
 غَيْرٌ 266.
 Genders, 91.
 „ common, 96.
 Genitive case, 195.

 H.
 حَاشَا 267.
 حَدُوْ 374.
 حَيِي, change in the tenth conjugation of, 85.
 ه note on, 97.
 هَلَمْ 89.
 هَلَمْ جَرَا, signification of, 89.
 Ḥamāsah, verses from the, quoted,
Hemzeh, 9.
 „ combination of, with other
 weak letters in verbal roots, 85.
Hemzet el kaṭaʿ, 13.
Hemzet el waṣl, 11, 14.
 „ pointing a quiescent letter
 before, 85.

- Hemzated verbs (initial), 62.
 „ (medial), 63.
 „ (final), 65.
 Hollow verb, the nature of, explained, 69.
 „ inflected as strong verbs, 87
 „ tenses of, 71.

I.

إِشْبَاعٌ 374.

إِلَّا 266.

إِلْعَاقُ 302, 304, 305, 306, 307.

إِلْمُ الْخَلِيلِ 291.

إِلْمُ الْعَرُوضِ 291.

Imáleh, 9, 197, noto.

Imperative, 29, 174.

„ of derived conjugations, 41

„ of defective verbs—

(final و), 80, 84.

(final ي), 80, 84.

„ of hollow verbs—

(medial و), 72.

(medial ي), 73.

(medial ا), 72.

(the form فَعَالٍ), 233.

„ nouns used as, 231, 232, 233.

Imperfectly declined nouns, 100.

Imru 'al Káis, poem of, quoted, 204

إِنْ 174, negative, 253.

إِنْ 249, 289.

إِنْ, position of, in the sentence, 250.

إِنْ and أَنْ, cases where either may be used, 251.

إِنْ and أَنْ, loss of the final ن in these particles and their compounds, 252

Indeclinable verbs, 88.

„ nouns, 103.

„ words, 279, 283.

Indicative mood, 171.

Inflexions of nouns and verbs, 171, note.

Intensive agent, 52, 225.

Interrogative pronouns, 156.

„ particles, 379.

Interjections, 167.

Involved forms of expression, 264, 265.

Irregular plurals, 139.

Irregular verbs, formation of nouns from, 86.

“Is,” how expressed, 288.

إِيَّا 153.

J.

Jezmeh or sukūn, 10.

Jussive, 176.

K.

Kitáb es Sádih wa 'Bághim, 341.

كَأَنَّ 267.

كَخُرُوجٍ 374.

كَفَافَةٍ 373, 374.

كَلَّانِ 275.

كَانَ 289.

كُلُّ 275.

كِنَايَاتُ 285.

Korān, ii. 126, p. 177; ii. 30, p. 177; ii. 139, p. 177; i. 7, p. 187; ix. 18, p. 169; ix. 44, pp. 173, 184, 185; xxx. 1, xxxvii. 147, p. 164; xlvii. 17, p. 202; lxvi. 5, p. 202; cii. 6-8, p. 177.

L.

لَ 279, 289.

لَا سِيمَا 267.

Letters, correspondence with the Hebrew, Phœnician, and Greek, 4.

„ which cannot exist side by side in the same root, 19.

„ numeral value of, 3.

„ written, but not pronounced, 15.

„ “solar and lunar,” 11.

لَيْسَ 88.

M.

مَا 175, 197, 225, 249, 253, 267; (relative), 258.

مَا أَفْعَلَ 278.

مَا إِنْ negative, 253, 254.

مَجْرَى 374.

Measures of words, 19.

Meddah, 9.

Metonyms, 285.

Metre, 291.

Metres, the, 313.

„ 1st circle, 295.

„ 2nd „ 297.

„ 3rd „ 298.

Metres, 4th circle, 299.

„ 5th „ 300.

„ الطَّوِيلُ 296, 314, 315, 316, 317.

„ الْمَدِيدُ 296, 318, 319, 320, 321.

„ الْبَسِيطُ 296, 322, 323, 324, 325.

„ الْوَاقِفُ 298, 326, 327, 328, 329.

„ الْكَامِلُ 298, 330, 331, 332, 333.

„ الْخَفِيفُ 300, 354, 355, 356, 357.

„ الْمُنْسَرِحُ 299, 350, 351, 352, 353.

„ الْمَضَارِعُ 300, 358, 359.

„ الْمُتَقَضَّبُ 300, 360, 361.

„ الْمُجْتَمَعُ 300, 362, 363, 364, 365

„ الْبَرْجُ 298, 334, 335, 336, 337.

„ الرَّجَزُ 299, 338, 339, 340, 341.

„ الرَّوْلُ 299, 342, 343, 344, 345.

„ السَّرِيعُ 299, 346, 347, 348, 349.

„ الْمُتَنَارِبُ 366, 367, 368, 369.

„ الْمُتَدَارِكُ 370, 371, 372.

Moods of verbs, 171, 173.

„ apocopated, 173.

„ of defective verb—

(final و), 78.

(final ی), 81.

(final و), 83.

„ energetic, 176.

„ imperative, 177

„ indicative, 171.

„ subjunctive, 171.

Motion, form of words signifying,
91.

El Mutanebbi, verses from, 17.

N.

نَفْسٌ 275.

Names of Arab tribes, gender of,
182, 184.

Negation, 253.

„ of several nouns, 255.

Negative, absolute, 254, 255.

نَفَانٌ 374.

Nominative pendent, 236.

Noun, the, 89.

„ abstract, 147.

„ of action, 31.

Nouns of action of derived con-
jugations, 42.

„ „ of hollow verbs, 70.

„ „ in *mim*, 47.

„ „ used as a verb, 222,
223, 224.

Noun, Agent 46.

„ collective, 183, 208.

„ of colour or defect, 51.

„ derived from verbs, 90.

„ of colour, 128.

„ diminutive, 148.

Noun of excess, 52.

„ of instrument, 50.

„ of relation, 144.

„ of quality, 51.

„ expressing inherent quali-
ties, 228, 229, 230, 231

„ of species, 46.

„ of superiority, 51, 226, 227.

„ of superiority, pl. of, 128.

„ of time and place, 48.

„ of unity, 46.

Nouns, cases of, 177.

„ imperfectly declined, 100.

Nouns in construction, 184, 201,
202, 203, 206, 207, 215,
216, 287.

„ ellipse of the first of two,
206.

„ gender of a word qualify-
ing, 207.

„ separation of two, 201.

„ use of article with the
first of two, 215, 216.

Nouns, used adverbially, 167, 190,
191.

Nouns, Primitive, 89.

„ formation of from irregular
verbs, 86.

„ declension of, 97, 140.

„ examples of the declension
of, 140-144

„ indeclinable, 103.

„ defining or determining,
287.

„ definite and indefinite,
201, 288.

„ and epithets, concordance
of, 208.

„ genders of, 91.

Nouns, numbers of, 103.
 „ relation between, 204.
 „ derived from verbs, 46.
 „ „ „ plurals of, 122.
 „ (not derived from verbs),
 144.
 „ which govern like verbs,
 223.

Number, 103.

Numbers, approximate, 164.

„ cardinal, 158.
 „ ordinal, 161, 216.

Numerals, 6, 158, 209, 210, 211,
 212.

„ adjectival, 163.
 „ adverbial, 163.
 „ compound, 284.
 „ distributive, 163.
 „ fractions, 164.
 „ multiplicative, 163.
 „ recurring, 164.
 „ gender of, 213, 214.
 „ agreement in gender of
 numeral and thing
 numbered, 213.
 „ government of, 158, 159,
 160.
 „ use of article with, 215.
 „ with collective nouns,
 213.

Nūn, assimilation of, in certain
 words, 15.

نُونُ الْوَقَايَةِ 151.

O.

Objective case, 188, 189, 190, 191,
 192, 193, 199, 288, 289.

Object of the action, 179.
 Object of a verb, 188.
 Object, position of, 263, 264.

P.

Pain, form of word signifying, 90.
 Parenthetical sentences, 189.
 Particles, 165, 171, 172, 173, 174,
 279.

„ employed in forming appo-
 sition, 272.
 „ initiative, 279.
 „ interrogative, 279, 280.
 „ negative, 174, 253.
 „ pleonastic, 283.
 „ which resemble verbs,
 248.

Passive Participle, 47, 225, 226.
 Passive of verbs which govern more
 than one object, 185, 186.
 Passive verb, subject of, 184, 185,
 186.

Patient, 47, 225, 226.

Pause, the, 14.

Pendent nominative, 236.

Permutation, 22, 74.

Pluperfect, 170.

Plurals, 105.

„ different pl. to express
 different meanings, 138.
 „ note on the formation of,
 113.
 „ broken, 110, 182.
 „ of multitude, 111.

Plural of Paucity, 110, 116, 117,
 118, 123, 124, 125.

„ „ diminutives of, 160.

Plurals of Plurals, 139.

Plural Regular, (masculine), 106.

„ „ (feminine), 108.

„ irregular, 139.

Poem, parts of, 292.

„ structure of, 292.

Poetical licence, 375, 376.

Portions of a thing, form of words signifying, 91.

Precative expressions, 232, 238.

Predicate, 234, 236, 237.

„ omission of, 239.

Prepositions, 165, 195, 196, 197, 198, 233.

„ nouns used as, 197.

„ omission of, 187.

Preterite, 26, 169, 170.

„ of defective verb—

(final و), 77, 82.

(final ي), 80.

„ of derived conjugations, 39.

„ of Hollow verbs—

(medial ي), 72.

(medial ل), 73.

(medial و), 71.

Prohibitive, 174.

Pronouns, 151.

„ demonstrative, 154.

„ affixed, 151.

„ expressing the nominative, 151.

„ oblique and objective, 151.

„ interrogative, 156.

„ Personal, 151.

„ Relative, 156.

„ separate, 151.

„ government of, 153.

Pronouns referring to the antecedent in relative sentences, 256, 260.

„ omission of, 260.

Proper names, 201, 219, 220, 221.

„ constituent portions of, 221.

„ declension of, 101.

Proposition, arrangement of, 263.

Prosody, 261.

„ nomenclature of, 291, 292, 293.

Protasis and Apodosis, 262.

Q.

Quadriliteral verbs, 44.

Quadriliterals, plurals of, 112, 127.

Qualificatives, 256.

Quantity, 293.

„ anomalies in, 293.

Quinqueliterals, plurals of, 112.

R.

Regular Plural, 106.

Relatives, 256, 257, 258.

„ nature of, 259.

Relative noun, 144.

„ Pronouns, 156.

„ sentences, 256.

Rhyme, the, 373, 374, 375.

Roots, nature of, 19.

„ containing semivowels, 20.

رَبَّ 197, 198.

رَدَفَ 374.

رَوَى 373, 374.

S.

- سَبَبٌ 293.
 Scansion, 301.
 Self, selves, etc., how expressed,
 274, 275.
 Semivowels, 8.
 Sentence, the, 234.
 „ analysis of, 287, 288.
 Sentences, conditional, 260, 261
 „ nominal, 234.
 „ relative, 256.
 „ verbal, 234.
 „ شِبْهَ الْجَمْعِ 111.
 „ as the complements of
 prepositions, 198.
 Simple Verb, 30.
 Sounds, imitative, 168.
 „ form of words signifying,
 90.
 State or condition, 192, 242, 289.
 Subject, 234, 236, 237.
 „ of a passive verb, 178,
 184, 185, 186.
 „ omission of, 241.
 Subjective case, 236, 288.
 Subject and predicate, 288.
 „ „ concordance of,
 235, 239.
 „ „ inversion of, 240.
 „ „ words affecting,
 241.
 Subjunctive mood, 171.
 Substantive verb, omission of, 237.
 Superlative, pl. of, 128.
 سُوَى 266.
 Syntax, summary of, 287.
 صِلَةٌ 374.

T.

- تَأْنِيسٌ 374.
 Tables of correspondence of forms
 derived from verbs, 56.
 „ of derived conjugations, 43.
 „ of Irregular verbs, 59.
 Tenses, of defective verbs, 77.
 „ of doubled verbs, 61-62.
 „ of Hemzated verb, 66.
 „ of hollow verbs, 71.
 „ imperative, 174.
 „ prohibitive, 174.
 „ of simple verbs, 26-29.
 Temwîn, 6, 178, 201, 288.
 Teshdid, 11.
 تَصْرِيعٌ 317.
 تَوْجِيهٌ 374.
 Trades, form of words signifying,
 90.
 Tribes, names of, 182, 184.
 Triliteral nouns, broken plurals
 of, 114.
 V.
 Verbal noun, 25.
 Verbal nouns, plurals of, 122.
 Verb, the, 24, 169.
 „ agent of a, 178, 179.
 „ and agent, concordance of,
 180, 181, 182, 183, 265.
 „ „ position of, 180.
 „ and noun, inversion of, 263,
 264.
 „ „ in apposition with
 an agent and
 article, 257.
 „ omission of, 189, 190.

Verb, omission of, in ejaculatory sentences, 188, 189.
 „ object of, 179, 188.
 „ words cognate to, 231.
 „ note on the signification of the inflexions of, 154.
 „ subject of a passive, 178.
 Verbs, abstract, 242, 243.
 „ approximate, 244.
 „ assimilated, 58, 66.
 „ defective, 74, 76.
 „ denoting a mental process, 246, 265.
 „ different kinds of, 24.
 „ doubled, 58, 59.
 „ doubly transitive, 224.
 „ forms of, 30.
 „ governing by means of a preposition, 186, 187.
 „ governing two accusative pronouns, 153.
 „ having two objects, 188.
 „ Hemzated, 58.
 „ Hollow, 69.
 „ Indeclinable, 88.
 „ (initial و), 67.
 „ (initial ی), 68.
 „ Irregular, 58.
 „ Moods of, 27, 171.
 „ of praise and blame, 247.

Verbs parts of, 25.
 „ Passive, 178, 184, 185, 186.
 „ passive of, 186, 187.
 „ six classes of, 30.
 „ Tenses of, 26, 169.
 „ which govern more than one object, 185, 186.
 Verse, structure of, 292.
 „ parts of, 291.
 Vocative, 199, 200.
 „ apocopation of the last syllable of, 200.
 „ apposition of, 277.
 Vowels, 6.
 „ nasal, 6.
 „ the characteristic parts of a form, 21.
 „ correspondence with the semivowels, 8.
 „ as signs of inflexion, 9.

W.

Words indeclinable, 279, 283.

و

وَتَدَّ 295.

ز

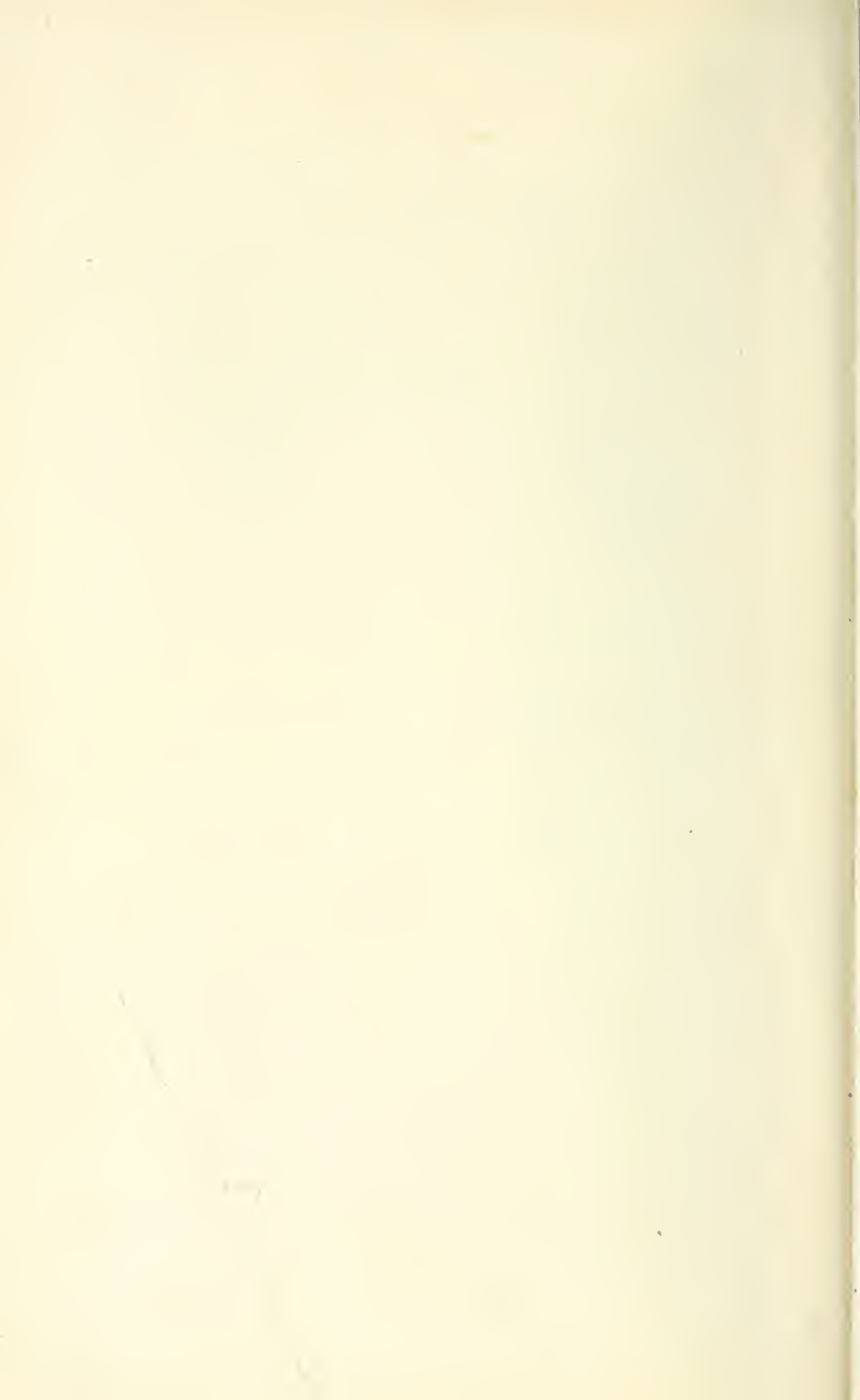
الزُّحَافُ 302.

الزُّحَافُ الْمُنْفَرِدُ 302.

الزُّحَافُ الْمَزْدُوجُ 304.

THE END.





UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

Los Angeles

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

SEP 8 1994

REC'D

REC'D LD-URL

LD
URL

JUL

4 WK OCT 27 1994

JUL

OCT 28 1994

REC'D LD-URL

NOV 11 1994

OL

JAN

DEC

JUL

RENEW

LD-URL

RENEW

LD-URL

RENEW

LD-URL

Form 10-Serial

MANUAL OF COLLOQUIAL ARABIC

TARGETS MANUAL

KEY TO THE EXERCISES IN WILLIAMS' ARABIC



3 1158 00563 7078

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



AA 000 669 320 4

SANSKRIT GRAMMAR

WILLIAMS' ENGLISH AND SANSKRIT DICTIONARY

SANSKRIT GRAMMAR

A SANSKRIT GRAMMAR

